

...of angels in the multitude of singing & praising their God
...to him that he saw one descending out of the midst of Heaven & he knew
...that his brother was above that of the Sun at noonday & he also saw twelve
...others following him & their bright shew did exceed that of the Sun in the
...midnight & they came down & went forth upon the face of the earth & a
...level came & stood before my father & gave unto him a book & ^{he} gave him that
...he should ^{read} & it came to pass that as he read he was filled with the spirit of the
...Lord & he read saying we have come hither for I have seen these abominations
...great & many things & I say after this concerning Jerusalem that it shall be
...destroyed & the inhabitants thereof many shall perish by the sword & many
...shall be carried away captive into Babylon & it came to pass that when my
...father had read & saw many great & marvelous things he did in his many
...things unto the Lord such as great & marvelous and thy words O Lord God
...through thy throne is high in the heavens & thy power & greatness ^{is} great
...in all the inhabitants of the earth & because that art merciful (that will
...not say so) that who come unto thee that they shall perish & of land his name
...was the language of my father in the praising of his God & he said (did) say
...& his whole heart was filled because of the things which he had seen & which he
...had shown unto him & now I like do not make a full account of the things which
...my father hath written for he hath written many things which he hath had
...visions & in dreams & he also hath written many things which he prophesied
...unto his children which I shall not make a full account but I
...will make an account of my proceedings in my days & behold I make a
...document of the vision of my father upon plates which I have made with
...my hands wherefore after that I have finished the record of my father's
...father then will I make an account of mine own life therefore I would that
...ye should know that of the things which he had shown to many ^{marvelous} things unto my father & I
...concerning the destruction of Jerusalem behold he went forth among the
...people & began to prophesy & to declare unto them concerning the things which he
...had seen & heard & it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things
...which he testified of & I saw him only testified of their wickedness & of their
...iniquities & of their hardness of heart & of their blindness of heart & of their
...in the blood & of the plagues of the coming of a great
...conclusion of the world & when the Jews heard these things they
...him & were angry with him & they said unto him

[illegible]

...until they found that I had not spoken before them & he
commanded them that they should not utter against him (wherefore)
I did do as he commanded them & my father dwelt in a tent & it came
to pass that I had been exceedingly young nevertheless being large
in stature & also having great desires to know of the mysteries of
God wherefore I did cry unto the Lord & behold he did visit me & did say
unto my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by
my father wherefore I did not rebel against him like unto my father
after he spake unto them making known unto them the things which
the Lord had manifested unto me by his holy spirit & it came to pass
that he believed in my words (behold) Laman & Lemuel would
not hearken unto my words & being grieved because of the hardness
of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them & it came to pass that the
Lord spake unto me saying blessed art thou Nephi because of
thy faith in that thou hast taught me diligently with lowliness of heart
inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper & shall
be led to a land of promise yea even a land which I have prepared for you & a
land which is choice before all other lands & inasmuch as thy brethren
shall rebel against thee they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord
inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments & shall be made
a ruler & a teacher over thy brethren for behold in that day that
they shall rebel against me I will curse them even with a sore curse
if they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against
me also & if it so be that they rebel against me they shall be a charge
unto thy seed to stir them up in the days of remembrance & it came to pass that
I stopped returned from speaking with the Lord to the tent of my father & it
came to pass that he spake unto me saying behold I have dreamed a dream
in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou & thy brethren
shall return to Jerusalem for behold Laban hath the record of thy words &
also a genealogy of thy forefathers & they are engraven upon plates of brass where-
fore the Lord hath commanded me that thou & thy brethren should go unto
the house of Laban & seek the records & bring them down with you & it came
to pass that I went with my brethren saying it is a hard thing which the
Lord hath commanded that behold I have not my sword with me but it is a com-
mandment of the Lord therefore let my God direct me & the Lord said
unto me that I should not slay him & it came to pass that I did not slay him
but I did take the sword of Laban & I did cut off the head of Laban & I did
bury it in the sand & I did take the records & I did bring them down with me

And he did take away from the plates of brass for which we were
in debt him our gold & our silver & all our precious things & it came to pass that
when Laban saw our property that it was exceeding great he did lust after it in
sorrow that he should not be able to get his servants to stay us that he might
obtain our property & it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of
him & we were obliged to leave behind our property & it fell into the hands
of Laban & it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness & the servants of Laban
did not overtake us & we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock & it came to pass
that Samson was angry with me & with my father & also with
Lehi for he was angry with the words of Samson when you & I said
to speak many have ~~thought~~ ^{would} we as us, their younger brothers & they did
smell us out & we fled a rock & it came to pass that the matter with a rock
hold an angel of the Lord came & stood before them & he spake unto them
saying why do ye smile down younger brothers with a sad & sorrowful
& that the Lord hath chosen him to be a nation over you & that
because of your iniquities behold ~~that~~ ^{ye} shall go to Jerusalem again &
the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands & after that the angel
had spake unto us he departed & after that the angel had departed Samson
& Lehi again began to murmur saying how is it possible that the Lord will
deliver Laban into our hands behold he is a mighty man & he can comma-
nd the elements even he can slay the beasts why not us & it came to pass that
he spake unto my brother saying let us go up again unto Jerusalem & let us
be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord for behold he is mighty
thru all the earth & why not mightier men Laban & his fifty men over
his tens of thousands therefore let us go up let us be strong like unto Gideon
for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea & they divided him & his
& our fathers came through out of captivity on dry ground & the armies of the
king did follow & were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea now behold ye have
as that this is true & ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you when ye
were in doubt let us go up the Lord is able to deliver us even as our fathers & to de-
stroy Laban even as the Egyptians now when I had spoken, there were voices
in the night & it did still continue to murmur underneath us they did flee
from us & we came without the walls of Jerusalem & it was by night & we said
that they should hide themselves instead the walls of the city & we did
enter the city & we went forth to the house of Laban & we
were led by the spirit not knowing of the servants of Laban who
were there & as I came near the house of Laban

[illegible]

1. As I came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly glad
and also Lemuel & Sam & they fled from before my presence for they supposed
it was Laban & that he had slain me & had sought to take away their lives also
& it came to pass that I called after them & they did hear me therefore they did
cease to flee from my presence & it came to pass that when the servant of Laban
beholding my brethren he began to tremble & was about to flee from before me
& return to the City of Jerusalem & now I beholding a man of large stature
& also having received much strength of the Lord therefore I did seizing
on the Girdle of Laban & held him that he should not flee & it came to pass that I
spoke unto him that if he would hearken unto my words as the Lord liveth & as I live
even so that if he would hearken unto our words we would spare his life &
I spoke unto him even with an oath that he need not fear that he should be of help
unto us if he would go down into the wilderness with us & I also spoke unto
him saying surely the Lord hath commanded us to do these things & shall we not be diligent
in hearkening to the Commandments of the Lord therefore if thou wilt go
down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us & it came
to pass that Laman did take courage at the words which I spoke now Laman was
the name of the servant & he promised that he would go down into the wilderness
unto ^{our} father & he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from
at that time forth now we need declare that he should tarry with us for this cause
that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness lest
they should persecute us & destroy us & it came to pass that when Laman had made
an oath unto us our fears did cease concerning him & it came to pass that we took
the plates of brass & our servant of Laban & departed into the wilderness & journeyed
to the land of our fathers & it came to pass that after we had come down into the
wilderness unto our father behold he was filled with joy & also my brother Sam
was exceedingly glad for the truly have rejoiced because of as for the he had supposed
that we had perished in the wilderness & he also had comforted my father
telling him that he was a visionary man saying behold these have I brought
up forth from the land of our inheritance & my son and no more & our brethren in the
wilderness & after this manner of language had my mother comforted concerning
father & it had come to pass that my father spoke unto us saying I know that you are
young men for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have
known of you that had turned off from God & had perished with my brethren but
now I have obtained a land of promise in the which I have placed you & I have
said with deliver my Lord out of the hands of Laban & I have
said in the wilderness & after this manner of language

Comfort my Brother Mosiah. Lamenting us while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem to obtain the record of the Jews & when we had returned to the land of my father he held them up near his long Brother was comforted & he spoke saying now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness for I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons & delivered them out of the hands of Laban & kept them from whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them & after this manner of language did he speak & it came to pass that they did persevere exceedingly & did offer sacrifices & burnt offerings unto the Lord & they gave thanks unto the God of Israel & after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel my father Lehi took those plates which were engraven upon the plates of brass & he did search them from the beginning & he beheld that they did contain the line of Israel which were an account of the creation of the world & also of Adam & Eve ^{who were} first parents & also a record of the Jews from the beginning even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah King of Judah & also the prophecies of the holy prophets from the beginning even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah & also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah & it came to pass that my father Lehi also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph ^{who} you even that Joseph ^{who} was the son of Jacob ^{who} which was sold into Egypt & ^{who} was preserved by the hand of the Lord that he might preserve his father Jacob & all his household from perishing with famine & they were also led out of captivity & out of the land of Egypt by that same God who had preserved them & my father Lehi did discover the genealogy of his fathers & Laban also was a descendant of Joseph wherefore he & his fathers had kept the records & now when my father said all these things he was filled with the spirit & began to prophesy concerning his seed that these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations kindreds tongues & people ^{who} were of his seed wherefore he said that these plates of brass should never perish neither should they be denied any more by time & he prophesied many things concerning his seed & it came to pass that thus far I & my father had kept the commandments wherein the Lord had commanded us & we had kept the record which the Lord had commanded us to keep & we had found that they were desirable yea even of greater worth unto us inasmuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children wherefore it came to pass that we should carry them with us as our journey in the wilderness towards the land of promise. Chapter

And now I will do not give the genealogy of my fathers in

10
my record neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates
where I am writing for it is given in the record which has been kept by
my father wherefore I do not write it in this work for it sufficeth me
to say that we are a descendant ^{of Joseph} & it mattereth not to me that I am per-
son to give to ~~you~~ a full account of all the things of my father for they can
not be written upon these plates for I desire the soon that I may write
of the things of God for the fullness of mine intent is that I may persuade
men to come unto the God of Abraham & the God of Isaac & the God of Jacob
that he saved us from the Kings which are pleasing unto the world I do not write
the things which are pleasing unto God & unto them ^{now who} which are out of the world
wherefore I shall give commandment unto my seed that they shall not oc-
cupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the Children of
men & now I would that ye might know that after my father Lehi had made
an end of prophesying concerning his seed it came to pass that the Lord spake
unto him again saying that it was not meet for him Lehi that he should
take his family into the wilderness alone but that his sons should take
his daughters to wife that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land
of promise & it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi &
my brethren should again return into the land of Jerusalem & bring down
Ismael & his family into the wilderness & it came to pass that I, Nephi did
go with my brethren go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem & it came
to pass that we went up unto the house of Ismael & we did gain favour in the sight
of Ismael inasmuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord & it came to
pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ismael & also his household inasmuch
that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our
father & it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness behold Laman
& Ismael & two of the daughters of Ismael & the true sons of Ismael &
their families did rebel against us even against I, Nephi & Jacob & their father
Ismael & his ~~sons~~ wife & his three sons other daughters & it came to pass with which
rebellion they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem & now I, Nephi
am grieved for the hardness of their hearts therefore I spoke unto them saying
ye even unto Laman & ^{unto} Ismael behold these are mine elder brethren & how
is it that ye are so hard in your hearts & so blind in your minds that ye have need
of the "young men" whom I should speak unto you & see that one example for you to
see that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord how is it that ye have
not seen that ye have seen an angel of the Lord & heard his voice & that
the Lord has done many things for you in your hearts & in your minds

lands of Laman & also that we should obtain the same yet & how is it that
ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will for the ch
ildren of men if it so be that they exercise faith in him wherefore let us be faithful
to him & if it so be that we are faithful in him we shall obtain the lan
d of promise & ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord
shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem for all things
which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled
on behalf of the Lord & as it is said to them with them for behold they have
collected the prophets & the priests & the scribes & the rulers & they have sought to take
away the life of my father inasmuch that they have driven him out of the land
now behold I say unto you that if ye will turn unto me I shall also
perish with them & now if ye have chosen to go up to the land & remember the words
which I speak unto you that if ye go ye will also perish for thus the spirit
of the Lord hath said unto me that I should speak & it came to pass that when I
spoke he had spoken these words unto my brethren they were angry with me & it came
to pass that they did lay their hands upon me for behold they were exceedingly
wroth & they did bind me with cords for they sought to take away my life that
they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts but it
came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord saying O Lord according to my faith
which is in thee will thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren & even
give me strength that I may have these hands with which I am bound & it came
to pass that when I had said these words behold the hands were loosed from
off my hands & I stood before my brethren & I spoke unto them again & it came to pass
that they were angry with me again & sought to lay hands upon me
I beheld one of the daughters of Ishmael yet & also her mother & one of the sons of
Ishmael did plead with my brethren inasmuch that they did soften their hearts &
they did cease striving to take away my life & it came to pass that they were sorrow
ful because of their wickedness inasmuch that they did bow down before me
& did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done
against me & it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done
& I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness
& it came to pass that they did so & after that they had done praying unto the Lord
we did again travel on our journey toward the tent of our father & it came to
pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father & after that I had said
these things all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father
they did give thanks unto the Lord their God & they did offer sacrifices & burn
offerings unto him & it came to pass that we had gathered the whole house

18

of seeds of every kind both of grain of every kind & also of the seeds of fruit of
every kind & it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he began to
sorrow, & he said I have dreamed a dream or in other words I have seen a vision & beho
ld because of the thing which I have seen I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because
of ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~thing~~ ^{thing} which I have seen I have reason to suppose that they & also many of their seed
will be saved but behold ~~Samson~~ ^{Samson} & ~~Lehi~~ ^{Lehi} I have exceedingly because of you for
behold ~~that~~ ^{me} ~~thought~~ ^{in my dream} I saw a ~~dark~~ ^{dark} & dreary wilderness & it came to pass that
I saw a man & he was ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ a white robe & he came & stood before me
& it came to pass that he spake unto me & said he made me follow him
& it came to pass that as I followed him & after that he followed him I be
held myself that I was in a dark & dreary waste & after that I had tar
ried for the space of many hours in darkness I began to pray unto the
Lord that he would have mercy on me according to the multitude of
his tender mercies & it came to pass that after I had prayed unto the
Lord I beheld a large & spacious field & it came to pass that I beheld a tree
whose fruit was desirable to make one happy & it came to pass that I did go
forth & partake of the fruit thereof & I beheld that it was most sweet unto
me all that I ever had before tasted & I beheld that the fruit thereof
was white to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen & as I partook of the
fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy & wherefore I began to be
desirous that my family should partake of it also for I knew that it was desir
able ^{above} ~~above~~ all other fruit & as I came to my eyes I saw a band of twelve
might discover my family & I beheld a river of water & it ran along &
it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit & I looked to behold
from whence it came & I saw the head thereof a little way off & at that head
thereof I beheld your mother Sarah & Samuel & Lehi & they stood as if they
knew not whither they should go & it came to pass that I beckoned unto them
& I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto
me & partake of the fruit which was desirable above all other fruit & it came to
pass that they did come unto me & partake of the fruit & it came to pass that I
was desirous that ~~Samson~~ ^{also} ~~Lehi~~ ^{also} should come & partake of the fruit & also
wherefore I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river that perhaps I
might see them & it came to pass that I saw them but they would not come
unto me & I beheld a road of iron & it extended along the bank of the river & it
led to the tree by which I stood & I also beheld a strict & narrow path which
came along by the side of the road of iron even to the tree by which I stood & it also
led by the head of the river unto a large & spacious field as if it were

seen a world & saw multitudes Concerned of people many of whom were
pressing onward that they might obtain the Father's promise lead into the tree by which
I think it came to pass that they did come down to Commence in the path which lead to
the tree & it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness ^{and} even an exceeding great
mist of darkness inasmuch that they ^{who} ~~which~~ had commenced in the path ^{lost} ~~lost~~
then say that they wandered off & were lost & it came to pass that I beheld after some
time forward & they came forth & caught hold of the end of the rod of iron & they did
press forward through the mist of darkness clinging to the end of iron even until
they did come to the ^{gate} ~~gate~~ of the fruit of the tree & after that they had partaken of the
fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed & I also cast
my eyes round about & behold on the other side of the river of water a great & spaci-
ous building & it stood as it were in the air high above the earth & it was
filled with people both old & young both males & females & in manner of dress
was exceedingly fine & they were in the attitude of making & pointing their fingers
towards those ^{who} ~~which~~ had come at & were partaking of the fruit & after that they had tar-
ried of the fruit they were ashamed because of that they were a scoffing at them & they fell
away into forbidden holes & were lost & I ^{now} ~~do not~~ speak all the words of my father
in but to be short in writing behold he saw other multitudes pressing forward &
they came & caught hold of the end of the rod of iron & they did press their way forward
continually holding fast to the rod of iron until they came forth & fell down & partok
of the fruit of the tree & he also saw other multitudes following their way towards the
great & spacious building & it came to pass that many were drowned in the del-
ta of the fountain & many were lost from his view wandering in strange roads & great dells
the multitude that did enter into that strange building & after that they did enter into the
building they did burn the fingers of those that were partaking of the fruit & al-
though ^{loaded} ~~loaded~~ he did hear them not that were the words of my father for many as he did them
had fallen away & I amon & I amon (partaking of the fruit & they were lost & could
hear that of my father & I did hear the words of his dream or vision which was saying
he said unto us because of these things which he saw in a vision he exceedingly feared that
they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord & he did exhort them then with all the
feeling of a tender parent that they would shun to lay hands on that which he had
would be merciful to them & not cast them off for my father did speak unto him & of
that he had preached unto them & also prophesied unto them of many things he had
to keep the commandments of the Lord he did cease speaking unto them & I
things did my father see & I speak as he dwelt in that visionally of
also as I saw more things which cannot be written upon plates & now
of these concerning his plates he said they were not plates which I saw

114

Full account of the history of my people from the plates upon which I make a full ac-
count of my people I have given the name of ^{the} plates wherefore they are called the plates of
Lehi after mine own name & these plates also are called the plates of Lehi inasmuch
as I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates for
the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my
people & upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the Kings
& the wars & contentions of my people wherefore these plates are for the more part of the
ministry & the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the Kings & the wars & con-
tentions of my people wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a
special purpose in him which purpose I know not but the Lord knoweth all things from the
beginning wherefore he hath given me a way to accomplish all his works among the children
of men for he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words & thus it is Amen
Chapter III Now I Lehi proceed to give an account upon these plates of my
seedings & my reign & ministry wherefore to precede all mine account I must speak
somewhat of the things of my father & of my father's house for he hath it came to pass that of
the many fathers had made an end of speaking the words of his dream & also of exhorting the
to all diligence he spake unto them concerning the things that he had seen that after they were de-
ad yet even that great City Jerusalem & that many ^{he} were carried away captive into
Babylon & according to the word of the Lord they should return again ^{they should be}
brought back out of Captivity & after they were brought back out of Captivity they
should again the land of their inheritance & they gave him hands only as from the land that my
father left Jerusalem & that would the Lord give maid up among the Jews & should
in a Christian; or, in afterwards, a servant of the world if he also be concerning the
Lehi & how great a number had testified of these things concerning the Messiah of
whom he had spoken for the Redeemer of the world; wherefore, all mankind were
about & in a fallen state & even would he ^{who} should rely on this Redeemer
he spoke also, concerning a Prophet, which should come before the Messiah to prepare the
way of the Lord & when he should come in the wilderness, prepare ye the way of
the Lord, make his paths straight for he standeth one among you whom ye know not
he is mightier than I & whose shall I catch I am not worthy to ^{such} ~~unleash~~ & must I
say of my father concerning this thing & my father said that he should baptize in the
Jordan & he also spoke that he should baptize with water; ye even
that he should baptize the Jews with water & of that he had baptized the Jews
with water he should he had been aware that he had baptized the Jews of
that he should take away the sin of the world & it came to pass that after my father
had spoken these words, ^{he} ~~he~~ spake unto my father & my father said that he should
which should be preached among the Jews & also concerning the Messiah & of

The Jews in unbelief of ~~the~~ ^{who} they had slain the Messiah ^{who} should come
yet ~~that~~ ^{dead} he had been slain he should rise from the ~~dead~~ ^{dead} & should make him
self manifest by the Holy Ghost unto the Gentiles ^{who} ¹⁸ ¹⁹ ²⁰ ²¹ ²² ²³ ²⁴ ²⁵ ²⁶ ²⁷ ²⁸ ²⁹ ³⁰ ³¹ ³² ³³ ³⁴ ³⁵ ³⁶ ³⁷ ³⁸ ³⁹ ⁴⁰ ⁴¹ ⁴² ⁴³ ⁴⁴ ⁴⁵ ⁴⁶ ⁴⁷ ⁴⁸ ⁴⁹ ⁵⁰ ⁵¹ ⁵² ⁵³ ⁵⁴ ⁵⁵ ⁵⁶ ⁵⁷ ⁵⁸ ⁵⁹ ⁶⁰ ⁶¹ ⁶² ⁶³ ⁶⁴ ⁶⁵ ⁶⁶ ⁶⁷ ⁶⁸ ⁶⁹ ⁷⁰ ⁷¹ ⁷² ⁷³ ⁷⁴ ⁷⁵ ⁷⁶ ⁷⁷ ⁷⁸ ⁷⁹ ⁸⁰ ⁸¹ ⁸² ⁸³ ⁸⁴ ⁸⁵ ⁸⁶ ⁸⁷ ⁸⁸ ⁸⁹ ⁹⁰ ⁹¹ ⁹² ⁹³ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁵ ⁹⁶ ⁹⁷ ⁹⁸ ⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰ ¹⁰¹ ¹⁰² ¹⁰³ ¹⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁹ ¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹ ¹¹² ¹¹³ ¹¹⁴ ¹¹⁵ ¹¹⁶ ¹¹⁷ ¹¹⁸ ¹¹⁹ ¹²⁰ ¹²¹ ¹²² ¹²³ ¹²⁴ ¹²⁵ ¹²⁶ ¹²⁷ ¹²⁸ ¹²⁹ ¹³⁰ ¹³¹ ¹³² ¹³³ ¹³⁴ ¹³⁵ ¹³⁶ ¹³⁷ ¹³⁸ ¹³⁹ ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴¹ ¹⁴² ¹⁴³ ¹⁴⁴ ¹⁴⁵ ¹⁴⁶ ¹⁴⁷ ¹⁴⁸ ¹⁴⁹ ¹⁵⁰ ¹⁵¹ ¹⁵² ¹⁵³ ¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁵⁶ ¹⁵⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ¹⁵⁹ ¹⁶⁰ ¹⁶¹ ¹⁶² ¹⁶³ ¹⁶⁴ ¹⁶⁵ ¹⁶⁶ ¹⁶⁷ ¹⁶⁸ ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁷⁰ ¹⁷¹ ¹⁷² ¹⁷³ ¹⁷⁴ ¹⁷⁵ ¹⁷⁶ ¹⁷⁷ ¹⁷⁸ ¹⁷⁹ ¹⁸⁰ ¹⁸¹ ¹⁸² ¹⁸³ ¹⁸⁴ ¹⁸⁵ ¹⁸⁶ ¹⁸⁷ ¹⁸⁸ ¹⁸⁹ ¹⁹⁰ ¹⁹¹ ¹⁹² ¹⁹³ ¹⁹⁴ ¹⁹⁵ ¹⁹⁶ ¹⁹⁷ ¹⁹⁸ ¹⁹⁹ ²⁰⁰ ²⁰¹ ²⁰² ²⁰³ ²⁰⁴ ²⁰⁵ ²⁰⁶ ²⁰⁷ ²⁰⁸ ²⁰⁹ ²¹⁰ ²¹¹ ²¹² ²¹³ ²¹⁴ ²¹⁵ ²¹⁶ ²¹⁷ ²¹⁸ ²¹⁹ ²²⁰ ²²¹ ²²² ²²³ ²²⁴ ²²⁵ ²²⁶ ²²⁷ ²²⁸ ²²⁹ ²³⁰ ²³¹ ²³² ²³³ ²³⁴ ²³⁵ ²³⁶ ²³⁷ ²³⁸ ²³⁹ ²⁴⁰ ²⁴¹ ²⁴² ²⁴³ ²⁴⁴ ²⁴⁵ ²⁴⁶ ²⁴⁷ ²⁴⁸ ²⁴⁹ ²⁵⁰ ²⁵¹ ²⁵² ²⁵³ ²⁵⁴ ²⁵⁵ ²⁵⁶ ²⁵⁷ ²⁵⁸ ²⁵⁹ ²⁶⁰ ²⁶¹ ²⁶² ²⁶³ ²⁶⁴ ²⁶⁵ ²⁶⁶ ²⁶⁷ ²⁶⁸ ²⁶⁹ ²⁷⁰ ²⁷¹ ²⁷² ²⁷³ ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁵ ²⁷⁶ ²⁷⁷ ²⁷⁸ ²⁷⁹ ²⁸⁰ ²⁸¹ ²⁸² ²⁸³ ²⁸⁴ ²⁸⁵ ²⁸⁶ ²⁸⁷ ²⁸⁸ ²⁸⁹ ²⁹⁰ ²⁹¹ ²⁹² ²⁹³ ²⁹⁴ ²⁹⁵ ²⁹⁶ ²⁹⁷ ²⁹⁸ ²⁹⁹ ³⁰⁰ ³⁰¹ ³⁰² ³⁰³ ³⁰⁴ ³⁰⁵ ³⁰⁶ ³⁰⁷ ³⁰⁸ ³⁰⁹ ³¹⁰ ³¹¹ ³¹² ³¹³ ³¹⁴ ³¹⁵ ³¹⁶ ³¹⁷ ³¹⁸ ³¹⁹ ³²⁰ ³²¹ ³²² ³²³ ³²⁴ ³²⁵ ³²⁶ ³²⁷ ³²⁸ ³²⁹ ³³⁰ ³³¹ ³³² ³³³ ³³⁴ ³³⁵ ³³⁶ ³³⁷ ³³⁸ ³³⁹ ³⁴⁰ ³⁴¹ ³⁴² ³⁴³ ³⁴⁴ ³⁴⁵ ³⁴⁶ ³⁴⁷ ³⁴⁸ ³⁴⁹ ³⁵⁰ ³⁵¹ ³⁵² ³⁵³ ³⁵⁴ ³⁵⁵ ³⁵⁶ ³⁵⁷ ³⁵⁸ ³⁵⁹ ³⁶⁰ ³⁶¹ ³⁶² ³⁶³ ³⁶⁴ ³⁶⁵ ³⁶⁶ ³⁶⁷ ³⁶⁸ ³⁶⁹ ³⁷⁰ ³⁷¹ ³⁷² ³⁷³ ³⁷⁴ ³⁷⁵ ³⁷⁶ ³⁷⁷ ³⁷⁸ ³⁷⁹ ³⁸⁰ ³⁸¹ ³⁸² ³⁸³ ³⁸⁴ ³⁸⁵ ³⁸⁶ ³⁸⁷ ³⁸⁸ ³⁸⁹ ³⁹⁰ ³⁹¹ ³⁹² ³⁹³ ³⁹⁴ ³⁹⁵ ³⁹⁶ ³⁹⁷ ³⁹⁸ ³⁹⁹ ⁴⁰⁰ ⁴⁰¹ ⁴⁰² ⁴⁰³ ⁴⁰⁴ ⁴⁰⁵ ⁴⁰⁶ ⁴⁰⁷ ⁴⁰⁸ ⁴⁰⁹ ⁴¹⁰ ⁴¹¹ ⁴¹² ⁴¹³ ⁴¹⁴ ⁴¹⁵ ⁴¹⁶ ⁴¹⁷ ⁴¹⁸ ⁴¹⁹ ⁴²⁰ ⁴²¹ ⁴²² ⁴²³ ⁴²⁴ ⁴²⁵ ⁴²⁶ ⁴²⁷ ⁴²⁸ ⁴²⁹ ⁴³⁰ ⁴³¹ ⁴³² ⁴³³ ⁴³⁴ ⁴³⁵ ⁴³⁶ ⁴³⁷ ⁴³⁸ ⁴³⁹ ⁴⁴⁰ ⁴⁴¹ ⁴⁴² ⁴⁴³ ⁴⁴⁴ ⁴⁴⁵ ⁴⁴⁶ ⁴⁴⁷ ⁴⁴⁸ ⁴⁴⁹ ⁴⁵⁰ ⁴⁵¹ ⁴⁵² ⁴⁵³ ⁴⁵⁴ ⁴⁵⁵ ⁴⁵⁶ ⁴⁵⁷ ⁴⁵⁸ ⁴⁵⁹ ⁴⁶⁰ ⁴⁶¹ ⁴⁶² ⁴⁶³ ⁴⁶⁴ ⁴⁶⁵ ⁴⁶⁶ ⁴⁶⁷ ⁴⁶⁸ ⁴⁶⁹ ⁴⁷⁰ ⁴⁷¹ ⁴⁷² ⁴⁷³ ⁴⁷⁴ ⁴⁷⁵ ⁴⁷⁶ ⁴⁷⁷ ⁴⁷⁸ ⁴⁷⁹ ⁴⁸⁰ ⁴⁸¹ ⁴⁸² ⁴⁸³ ⁴⁸⁴ ⁴⁸⁵ ⁴⁸⁶ ⁴⁸⁷ ⁴⁸⁸ ⁴⁸⁹ ⁴⁹⁰ ⁴⁹¹ ⁴⁹² ⁴⁹³ ⁴⁹⁴ ⁴⁹⁵ ⁴⁹⁶ ⁴⁹⁷ ⁴⁹⁸ ⁴⁹⁹ ⁵⁰⁰ ⁵⁰¹ ⁵⁰² ⁵⁰³ ⁵⁰⁴ ⁵⁰⁵ ⁵⁰⁶ ⁵⁰⁷ ⁵⁰⁸ ⁵⁰⁹ ⁵¹⁰ ⁵¹¹ ⁵¹² ⁵¹³ ⁵¹⁴ ⁵¹⁵ ⁵¹⁶ ⁵¹⁷ ⁵¹⁸ ⁵¹⁹ ⁵²⁰ ⁵²¹ ⁵²² ⁵²³ ⁵²⁴ ⁵²⁵ ⁵²⁶ ⁵²⁷ ⁵²⁸ ⁵²⁹ ⁵³⁰ ⁵³¹ ⁵³² ⁵³³ ⁵³⁴ ⁵³⁵ ⁵³⁶ ⁵³⁷ ⁵³⁸ ⁵³⁹ ⁵⁴⁰ ⁵⁴¹ ⁵⁴² ⁵⁴³ ⁵⁴⁴ ⁵⁴⁵ ⁵⁴⁶ ⁵⁴⁷ ⁵⁴⁸ ⁵⁴⁹ ⁵⁵⁰ ⁵⁵¹ ⁵⁵² ⁵⁵³ ⁵⁵⁴ ⁵⁵⁵ ⁵⁵⁶ ⁵⁵⁷ ⁵⁵⁸ ⁵⁵⁹ ⁵⁶⁰ ⁵⁶¹ ⁵⁶² ⁵⁶³ ⁵⁶⁴ ⁵⁶⁵ ⁵⁶⁶ ⁵⁶⁷ ⁵⁶⁸ ⁵⁶⁹ ⁵⁷⁰ ⁵⁷¹ ⁵⁷² ⁵⁷³ ⁵⁷⁴ ⁵⁷⁵ ⁵⁷⁶ ⁵⁷⁷ ⁵⁷⁸ ⁵⁷⁹ ⁵⁸⁰ ⁵⁸¹ ⁵⁸² ⁵⁸³ ⁵⁸⁴ ⁵⁸⁵ ⁵⁸⁶ ⁵⁸⁷ ⁵⁸⁸ ⁵⁸⁹ ⁵⁹⁰ ⁵⁹¹ ⁵⁹² ⁵⁹³ ⁵⁹⁴ ⁵⁹⁵ ⁵⁹⁶ ⁵⁹⁷ ⁵⁹⁸ ⁵⁹⁹ ⁶⁰⁰ ⁶⁰¹ ⁶⁰² ⁶⁰³ ⁶⁰⁴ ⁶⁰⁵ ⁶⁰⁶ ⁶⁰⁷ ⁶⁰⁸ ⁶⁰⁹ ⁶¹⁰ ⁶¹¹ ⁶¹² ⁶¹³ ⁶¹⁴ ⁶¹⁵ ⁶¹⁶ ⁶¹⁷ ⁶¹⁸ ⁶¹⁹ ⁶²⁰ ⁶²¹ ⁶²² ⁶²³ ⁶²⁴ ⁶²⁵ ⁶²⁶ ⁶²⁷ ⁶²⁸ ⁶²⁹ ⁶³⁰ ⁶³¹ ⁶³² ⁶³³ ⁶³⁴ ⁶³⁵ ⁶³⁶ ⁶³⁷ ⁶³⁸ ⁶³⁹ ⁶⁴⁰ ⁶⁴¹ ⁶⁴² ⁶⁴³ ⁶⁴⁴ ⁶⁴⁵ ⁶⁴⁶ ⁶⁴⁷ ⁶⁴⁸ ⁶⁴⁹ ⁶⁵⁰ ⁶⁵¹ ⁶⁵² ⁶⁵³ ⁶⁵⁴ ⁶⁵⁵ ⁶⁵⁶ ⁶⁵⁷ ⁶⁵⁸ ⁶⁵⁹ ⁶⁶⁰ ⁶⁶¹ ⁶⁶² ⁶⁶³ ⁶⁶⁴ ⁶⁶⁵ ⁶⁶⁶ ⁶⁶⁷ ⁶⁶⁸ ⁶⁶⁹ ⁶⁷⁰ ⁶⁷¹ ⁶⁷² ⁶⁷³ ⁶⁷⁴ ⁶⁷⁵ ⁶⁷⁶ ⁶⁷⁷ ⁶⁷⁸ ⁶⁷⁹ ⁶⁸⁰ ⁶⁸¹ ⁶⁸² ⁶⁸³ ⁶⁸⁴ ⁶⁸⁵ ⁶⁸⁶ ⁶⁸⁷ ⁶⁸⁸ ⁶⁸⁹ ⁶⁹⁰ ⁶⁹¹ ⁶⁹² ⁶⁹³ ⁶⁹⁴ ⁶⁹⁵ ⁶⁹⁶ ⁶⁹⁷ ⁶⁹⁸ ⁶⁹⁹ ⁷⁰⁰ ⁷⁰¹ ⁷⁰² ⁷⁰³ ⁷⁰⁴ ⁷⁰⁵ ⁷⁰⁶ ⁷⁰⁷ ⁷⁰⁸ ⁷⁰⁹ ⁷¹⁰ ⁷¹¹ ⁷¹² ⁷¹³ ⁷¹⁴ ⁷¹⁵ ⁷¹⁶ ⁷¹⁷ ⁷¹⁸ ⁷¹⁹ ⁷²⁰ ⁷²¹ ⁷²² ⁷²³ ⁷²⁴ ⁷²⁵ ⁷²⁶ ⁷²⁷ ⁷²⁸ ⁷²⁹ ⁷³⁰ ⁷³¹ ⁷³² ⁷³³ ⁷³⁴ ⁷³⁵ ⁷³⁶ ⁷³⁷ ⁷³⁸ ⁷³⁹ ⁷⁴⁰ ⁷⁴¹ ⁷⁴² ⁷⁴³ ⁷⁴⁴ ⁷⁴⁵ ⁷⁴⁶ ⁷⁴⁷ ⁷⁴⁸ ⁷⁴⁹ ⁷⁵⁰ ⁷⁵¹ ⁷⁵² ⁷⁵³ ⁷⁵⁴ ⁷⁵⁵ ⁷⁵⁶ ⁷⁵⁷ ⁷⁵⁸ ⁷⁵⁹ ⁷⁶⁰ ⁷⁶¹ ⁷⁶² ⁷⁶³ ⁷⁶⁴ ⁷⁶⁵ ⁷⁶⁶ ⁷⁶⁷ ⁷⁶⁸ ⁷⁶⁹ ⁷⁷⁰ ⁷⁷¹ ⁷⁷² ⁷⁷³ ⁷⁷⁴ ⁷⁷⁵ ⁷⁷⁶ ⁷⁷⁷ ⁷⁷⁸ ⁷⁷⁹ ⁷⁸⁰ ⁷⁸¹ ⁷⁸² ⁷⁸³ ⁷⁸⁴ ⁷⁸⁵ ⁷⁸⁶ ⁷⁸⁷ ⁷⁸⁸ ⁷⁸⁹ ⁷⁹⁰ ⁷⁹¹ ⁷⁹² ⁷⁹³ ⁷⁹⁴ ⁷⁹⁵ ⁷⁹⁶ ⁷⁹⁷ ⁷⁹⁸ ⁷⁹⁹ ⁸⁰⁰ ⁸⁰¹ ⁸⁰² ⁸⁰³ ⁸⁰⁴ ⁸⁰⁵ ⁸⁰⁶ ⁸⁰⁷ ⁸⁰⁸ ⁸⁰⁹ ⁸¹⁰ ⁸¹¹ ⁸¹² ⁸¹³ ⁸¹⁴ ⁸¹⁵ ⁸¹⁶ ⁸¹⁷ ⁸¹⁸ ⁸¹⁹ ⁸²⁰ ⁸²¹ ⁸²² ⁸²³ ⁸²⁴ ⁸²⁵ ⁸²⁶ ⁸²⁷ ⁸²⁸ ⁸²⁹ ⁸³⁰ ⁸³¹ ⁸³² ⁸³³ ⁸³⁴ ⁸³⁵ ⁸³⁶ ⁸³⁷ ⁸³⁸ ⁸³⁹ ⁸⁴⁰ ⁸⁴¹ ⁸⁴² ⁸⁴³ ⁸⁴⁴ ⁸⁴⁵ ⁸⁴⁶ ⁸⁴⁷ ⁸⁴⁸ ⁸⁴⁹ ⁸⁵⁰ ⁸⁵¹ ⁸⁵² ⁸⁵³ ⁸⁵⁴ ⁸⁵⁵ ⁸⁵⁶ ⁸⁵⁷ ⁸⁵⁸ ⁸⁵⁹ ⁸⁶⁰ ⁸⁶¹ ⁸⁶² ⁸⁶³ ⁸⁶⁴ ⁸⁶⁵ ⁸⁶⁶ ⁸⁶⁷ ⁸⁶⁸ ⁸⁶⁹ ⁸⁷⁰ ⁸⁷¹ ⁸⁷² ⁸⁷³ ⁸⁷⁴ ⁸⁷⁵ ⁸⁷⁶ ⁸⁷⁷ ⁸⁷⁸ ⁸⁷⁹ ⁸⁸⁰ ⁸⁸¹ ⁸⁸² ⁸⁸³ ⁸⁸⁴ ⁸⁸⁵ ⁸⁸⁶ ⁸⁸⁷ ⁸⁸⁸ ⁸⁸⁹ ⁸⁹⁰ ⁸⁹¹ ⁸⁹² ⁸⁹³ ⁸⁹⁴ ⁸⁹⁵ ⁸⁹⁶ ⁸⁹⁷ ⁸⁹⁸ ⁸⁹⁹ ⁹⁰⁰ ⁹⁰¹ ⁹⁰² ⁹⁰³ ⁹⁰⁴ ⁹⁰⁵ ⁹⁰⁶ ⁹⁰⁷ ⁹⁰⁸ ⁹⁰⁹ ⁹¹⁰ ⁹¹¹ ⁹¹² ⁹¹³ ⁹¹⁴ ⁹¹⁵ ⁹¹⁶ ⁹¹⁷ ⁹¹⁸ ⁹¹⁹ ⁹²⁰ ⁹²¹ ⁹²² ⁹²³ ⁹²⁴ ⁹²⁵ ⁹²⁶ ⁹²⁷ ⁹²⁸ ⁹²⁹ ⁹³⁰ ⁹³¹ ⁹³² ⁹³³ ⁹³⁴ ⁹³⁵ ⁹³⁶ ⁹³⁷ ⁹³⁸ ⁹³⁹ ⁹⁴⁰ ⁹⁴¹ ⁹⁴² ⁹⁴³ ⁹⁴⁴ ⁹⁴⁵ ⁹⁴⁶ ⁹⁴⁷ ⁹⁴⁸ ⁹⁴⁹ ⁹⁵⁰ ⁹⁵¹ ⁹⁵² ⁹⁵³ ⁹⁵⁴ ⁹⁵⁵ ⁹⁵⁶ ⁹⁵⁷ ⁹⁵⁸ ⁹⁵⁹ ⁹⁶⁰ ⁹⁶¹ ⁹⁶² ⁹⁶³ ⁹⁶⁴ ⁹⁶⁵ ⁹⁶⁶ ⁹⁶⁷ ⁹⁶⁸ ⁹⁶⁹ ⁹⁷⁰ ⁹⁷¹ ⁹⁷² ⁹⁷³ ⁹⁷⁴ ⁹⁷⁵ ⁹⁷⁶ ⁹⁷⁷ ⁹⁷⁸ ⁹⁷⁹ ⁹⁸⁰ ⁹⁸¹ ⁹⁸² ⁹⁸³ ⁹⁸⁴ ⁹⁸⁵ ⁹⁸⁶ ⁹⁸⁷ ⁹⁸⁸ ⁹⁸⁹ ⁹⁹⁰ ⁹⁹¹ ⁹⁹² ⁹⁹³ ⁹⁹⁴ ⁹⁹⁵ ⁹⁹⁶ ⁹⁹⁷ ⁹⁹⁸ ⁹⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰⁰ ¹⁰⁰¹ ¹⁰⁰² ¹⁰⁰³ ¹⁰⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁰⁹ ¹⁰¹⁰ ¹⁰¹¹ ¹⁰¹² ¹⁰¹³ ¹⁰¹⁴ ¹⁰¹⁵ ¹⁰¹⁶ ¹⁰¹⁷ ¹⁰¹⁸ ¹⁰¹⁹ ¹⁰²⁰ ¹⁰²¹ ¹⁰²² ¹⁰²³ ¹⁰²⁴ ¹⁰²⁵ ¹⁰²⁶ ¹⁰²⁷ ¹⁰²⁸ ¹⁰²⁹ ¹⁰³⁰ ¹⁰³¹ ¹⁰³² ¹⁰³³ ¹⁰³⁴ ¹⁰³⁵ ¹⁰³⁶ ¹⁰³⁷ ¹⁰³⁸ ¹⁰³⁹ ¹⁰⁴⁰ ¹⁰⁴¹ ¹⁰⁴² ¹⁰⁴³ ¹⁰⁴⁴ ¹⁰⁴⁵ ¹⁰⁴⁶ ¹⁰⁴⁷ ¹⁰⁴⁸ ¹⁰⁴⁹ ¹⁰⁵⁰ ¹⁰⁵¹ ¹⁰⁵² ¹⁰⁵³ ¹⁰⁵⁴ ¹⁰⁵⁵ ¹⁰⁵⁶ ¹⁰⁵⁷ ¹⁰⁵⁸ ¹⁰⁵⁹ ¹⁰⁶⁰ ¹⁰⁶¹ ¹⁰⁶² ¹⁰⁶³ ¹⁰⁶⁴ ¹⁰⁶⁵ ¹⁰⁶⁶ ¹⁰⁶⁷ ¹⁰⁶⁸ ¹⁰⁶⁹ ¹⁰⁷⁰ ¹⁰⁷¹ ¹⁰⁷² ¹⁰⁷³ ¹⁰⁷⁴ ¹⁰⁷⁵ ¹⁰⁷⁶ ¹⁰⁷⁷ ¹⁰⁷⁸ ¹⁰⁷⁹ ¹⁰⁸⁰ ¹⁰⁸¹ ¹⁰⁸² ¹⁰⁸³ ¹⁰⁸⁴ ¹⁰⁸⁵ ¹⁰⁸⁶ ¹⁰⁸⁷ ¹⁰⁸⁸ ¹⁰⁸⁹ ¹⁰⁹⁰ ¹⁰⁹¹ ¹⁰⁹² ¹⁰⁹³ ¹⁰⁹⁴ ¹⁰⁹⁵ ¹⁰⁹⁶ ¹⁰⁹⁷ ¹⁰⁹⁸ ¹⁰⁹⁹ ¹¹⁰⁰ ¹¹⁰¹ ¹¹⁰² ¹¹⁰³ ¹¹⁰⁴ ¹¹⁰⁵ ¹¹⁰⁶ ¹¹⁰⁷ ¹¹⁰⁸ ¹¹⁰⁹ ¹¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹¹ ¹¹¹² ¹¹¹³ ¹¹¹⁴ ¹¹¹⁵ ¹¹¹⁶ ¹¹¹⁷ ¹¹¹⁸ ¹¹¹⁹ ¹¹²⁰ ¹¹²¹ ¹¹²² ¹¹²³ ¹¹²⁴ ¹¹²⁵ ¹¹²⁶ ¹¹²⁷ ¹¹²⁸ ¹¹²⁹ ¹¹³⁰ ¹¹³¹ ¹¹³² ¹¹³³ ¹¹³⁴ ¹¹³⁵ ¹¹³⁶ ¹¹³⁷ ¹¹³⁸ ¹¹³⁹ ¹¹⁴⁰ ¹¹⁴¹ ¹¹⁴² ¹¹⁴³ ¹¹⁴⁴ ¹¹⁴⁵ ¹¹⁴⁶ ¹¹⁴⁷ ¹¹⁴⁸ ¹¹⁴⁹ ¹¹⁵⁰ ¹¹⁵¹ ¹¹⁵² ¹¹⁵³ ¹¹⁵⁴ ¹¹⁵⁵ ¹¹⁵⁶ ¹¹⁵⁷ ¹¹⁵⁸ ¹¹⁵⁹ ¹¹⁶⁰ ¹¹⁶¹ ¹¹⁶² ¹¹⁶³ ¹¹⁶⁴ ¹¹⁶⁵ ¹¹⁶⁶ ¹¹⁶⁷ ¹¹⁶⁸ ¹¹⁶⁹ ¹¹⁷⁰ ¹¹⁷¹ ¹¹⁷² ¹¹⁷³ ¹¹⁷⁴ ¹¹⁷⁵ ¹¹⁷⁶ ¹¹⁷⁷ ¹¹⁷⁸ ¹¹⁷⁹ ¹¹⁸⁰ ¹¹⁸¹ ¹¹⁸² ¹¹⁸³ ¹¹⁸⁴ ¹¹⁸⁵ ¹¹⁸⁶ ¹¹⁸⁷ ¹¹⁸⁸ ¹¹⁸⁹ ¹¹⁹⁰ ¹¹⁹¹ ¹¹⁹² ¹¹⁹³ ¹¹⁹⁴ ¹¹⁹⁵ ¹¹⁹⁶ ¹¹⁹⁷ ¹¹⁹⁸ ¹¹⁹⁹ ¹²⁰⁰ ¹²⁰¹ ¹²⁰² ¹²⁰³ ¹²⁰⁴ ¹²⁰⁵ ¹²⁰⁶ ¹²⁰⁷ ¹²⁰⁸ ¹²⁰⁹ ¹²¹⁰ ¹²¹¹ ¹²¹² ¹²¹³ ¹²¹⁴ ¹²¹⁵ ¹²¹⁶ ¹²¹⁷ ¹²¹⁸ ¹²¹⁹ ¹²²⁰ ¹²²¹ ¹²²² ¹²²³ ¹²²⁴ ¹²²⁵ ¹²²⁶ ¹²²⁷ ¹²²⁸ ¹²²⁹ ¹²³⁰ ¹²³¹ ¹²³² ¹²³³ ¹²³⁴ ¹²³⁵ ¹²³⁶ ¹²³⁷ ¹²³⁸ ¹²³⁹ ¹²⁴⁰ ¹²⁴¹ ¹²⁴² ¹²⁴³ ¹²⁴⁴ ¹²⁴⁵ ¹²⁴⁶ ¹²⁴⁷ ¹²⁴⁸ ¹²⁴⁹ ¹²⁵⁰ ¹²⁵¹ ¹²⁵² ¹²⁵³ ¹²⁵⁴ ¹²⁵⁵ ¹²⁵⁶ ¹²⁵⁷ ¹²⁵⁸ ¹²⁵⁹ ¹²⁶⁰ ¹²⁶¹ ¹²⁶² ¹²⁶³ ¹²⁶⁴ ¹²⁶⁵ ¹²⁶⁶ ¹²⁶⁷ ¹²⁶⁸ ¹²⁶⁹ ¹²⁷⁰ ¹²⁷¹ ¹²⁷² ¹²⁷³ ¹²⁷⁴ ¹²⁷⁵ ¹²⁷⁶ ¹²⁷⁷ ¹²⁷⁸ ¹²⁷⁹ ¹²⁸⁰ ¹²⁸¹ ¹²⁸² ¹²⁸³ ¹²⁸⁴ ¹²⁸⁵ ¹²⁸⁶ ¹²⁸⁷ ¹²⁸⁸ ¹²⁸⁹ ¹²⁹⁰ ¹²⁹¹ ¹²⁹² ¹²⁹³ ¹²⁹⁴ ¹²⁹⁵ ¹²⁹⁶ ¹²⁹⁷ ¹²⁹⁸ ¹²⁹⁹ ¹³⁰⁰ ¹³⁰¹ ¹³⁰² ¹³⁰³ ¹³⁰⁴ ¹³⁰⁵ ¹³⁰⁶ ¹³⁰⁷ ¹³⁰⁸ ¹³⁰⁹ ¹³¹⁰ ¹³¹¹ ¹³¹² ¹³¹³ ¹³¹⁴ ¹³¹⁵ ¹³¹⁶ ¹³¹⁷ ¹³¹⁸ ¹³¹⁹ ¹³²⁰ ¹³²¹ ¹³²² ¹³²³ ¹³²⁴ ¹³²⁵ ¹³²⁶ ¹³²⁷ ¹³²⁸ ¹³²⁹ ¹³³⁰ ¹³³¹ ¹³³² ¹³³³ ¹³³⁴ ¹³³⁵ ¹³³⁶ ¹³³⁷ ¹³³⁸ ¹³³⁹ ¹³⁴⁰ ¹³⁴¹

Then known unto me ^{that} I sat pondering in mine heart I was
right away in the spirit of the Lord yea into an exceeding high mountain where
the Lincen had before seen & upon which I never had before sat my feet
& the spirit ^{said} unto me behold what desirest thou & I ^{said} I desire
to behold the things which my father saw & the spirit said unto me believe
it that that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken & I said yea
thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father & when I had
spoken these words the spirit cried with a loud voice saying Hear ye to the
Lord the most high God for he is God on all the earth yea even above all
& blessed art thou Ophi because thou believest in the Son of the most
high God wherefore thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired
& behold & behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign that after thou
hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted thou shalt
also behold a man descending out of Heaven & him thou shalt see witness &
often that ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of
God & it came to pass that the spirit ^{said} unto me look & I looked & be-
held a tree & it was like unto the tree which my father had seen & the beauty
thereof was far beyond all exceeding of all beauty & the whiteness thereof ^{was}
exceed the whiteness of the driven snow & it came to pass that after ^{he}
had seen the tree I said unto the spirit I behold thou hast shown unto me
the tree which is precious above all & he ^{said} unto me what desirest thou
& I said unto him to know the interpretation thereof for I spake unto him
as a man speaketh & he beheld that he was in the form of a man yet not
nevertheless I knew that it was the spirit of the Lord & he spake unto me
as a man speaketh ^{with} a voice & it came to pass that he said unto me look
I looked as if to look upon him & I saw him not for he had gone from before
of presence & it came to pass that I looked & beheld the great City Jerusalem
& also other Cities & I beheld the City of Nazareth & in the City of Nazareth I
beheld a virgin & she was exceedingly fair & white & it came to pass that I
^{saw} the heavens open & an angel came down & stood before me & he ^{said}
unto me Ophi what beholdest thou & I said unto him a virgin most
beautiful & fair above all other virgins & he ^{said} unto me knowest
thou the Condescension of God & I said unto him I know that he loveth his
Children nevertheless I do not know the meaning of all this & he ^{said}
unto me behold the virgin upon whom shall rest the ^{fulfilling} of the
promises of the flesh & it came to pass that I beheld that she was a
lawyer in the Court & after that I had been called I was in the

157
And it for the space of a time the Angel spake unto me saying, look & I
looked & beheld the rings again bearing a Child in his arms & the Angel
said unto me he hold the Lamb of God even the eternal Father in the
knowing of the meaning of the tree which thy father saw & I answered him
saying, yea it is the love of God which shall abide in the hearts of the children
of men wherefore it is the most desirable above all things & he spake unto
me saying, yea it is the most precious to the soul & after that he had said these words
he said unto me, look & I looked & beheld the Son of God appearing forth
among the children of men & I saw many fall down at his feet & worship
him & it came to pass that I beheld that the road of snow which my father
had seen was the word of God which lead to the fountain of living
water unto the tree of life which waters are a representation of the love of
God & I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of
the Angel said unto me again, look & I beheld the Condescension of God & I
looked & beheld the redemption of the world of ^{whom} my father had spoken
I also beheld the ^{who} should prepare the way before him & the
Lamb of God went forth & was baptized of him & after that he was baptized
he held the heavens open & the Holy Ghost came down out of heaven & abode
upon him in the form of a dove & I beheld that he went forth minister-
ing unto the people in power & great glory & the multitudes were gather-
ed together to hear him & I beheld that they cast him out from among
them & I also beheld twelve others following him & it came to pass that
they were carried away in the spirit from before my face that I saw the
sign & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me again saying, look & I
looked & I beheld the heavens open again & I saw angels descending upon
the children of men & they did minister unto them & he spake unto me again
saying, look & I looked & I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the
children of men & I beheld multitudes of people ^{who} were afflicted with
with ^{with} were afflicted of all manner of diseases & with Devils & unclean
spirits & the Angel spake & shewed all these things unto me & they were he-
aled by the power of the Lamb of God & the Devils & the unclean spirits were
cast out & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me again saying
look & I looked & I beheld the Lamb of God that he was taken by the city
people & was crucified & I saw & heard second & I
saw that he was lifted up upon the Cross & slain for the sins of
the world & after that he was slain I saw multitudes of the people
that they were gathered together to pick up the bones of the

115
Lamb in the vision the twelve called by the angel of the Lord & the
multitudes of the earth was gathered together & I beheld that they were
in a large & spacious building like unto the building which my
father saw & the Angel of the Lord spake unto me again saying behold the
world & the wisdom thereof ye have held the Hoare of Israel hath gathered to-
gether to fight against the Twelve. About 10 of the Lamb & it came to pass that
I saw & heard & saw that the great & spacious building was the pride of
the world & it fell & the fall thereof was exceeding great & the Angel of the Lord
spake unto me again saying there shall be the destruction of all Nations
Kindreds & Families & People that shall fight against the twelve Apostles
of the Lamb & it came to pass that the Angel said unto me look & beh
old thy seed & also the seed of thy brethren & I looked & beheld that I saw
the land of promise & I beheld multitudes of People yea even as the
seed in number as many as the sand of the Sea & it came to pass that I
beheld multitudes gathered together to battle against the twelve
I beheld many millions of men & great slaughters with the sword and
my my People & it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away
in the manner of wars & contentions in the land & I beheld many
Cities yea even that I did not number them & it came to pass that I saw
a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise & I saw lightnings & I heard
thunderings & earthquakes & all manner of tumultuous noises & I saw the
earth & the rocks that they rent & I saw mountains tumbling into pieces
I saw the plains of the earth that they were broken up & I saw many Cities
that they were sunk & I saw many that they were burned with fire & I
saw many that they did tumble to the earth because of the quaking thereof
& it came to pass that after I saw these things I saw the vapor of dark-
ness that it passed from off the face of the earth & behold I saw multitudes
who had fallen because of the great & terrible judgments of the
Lord & I saw the Heavens open & the Lamb of God descending out of the
open & he came down & shewed himself unto them & I saw & heard
record that the Holy Ghost fell upon them & they were ordained
of God & chosen & the Angel spake unto me saying behold the
twelve of the Lamb ^{who} I have chosen to minister unto thy seed & he
unto me that I should be with the twelve Apostles of the Lamb & behold
are they ^{who} shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel under the
true law ministers of thy seed shall be & I saw & heard of the
of Israel & these twelve ministers & I saw that

And he said I beheld the angel ^{and} righteous foremen for because of
their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made whole in the
blood of the Lamb. ^{And} the angel ^{said} unto me ^{and} I dook & beheld ^{the}
~~generations~~ ^{generations} did pass away in righteousness & their garments were whole
like even like unto the Lamb of God & the angel said unto me these
are made whole in the blood of the Lamb because of their faith in him.
And I ^{also} saw many of the fourth generation ^{which} did pass away in right
tearfulness & it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the Lamb gathered to
gather & the angel said unto me behold the seed & also the seed of thy brethren & it
came to pass that I looked & beheld the people of my seed gathered together in mul-
titudes against the seed of my brethren & they were gathered together to battle
the angel spoke unto me saying behold the fountain of filthy water which
thy father saw yea even the men which he spoke of the debtors of hell & the mists of darkness are the temptations of the Devil which blind
the eyes & harden the hearts of the children of men & leadeth them away
into broadness & leads that they may perish & I saw the large & vicious build-
ing which thy father saw is vain imagination & the pride of the children of men
& a great & terrible sin of diuinity them yea even the word of the Father of the
Father ^(Mormon) ^{who} is the Lamb of God of whom the Holy Ghost bear-
eth record from the beginning of the world until this time & from this time
hence forth & forever & a while the angel spoke these words I beheld it was that the
seed of my brethren did contend against my seed according to the word of the angel
& because of the pride of my seed & the temptations of the Devil I beheld that the
seed of my brethren did overcome the people of my seed & it came to pass that I be-
held & saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed & they went
forth in multitudes upon the face of the land & I saw them gathered together in multi-
tudes & I saw many & numerous of wars among them & I saw many of wars & many
generations pass away & the angel said unto me behold these shall dwindle in un-
belief & it came to pass that I beheld that after they had dwindled in unbelief they
became a dark & loathsome & filthy people full of idleness & all manner of
iniquities & it came to pass that the angel spoke unto me saying look & I looked &
beheld ^{many} nations & kingdoms & the angel said unto me what beholdest thou &
I said I beheld many nations & kingdoms & he said unto me these are the nations &
kingdoms of the Gentiles & it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles
is the foundation of a great Church & the angel said unto me behold the founda-
tion of a Church which is most abominable about all other Churches which
do reject the Spirit of God & torment them & lead them down

make them with a yoke of iron & bring them down into captivity & it came
to pass that I beheld this great & abominable ^{Church} saw the Lord that he was the
founder of it & also saw gold & silver & silks & warble & fine twined linnen
& all manner of precious clothing & also many Harlots & the Angel spake unto me
saying behold the gold & the silver & the silks & the warble & the fine twined lin-
nen & the precious clothing & the Harlots are the desires of this great & abominable
Church & also for the ^{pride} of the world do they destroy the saints of God & bring them
down into captivity & it came to pass that I looked & beheld many waters & they
divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren & it came to pass that the Angel ^{stood}
threw unto me he held the wrath of God's upon the seed of thy brethren & I looked &
beheld a man among the Gentiles ^{who was} who was separated from the seed of my bre-
thren by the many waters & I beheld the spirit of God that it came down & was
light upon the man & he went forth upon the many waters & came unto the seed
of my brethren ^{who} who were in the promised land & it came to pass that I beheld the sp-
irit of God that it was upon the Gentiles & they went forth out of captivity
unto the many waters & it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of
the Gentiles upon the land of promise & I beheld ~~that~~ the wrath of God that
it was upon the seed of my brethren & they were scattered before the Gentiles & they
were smitten & I beheld the spirit of the Lord that it was upon the Gentiles
that they did prosper & obtain the land for their inheritance & I beheld that
at they were white & exceeding fair & beautiful like unto my people before
that they were slain & it came to pass that I beheld that the Gentiles who
had gone out of captivity did dwell in the wilderness before the Lord & the
power of the Lord was with them & I beheld that there were Gentiles ^{who} who
gathered together upon the waters & upon the land also to battle ag-
ainst them & I beheld that the power of God was with them & also that the ar-
my of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle
& I beheld that the Gentiles ^{that} who had gone out of captivity were delivered
the power of God out of the hands of all other nations & it came to pass that I beheld
that they did prosper in the land & I beheld a book & it was covered
with among them & the Angel said unto me knowest thou the meaning of this
book & I said unto him I know not & he said unto me it proceeded out of the
mouth of God & I beheld that it was sent unto me that I should write that
behold it is a record of the Jews which contains the Covenants of the Lord which
he hath made with the House of Israel & it also containeth many of the
the Holy Prophets & it is a record like unto the former
Notes of Moses & it is a record like unto the former

Covenant of the Lord which he hath made unto the House of Israel where
 fore they are of great worth unto the Gentiles & the Angel of the Lord said unto me Be
 not afraid behold that the Book provideth both from the mouth of a Jew & from a
 Jew & from the mouth of a Gentile contained the plainness of the Gospel of
 the Lord of whom the true Israel has heard & they have heard according to
 the truth which is in the Lamb of God wherefore these things go forth, from the
 Jews & from the Gentiles according to the truth which is in God & after
 that they go forth by the hand of the true line that the of the Lamb, from the Jews &
 unto the Gentiles is behold ~~after~~ this shall rise the foundation of a great & abo-
 minable Church which is the most abominable above all others. Chariot of
 for behold they have taken away from the Gospel of the Lamb many parts which
 are plain & most precious & also many Covenants of the Lord have they taken
 away & all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of
 the Lord that they might blind the eyes & harden the hearts of the children of men who
 before thou seest that after the Book hath gone forth through the hands of the great & ab-
 minable Church that there are many plain & precious things taken away from the
 Book which is the Book of the Lamb of God & after that these plain & precious things
 are taken away it goeth forth unto all the Nations of the Gentiles & of course
 goeth forth unto all the Nations of the Gentiles & even across the many waters
 which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of Captivity
 & shall seed because of the many plain & precious things which have been
 taken out of the Book which were plain ^{understanding of the} unto the children of men according to
 the plainness which is in ^{the} Lamb of God & because of these things which are taken
 away out of the Gospel of the Lamb ~~are~~ exceeding great many. No stumble you
 inasmuch that Satan hath great power over them nevertheless thou shalt see
 that the Gentiles which have gone forth out of Captivity & have been tutted up by
 the power of God above all other Nations upon the face of the Land which is the
 we above all other lands which is the land where the Lord God hath Coven-
 anted with thy Father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance
 & therefore thou shalt see that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gent-
 iles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed ^{who are} among thy brethren
 neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy ^{any} brethren
 all the Lord God will that the Gentiles shall remain in that ^{state of} ~~state of~~
^{blindness} ~~state of blindness~~ which thou shalt see that they are in because of the
 most precious parts of the Gospel of the Lamb which ^{have} been kept
 back by that abominable Church whose formation thou hast seen
 wherefore saith the Lamb of God I will be manifest unto the Gentiles

unto the meeting of the remnant of the House of Israel in great judgment
I came to pass that the Angel of the Lord spake unto me saying behold say
unto the House of Israel after that I have visited the remnant of the House of Israel
of this remnant of ^{whom} I speak in the seed of thy father wherefore after
that I have visited them in judgment I will smite them by the hand of the
Gentiles & after that the Gentiles do humble themselves because of the most
precious & precious words of the Gospel of the Lamb which hath been kept back
by that iniquitous Church which is the Mother of Harlots saith the
Lamb I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day with the
Lamb inasmuch that I will bring forth unto them in mine own person
much of my Gospel which shall be plain & precious saith the Lamb for behold
saith the Lamb I will manifest myself unto thy seed that they shall arise
many things which he shall minister unto them which shall be plain &
precious & after that thy seed shall be destroyed & diminished in unbelief
& also the seed of thy brethren behold these things shall be hid up to come
forth unto the Gentiles by the gift & power of the Lamb & in them shall
be written my Gospel saith the Lamb & my Gospel & my Salvation & blessed
are they who shall seek to bring forth my Lion at that day for they shall have
the gift & the power of the Holy Ghost & if they endure unto the end they shall
be lifted up at the last day & shall be raised in the everlasting Kingdom of
the Lamb ye who shall publish peace that shall publish tidings of great
joy how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be & it came to pass
that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren & also the Book of the
Lamb of God which had passed forth from the mouth of the Lion & I beheld that it
came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren & after that
I saw come forth unto them I beheld other Books which came forth by the power
of the Lamb & from the Gentiles unto them into the Conscience of the Gentiles
& the remnant of the seed of my brethren & also to the Jews who were scattered
upon all the face of the earth that the records of the prophets & of the twelve
apostles of the Lamb are true & the Angel spake unto me saying that all the
things which thou hast seen among the Gentiles shall be established & the
seed of the first which of the twelve apostles of the Lamb & shall make known
the plain & precious things which have been taken away from them & shall
be known unto all kindreds Tongues & People that the Lamb is the
real Father & the Saviour of the world & that all men must come
from him or they cannot be saved & they must come to him
that shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb

For it shall be made known in the records of the seed as well as in the
records of the book of the Laman wherefore they both shall be estab-
lished, in one from there is one God & one Shepherd over all the earth & the
line cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto
the Jews also unto the Gentiles & after that he ^{shall} manifest himself
unto the Jews also unto the Gentiles then he shall manifest himself unto
the Gentiles also unto the Jews & the last shall be first & the Lord shall be
last & it shall come to pass that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of
God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in mercy & also in
power in every deed unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks if it
be that they harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God & if so be that
they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God they shall be remembered among
the seed of thy father & they shall be remembered among the House of Israel
& they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land & when they shall be
more brought down into captivity & the House of Israel shall no more be
indured & that great pit which hath been digged for them by that great &
dreadful Pharaoh which was founded by the Lord & his Children
that he might lead away the souls of man down to Hell yea that great pit
which is the "beendigo" in the destruction of man shall be filled by those
who digged it unto their utter destruction with the Lamb of God not the des-
truction of the Jews & not the casting of it into that Hell which hath
no end for he said that it is according to the captivity of the Devil & also ac-
cording to the practice of God upon all those who will work wickedness & abo-
mination before him & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me say-
ing that he said that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them
& that also knowest concerning the Covenants of the Lord unto the
seed of Israel & that also hath been said that who repenteth not must be
cut off therefore me be unto the Gentiles if it come that they harden their
hearts against the Lamb of God for the time cometh with the Lamb of God
at Jerusalem a great & a marvelous work among the Children of men
a work which shall be everlasting either on the one hand or on the other
either to the commencing of them unto peace & life eternal or unto the
delinquency of them to the hardening of their hearts & the blindness of their
eyes & unto their being brought down into captivity & also unto
destruction both temporally & spiritually according to the capti-
vity of the Devil of which I have spoken & it came to pass that when
the Angel had spoken these words he said unto me rise.

26
things of old & also many things which had been & he shall also write
concerning the end of the world wherefore the things which he shall write are
just & true & behold they are written in the Book which thou beheldst pro-
ceeding out of the mouth of the Jew & at the time they proceeded out of the
mouth of the Jew or at the time the Book proceeded out of the mouth of the
Jew the things which were written were plain & pure & more precious &
easy to the understanding of all men & behold the things which this ^{the} ~~the~~
Scribe of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen & thou
hast beheld the remainder shalt thou see but the things which thou
shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write for the Lord hath ordained
the Scribe of the Lamb of God that he should write them & also others
which have been to them hath he shown all things & they have written
them & they are sealed up to come forth in their purity according to the true
which is in the Lamb in the omniscient line of the Lord unto the House
of Israel & I prophesy & I reason that the name of the Scribe of
the Lamb was John according to the word of the Angel & behold I have
been forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which
I saw & heard wherefore the things which I have written suffice to me & I
have not written but a small part of the things which I saw & heard
and that I saw the things which my father saw & the Angel of the Lord
made them known unto me & now I make an end of speaking concern-
ing the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit & of all
the things which I saw are not ~~some~~ ^{some} written the things which I have written
are true & thus it is Amen Chapter - 15

And it came to pass that after I prophesied had been carried away in the Spirit
& seen all these things I returned to the tent of my father & it came to pass that
I beheld my brethren & they were disputing one with another concerning the
things which my father had spoken unto them for he truly spoke many great
things unto them which ^{were} ~~was~~ hard to be understood & none of the children of
men of the Lord & they being hard in their hearts therefore they did not look
unto the Lord as they had ought & now I prophesied was grieved because of
the hardness of their hearts & also because of the things which I had seen &
knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness
of the children of men & it came to pass that I was overcome because
of my afflictions for I considered that mine afflictions were great
alone because of the afflictions of my people & I had said to the Lord

14
I will come to pass that often I had weakened strength I spoke unto my Brethren desiring to know of them the Cause of their disaffection & they said behold we cannot understand the words ^{which} your father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the Olive tree & also concerning the Gentiles & I said unto them have ye enquired of the Lord & they said yea & I said unto them the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us behold I said unto them how is it that ye do not keep the Commandments of the Lord how is it that ye will perish because of the hardness of your hearts & ye do not remember the things which the Lord hath said if ye will not harden your hearts & ask me in faith believing that ye shall receive with diligence in keeping my Commandments surely these things shall be made known unto you behold I say unto you that the House of Israel was compared unto an Olive tree by the spirit of the Lord which was in our fathers & behold we are now broken off from the House of Israel & are we not a branch of the House of Israel & know the thing which our Father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fullness of the Gentiles is that in the latter days when we seed shall have dwindled in unbelief ^{shall be} for the space of many years & many generations after that the Promise shall be manifested because I have said unto the Children of men that shall the fullness of the Gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles & from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed & at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the House of Israel & that they are the Covenant people of the Lord & then shall they know & come to the knowledge of their fathers & also to the knowledge of the Gospel of their Redeemer which was ministered unto them last by him wherefore they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer & the many haunts of his doctrine that they may know how to come unto him & be saved & then at that day will they not praise & give praise unto their everlasting God their Rock & their Salvation yea at that day will they not receive strength & nourishment from the true vine & ye will they not come unto the true fold of God behold I say unto you yea they shall be remembered again among the House of Israel they shall be gathered together being a natural branch of the Olive tree into the true Olive tree & that is what our fathers mean & that he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after that they are scattered by the Gentiles & he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles

18

it was a representation of things both temporal & spiritual, for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation wherefore if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also as to the things which are spiritual which are pertaining to righteousness, wherefore they must be brought to stand before God to be judged of their work & if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the Kingdom of God if so the Kingdom of God must be filthy also but behold I say unto you the Kingdom of God is not filthy & shall cannot any unclean thing enter into the Kingdom of God wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy & there is a place prepared yea even that awful Hell of which I have spoken it is the ^{preparation} ^{for} ^{the} ^{foundations} of it wherefore the final state of the souls of men is determined in the Kingdom of God to be cast out because of that justice which I have spoken wherefore the wicked are rejected from the right (law) & also from that tree of life whose fruit is most precious & most desirable above all other fruits yea & it is the greatest of all the gifts of God & thus I spoke unto my Brethren Amen Chapter V

And now it came to pass that often I should have made an end of speaking to my Brethren behold they said unto me thou hast declared unto us hard things more than that which we are able to hear & it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked according to the truth of the righteous, hence I justified & testified that they should be lifted up at the last day, wherefore the faithful take heed to be hard for it cometh them to the very Central & now my Brethren if ye were righteous & were willing to hearken to the truth & live hereunto that ye might walk uprightly before God then ye would not murmur because of the truth & ye would speak hard things against us & it came to pass that I should have entreated my Brethren with all diligence to keep the Commandments of the Lord & it came to pass that they did shew themselves before the Lord inasmuch that I had joy & great hopes of them that they would walk in the path of righteousness now all these things were said & done as my power dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lomani & it came to pass that I took one of the Daughters of Ishmael to wife & also my Brethren of the house of Ishmael to wife & also women of the house of Lehi

elder, daughter of Ishmael to wife & thus my father had fulfilled
all the Commandments of the Lord, which had been given unto him &
also I Nephi had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly & it came to pass that
the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night & commanded him that on
the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness & it came to pass that
at as my father arose in the morning & went forth to the tent door, to his great
astonishment, he beheld upon the ground around him of curious workman-
ship & it was of fine brass & within the ball was two spindles & the one
pointed the way, whither we should go into the wilderness & it came to pass
that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the
wilderness & all the remainder of our provisions, which the Lord had
given unto us & we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into
the wilderness & it came to pass that we did take our tents & departed
into the wilderness across the river Lamoni & it came to pass that we tra-
velled for the space of four days, nearly a South South east direction &
we did pitch our tents again & we did call the name of the place The Gap &
it came to pass that we did take our bows & our arrows & we went into the wil-
derness to slay game for our families & after that we had slain game for our
families we did return again to our families in the wilderness to the place of
The Gap & we did go forth again in the wilderness following the same direction
weeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness which was in the borders near
the Red Sea & it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days slay-
ing game by the way with our bows & our arrows & our stones & our sling & we
did follow the directions of the ball which we saw in the most fertile parts
of the wilderness & after that we had travelled for the space of many days we
did pitch our tents for the space of a time that we might again rest and
slay & obtain game for our families & it came to pass that as I Nephi went
forth to slay game he beheld I did break my bow which was made of steel
& after that I did break my bow he beheld my brethren were angry with
me because of the loss of my bow for we did obtain no game & it came
to pass that we did return without game to our families & being much
fatigued because of their journeying they did suffer much for the want of
food & it came to pass that Laman & Lemuel & the Sons of Ishmael did be-
gin to murmur exceedingly because of their sufferings & afflictions in the
wilderness & also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God
because all ending sorrowful even that they did murmur against
the Lord & now it came to pass that I Nephi began to

with my brethren because of the long journey & their horses having lost their strength it began to be exceedingly difficult for us to proceed that we could not obtain food & it came to pass that I & Lehi did speak much unto my brethren because that they had ~~hardened~~ ^{hardened} their hearts again even unto ^{completing} ~~completing~~ against the Lord. Then as it came to pass that I & Lehi did make out of wood a bow & a set of arrows that stood an arrow wherefore I did arm myself with a bow & an arrow with a flinty smooth stone & I said unto my father & brethren shall I go to obtain food & it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord & they had humbled themselves because of my word for I did say many things unto them in the evening of my day & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father & he was truly hastened because of his murmuring against the Lord inasmuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him look upon the Ball & behold the things which are written & it came to pass that when my father ^{beheld} the things which were written upon the Ball he did fear & tremble exceedingly & also my brethren & the sons of Ishmael & our wives & it came to pass that I & Lehi beheld that the paintings which were in the Ball that they did write according to the faith & diligence & heed which we did give unto the Lord & there was also written upon them a new writing which was plain to be read which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord & it was written & changed from time to time according to the faith & diligence which we gave unto it & thus we saw that ~~the Lord~~ ^{the Lord} by small means can bring about great things & it came to pass that I & Lehi did go forth up into the top of a mountain according to the directions which were ^{now} given upon the Ball & it came to pass that I did lay wild beasts in compass that I did obtain food for my families & it came to pass that I did return to our tents leaving the beasts which the Lord said I should now when they beheld that I had obtained food how great was their joy & it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord & did give thanks unto him & it came to pass that we did again take our journey traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning & often that we had traveled on the space of many days we did pitch our tents again that we might take our food & it came to pass that Ishmael died & was buried in the place which was called ~~the house~~ ^{the house} & it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly because of the loss of their father & because of their afflictions in the wilderness & they did murmur against my father because that he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem saying our father is dead yet we have wandered much in the wilderness & we have suffered much. //

hanging their tongues & after all their sufferings we must perish in the midst
of our sufferings. & then they did manna against my father & also against
me & they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem & Laman ^{said} unto Le
mael & also unto the ^{sons} of Ishmael behold let us stay our father & also our
brethren who have taken it upon them to be our rulers & our teachers &
we are his elder brethren now he ^{says} that the Lord hath talked with him
also that angels ^{have} ministered unto him but behold we know that he lieth
in wait as he doth as these things & he worketh many things by his cunning
arts that he may deceive our eyes thinking perhaps that he may lead us
into some strange wilderness & after that he ^{has} led us away he hath
thought to make himself a king & a ruler over us that he may do with us
according to his will & pleasure & after this manner did my brother Laman
stir up their hearts to anger & it came to pass that the Lord was with us yea
even the voice of the Lord came & did speak many words unto them & did cha-
stise them exceedingly & after that they were chastened by the voice of the Lord
they did turn away their anger & did repent of their sins in much that the
Lord did bless us again with food that we did not perish & it came to pass
that we did again take our journey in the wilderness & we did travel near-
ly eastward from that time forth & we did travel & made through-
out affliction in the wilderness & our women bore children in the
wilderness & so great was the blessing of the Lord upon us that while
we did live upon man's meat in the wilderness our women did give birth
only of sons for their children & were strong & as men like unto the men & they
began to bear their journeyings without murmuring & thus we all that the
Commandments of God must be fulfilled & if it be that the children of
men keep the Commandments of God he doth nourish ^{them} & strengthen them
& provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he hath com-
manded them wherefore he did provide means for us while we did sojourn
in the wilderness & we did sojourn for the space of many years yea even
eight years in the wilderness & we did come to the land which we called B-
omiloh because of its much fruit & also much honey & all these things were
in proof of the Lord that we might not perish & we beheld the Sea which
we called Shariatum which being interpreted is many waters & it came
to pass that we did pitch our tents by the Sea Shore & notwithstanding
we suffered many afflictions & much difficulty & as we were so much
we cannot write them all we were exceedingly rejoiced when we
came to the Sea Shore & it was called

place beautiful because of its much fruit & it came to pass that oftentimes
it had been in the land beautiful for the space of many days the voice of the
Lord came unto me saying arise & get thee into the mountain & it came to pass
that I arose & went up into the mountain & cried unto the Lord & it came to
pass that the Lord spake unto me saying thou shalt construct a ship after the
manner which I shall show thee that I may carry thy people across these
waters & ^{with} ~~by~~ ^{ad} ~~whither~~ shall I go that I may find one to maintain it
I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast
shown me & it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find
one that I might make tools & it came to pass that I went did make helves
where with to hew the line of the skins of beasts & after that I had made
helves that I might have where with to hew the line I did smite
down stones together that I might make fire for the Lord had not permitted
that I should make much fire among you in the wilderness for ^{but} ~~together~~ I will make the fire for you & become a unit that ye shall
not & I will be a light in the wilderness & I will prepare the way
before you if so be that ye shall keep my commandments wherefore inasmuch as
ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land &
ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led & yet the Lord said also that after
ye have ^{arrived} ~~arrived~~ to the promised land ye shall know that I the Lord am God &
that I the Lord did deliver you from destruction & that I did bring you out
of the land of Jerusalem wherefore I thought I did desire to keep the commandments
of the Lord & I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness & diligence & it came to pass
that I did make tools of the ore which I did smelt out of the rock & when
my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship they began to murmur
against me saying one brother is of a fool heart that he can build a
ship & yet he also thinks that he can cross these great waters & thus my brethren
did complain against me & were desirous that they might not labour for
they did not believe that I could build a ship neither would they believe that
I was instructed of the Lord & now it came to pass that I thought I was exceedingly sorrow-
ful because of the hardness of their hearts & now when they saw that I began to be
sorrowful they were glad in their hearts inasmuch that they did rejoice
in me saying we knew that ye could not construct a ship & now we know that
ye were labouring in judgment & therefore that I cannot accomplish
not a work & thou art like unto our father levi who was led away by the foolish
imaginations of his heart & he hath led us out of the land &

When I was a young man I wandered in the wilderness for these many years & I
remember have lacked being big with child & they have born children in
the wilderness & suffered all things save it were death & it would have
been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to
have suffered these afflictions behold these many years we have suffered
in the wilderness what time we might have enjoyed our possessions &
the land of our inheritance yet we might have been happy you know that
the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people for
they kept the statutes & the judgments of the Lord & all his commandments
according to the law of Moses wherefore we know that they are righteous people
but our father hath judged them & hath lead us away because we would hearken
unto his words yet our brother is like unto him & often this manner of language
did my brethren murmur & complain against us & it came to pass that
the high priests came unto them saying do ye believe that our fathers who were the
children of Israel would have been lead away out of the hands of the Egyptians
and if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord ye do ye suppose that
they would have been lead out of bondage if the Lord had not commanded
Moses that he should lead them out of bondage now ye know that the children
of Israel were in bondage & ye know that they were laden with tasks
which were grievous to be born wherefore ye know that it must needs be
a good thing for them that they should be brought out of bondage now ye know
that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work & ye know that by
his word the waters of the red sea was divided & that they passed
through on dry ground but ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the red
sea who were the armies of Pharaoh & ye also know that they were fed with
manna in the wilderness yet & ye also know that Moses by his word ac-
cording to the power of God which was in him smote the rock & there came forth
water that the children of Israel might quench their thirst & not with stand-
ing they being lead by the Lord their God their Redeemer going before them
leading them by day & giving light unto them by night & doing all things for
them which were expedient for man to receive they hardened their hearts & re-
sisted their minds & rebelled against Moses & against the true living God
& it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them & according
to his word he did lead them & according to his word he did ^{do} all things for
them & there was not anything done save it were by his word & often they had
crossed the river Jordan he did lead them mightily unto the river

87
and unto the scattering them to destruction & now do ye suppose that the
children of Israel ^{who} were in the land of promise which were ^{chosen} and
by whom ye do suppose that they were righteous behold, say unto you may ye
suppose that our fathers would have been more chaste than they if they had been
righteous say unto you may ye behold the Lord esteemeth all flesh one thing
is righteous in favour of God but behold that people had repented every man of
his iniquity & the fullness of the wrath of God was upon them & the
Lord did cause the land against them & he sent unto our fathers Jacob he did
cause it against them unto their destruction & he did bless unto our fathers
unto their abiding power on earth behold the Lord hath created the earth
that it should be inhabited & he hath created his children that they should
possess it & he saith of a righteous nation & he saith the nations of them
which he loveth may the righteous into precious lands & the wicked he
destroyeth & converteth the land unto them for their sakes he saith higher in the
Heavens for it is his throne & the earth is his foot stool & he loveth them
which will have him to be their God behold he loved our father Jacob & he
commanded with him Jacob & Abraham Isaac & Jacob & he remembered
the covenants which he had made wherefore he did bring them out of the land
of Egypt & he did cherish them in the wilderness with his rod for they had
sinned their hearts were evil & the Lord straitened them because of
their iniquity he sent his angels among them & often they were
bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed & the labour which they had
to perform were to look & because of the impurity of the way in the evening
of it there were many ^{who} perished they did harden their hearts from time
to time & they did sin against Moses & also against God & never did they know
that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise & now
often all these things the time has come that they have become wicked people
nearly unto ripe unto ^{the} know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed
for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed
a few only which shall be led away into captivity wherefore the Lord com-
manded my father that he should be sent into the wilderness & he has also
sought to take away his life & ye also have sought to take away his life
wherefore ye are murderers in your hearts & ye are like unto those who are swift
to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God ye have seen an Angel
& he spake unto you & ye have heard his voice from time to time & he hath
spoken unto you in a still small voice & ye have not hearkened unto his voice

-35

and I feel it necessary to speak unto you like unto the voice
of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if were to divide asunder.
ye also know, that by the power of his strength, he can cause the ^{earth} that
it shall pass away, yea, & he knoweth that he can cause that rough place
to be made smooth, & smooth places shall be broken up. O then, why is it
that ye can be so hard in your hearts? behold, my soul is rent with
grief because of you, & my heart is pained. I fear lest ye shall be cast off
forever. behold, I am full of the spirit of God, inasmuch as of my frame ^{with} ⁱⁿ the
right, & now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words, they ^{revenge} ^{me} ^{on} ^{me}
themselves & were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea, as they came
forth to lay their hands upon me. I spoke unto them saying in the name
of Almighty God I command you that ye touch me not for I am filled
with the power of God even unto the consuming of my flesh & ye shall
lay their hands upon me, shall wither even as a dried weed & he shall be
as naught before the power of God for God shall smite him & it came to pass
that I spake ^{unto} ^{them} ^{that} ^{they} ^{should} ^{murder} ^{me} ^{for} ^{God} ^{had} ^{com-}
manded me that I should build a ship, & I ^{spoke} ^{unto} ^{them} ^{if} ^{God} ^{had} ^{com-}
manded me to do all things I could do it if he should command me that I
should go unto the uttermost part of the earth it should be so, & if I should
say it it would be done & now if the Lord had such great power, & he hath
brought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot
instruct me that I should build a ship? & it came to pass that I ^{spoke} ^{unto} ^{my} ^{brethren} ⁱⁿ ^{asmuch} ^{that} ^{they} ^{were} ^{confounded} [&]
could not contend against me, neither could they lay their hands upon me
nor touch me with their fingers even for the space of many days, months
& years, not do this, & yet they should witness before me so powerful was the
spirit of God, & that it had wrought upon them, & it came to pass that the
Lord said unto me stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren & they shall
not wither before thee, but I will shake them with the Lord, & thus
will I do that they may know that I am the Lord their God, & it came to pass
that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren & they did not wither be-
fore me, but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he
had spoken & now they said we know of a surety that the Lord is with thee for
we know that it is the power of the Lord that hath shaken us & they fell down
before me & would have to do with me, but I would not suffer them to

if
The younger brethren were before him. The Lord the God of Israel
said unto the father that they should be long in the land which the Lord the God
shall give them. It came to pass that they did worship the Lord & did so forth with
some did work timbers of Canaan workmanship & the Lord did show me from
time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship now.
I Nephi did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by
men neither did I build the ship after the manner of men but I did build
it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me wherefore it was not
after the manner of men. & I Nephi did go into the moat oft & I did pray oft
unto the Lord wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things & it came to pass
after I had finished the ship according to the word of the Lord my father
held that it was good & that the workmanship thereof was exceeding fine where
fore they did humble themselves again before the Lord & it came to pass that
the voice of the Lord came unto my father that we should arise & go down into the
ship & it came to pass that on the morrow after that we had prepared all things our
chaff & meat from the wilderness & honey in abundance & provisions accord
ing to that which the Lord had commanded as we did go down into the ship
with all our loading & our seeds & whatsoever thing we had brought
with us every one according to his age wherefore we did all go down into the
ship with our wives & our children & now my father had begat two sons in the
wilderness the eldest was called Jacob & the younger Joseph & it came to pass that
after we had all gone down into the ship & had taken with us our provisions & things
which had been commanded as we did, put forth into the sea & were driven for
th before the wind towards the promised land & after that we had been dri
ven forth before the wind for the space of many days behold my brethren & I the
sons of Ishmael & also their wives began to make themselves merry inasmuch
as they began to dance & to sing & to speak with much rudeness of a covenant
that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither yea they
were lifted up unto an exceedingly rudeness & I Nephi began to lean exceedingly be
cause the Lord should be angry with us & smile us because of our iniquity that
we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea wherefore I Nephi
began to speak to them with much soberness but behold they were angry
with me saying we will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us
& it came to pass that Lemuel & Samiel did take me & bind me with cords & they
did treat me with much harshness nevertheless the Lord did soften the
heart of the king & he might show forth his power unto the king of the land & he
did so.

38
 concerning the vessel did come to pass that after they had heard me
 inasmuch that I could not move the Compass, which had been prepared of
 the Lord did cease to work wherefore they knew not whether they should stay
 the Ship inasmuch that there arose a great storm & a great & terrible
 tempest & we were driven back upon the water for the space of three days
 & this began to be frightful & exceedingly vast they should be drowned in the
 Sea nevertheless they did ^{not} loose me ^{not} & on the fourth day which would
 have driven back the tempest began to be exceedingly sore & it came to pass
 that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the Sea & after this
 it we had been driven back upon the water for the space of four days more
 but then began to see that the Judgments of God were upon them & that they
 perished save that they should repent of their iniquities wherefore they came
 to me & ^{we} laid our hands which ^{was} upon my sister & behold they had much re-
 alms ^{exceedingly} & I also mine and also were much healed & great was the voice
 more thereof nevertheless I did look unto my God & I did praise him all the
 day long & I did not cease to pray for the Lord because of mine afflictions
 for now my Father I he had said many things unto them & also unto the
 Sons of Israel but behold they did break out much threatening against
 anyone that should speak to them & my Son who being stricken on in years
 & having suffered much grief because of their Children they were brought to
 us & we saw upon their sick beds because of their grief & much sorrow with
 iniquity of my Brothers they were brought near even to be carried out of this
 time to meet their God yet their young hairs were about to be brought
 down to the dust yet even they were near to be cast into a water
 of grief & weeping & I said also being young having heard of much mourning
 and were pained because of the afflictions of their Mothers & also my wife with her
 six & seven & also my children did not soften their hearts for my Brothers that they
 would loose me & there was nothing could move the power of God which there
 attended them with destruction could soften their hearts wherefore when they
 saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the Sea they
 repented of the thing which they had done inasmuch that they loosed me &
 it came to pass that after they had loosed me behold I took the Compass &
 it did work whither I desired it & it came to pass that I prayed unto the
 Lord & after that I had prayed the winds did cease & the storm did cease
 & there was a great calm & it came to pass that I & the Lord did guide the Ship
 that we sailed again towards the promised land & it came to pass that

we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land & we went forth upon the land & did pitch our tents & we did call the promised land & it came to pass that we did begin to till the ^{earth} & we did
plant to plant such grain we did but we did not sow seeds into the earth which we
had brought from the land of Jerusalem & it came to pass that they did grow
certainly & we were much blessed in a hundred fold & it came to pass that we
did find upon the land of promise as we journeyed in the wilderness that
there were beasts in the forests of every kind both the Cow & the Ox & the
Ass & the Horse & the goat & the wild goat & all manner of wild animals
which were found in the use of man & we did find all manner of ore both of gold
& silver & of copper & it came to pass that the Lord commanded me to
fore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the re-
cord of my people & upon the plates which I made I did engrave the record
of my father & also our journeyings in the wilderness & the prophecies of my fa-
ther & also many of mine own prophecies & we engraven upon them & I
blessed them at that time when I made them that I should be command-
ed of the Lord to make these plates wherefore the record of my father &
the genealogy of his people & the more part of all our proceedings in the
wilderness are engraven upon those plates of which I have spoken where-
fore the things which I have spoken before that I made these plates are of a
truth more particularly made mention upon the first plates & after
that I made these plates by way of Commandment I prophesied a Com-
mandment that the ministry & the prophecies the more plain & easier
parts of them should be written upon ^{these} plates & that the things which
were written should be kept in the instruction of my people which
should possess the land & also for other wise purposes which purposes
are known unto the Lord wherefore I did make a record upon the
other plates which gives an account on which gives a greater account
of the wars & contentions & destructions of my people & this have I done
by Commandment my people that they should do after that I have given
these plates should be handed down from one generation to another or
from one prophet to another until in the Commandments of the Lord
I an account of my making these plates shall begin hereafter & then
behold I have done according to that which I have spoken & other I do that
the more sacred things may be kept from the knowledge of my people now
on this day I do not write any thing upon plates save it be that which

37
 and I will not say, if I do so, even did they enquire of it, not that I would
 wound myself because of other men but because of the words which
 are in me according to the Lord which would extend myself on the things which
 which some men esteem to be of great worth both to the body & soul others
 set at naught & trample under their feet yea even the name of God of Israel
 down to be trampled under their feet but ^{they} they trample under their feet the
 but I would speak in other words they do set him at naught & he
 will not to the voice of his own call & he hold, he cometh according to
 the words of the prophet in 70 hundred years from the time my people left
 Herod & the world because of their iniquity shall judge him to be
 thing of naught wherefore they scourge him & he suffereth it & they smite
 him & he suffereth it yea they spit upon him & he suffereth it because
 of his loving kindness & his long suffering towards the children of men
 & the God of Israel, who were lead out of Egypt out of bondage & also
 were preserved in the wilderness by him yea the God of Abraham of Isaac
 and of Jacob yielded to him according to the words of the prophet
 it as a man into the hands of wicked men so he ^{will} fight up according to
 the words of Jeremiah & to be crucified according to the words of the
 prophet to be buried in a Sepulchre & according to the words of the
 prophet which he spoke concerning the three days of darkness which shall
 be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the Isles
 of the Sea more especially given unto those who are of the house
 of Israel for they spoke the prophet the Lord God surely shall visit all
 the house of Israel at that day some with his voice because of rightness
 & some unto their great joy & Salvation & others with the thundering of
 lightning of his power by tempest by fire & by smoke & a cloud of darkness & by
 the opening of the earth & by mountains which shall be carried up & all these
 things must surely come with the prophet & the Rock of the earth mu-
 st mend & because of the warnings of the earth many of the Kings of the Earth
 of the Sea shall be wrought upon by the spirit of God to enquire the God
 of Nature suffers for those who are at Jerusalem with the prophet he
 will be scourged by all people with the prophet because they crucify the
 God of Israel & turn their hearts aside rejecting signs & wonders &
 power & glory of the God of Israel & because they turned their hearts aside so
 with the prophet & have despised the Holy one of Israel they shall wander
 in the flesh & perish & become a hiss & a by word & be hated among

[illegible]

And now ye shall hear the voice of the Lord say ye the Lord
will make his servant Jacob & they shall not be lead them through
sands because the great while I have out of the rock for them he cleave
tho also the waters gush out & notwithstanding he hath done all this
then also there is no place with the Lord unto the meek & again he
O ye house of Israel all ye that are broken off & are driven out ^{richedness} ~~riches~~
of the pastures of my people yea all ye that are broken off that are
red abroad with and of my people O house of Israel listen O Israel
& hearken ye people from far the Lord hath called me from the
the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name & he
made my mouth like a sharp sword in the shadow of his hand he hid me
me & made me a palace ⁱⁿ his quiver hath he hid me & he
to me than all my servants O Israel now henceforth will be glorified
I said I have laboured in vain I have spent my strength for nothing
vain surely my judgment is with the Lord & my work with my God
saith the Lord that I have come from the ^{mouth} ~~mouth~~ that I should be his servant
to bring Israel against him that Israel be not gathered yet shall I be present in
the eyes of the Lord & my God shall be my strength & he said it is a light thing
that I should be his servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob & to restore the
of Israel I will also give thee from a light to the Gentiles that thou mayest
of salvation unto the ends of the earth thus saith the Lord the Redeemer of
and his holy one to him whom man despiseth to him whom the nations set
with to servant of rulers kings shall set & arise princes also shall worship
Crus of the Lord that is faithful thus saith the Lord in an acceptable time
have I heard thee O Isles of the Sea & in a day of salvation shall I
thee & I will preserve thee & give thee my servant for a covenant of
people to establish the earth to cause to inherit the desolate heritages
thou mayest say to the prisoners go forth to them that sit in darkness
as yourselves they shall feed in the ways & their pastures shall be as all
ces they shall not hunger nor thirst neither shall the heat over the
from far that hath mercy on them shall lead them even by the springs of
waters shall be guide them & I will make all my mountains as a way & I shall
shall be inhabited & then O house of Israel behold these shall come from
to rise from the South & from the west & these from the land of Sinear
O Heavens & be joyful O Earth for the people of the world shall
shall be established & break forth into singing

43
be smitten no more for the Lord hath forgiven him. People will have mercy
upon him of the Lord but behold Zion hath said the Lord hath forsaken
me & my Lord hath forgotten me but he will show that he hath not for he
a merciful God he will say O child that she should not have compassion on the
Lord then would you they may forget yet will I not forget thee O house of Israel
behold I have given thee upon the palms of my hands thy walls are conde-
mned before me thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers & thy that
smallest thine waste shall go forth of thee lift up thine eyes round about & behol-
d all these gather themselves together & they shall come to thee & all these
with the Lord shall surely catch thee with them all as with an ornament
& bind them on as a bride for thy waste & thy desolate places & the la-
nd of thy destruction shall even now be to manna by reason of the inhabi-
tants & they that shall come up shall be as the children whom
thou shalt have after thou hast lost the others ^{thy children} shall again in thine ears
say the place is to dwell for me give place to me that I may dwell there & they
shall say in thine heart who hath begotten me these seeing I have lost
my children & am desolate a captive & removing to & fro & who hath
brought up these behold I was left alone these where have they been
thus saith the Lord God behold I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles
I will set up my standard to the people & they shall bring thy sons in their
arms & thy daughters ^{shall be carried} upon their shoulders & kings shall be thy nursing
fathers & their Queens thy nursing mothers they shall bow down to thee
with their face towards the earth & lift up the dust of thy feet & thou shalt
know that I am the Lord for they shall not be ashamed that men
it for me you shall the prey be taken from the mighty or the lawfull
prey delivered but thus saith the Lord even the captivity of his mighty
shall be taken away & the prey of the terrible shall be delivered from his
contend with him that contendeth with thee & I will save thy children
& I will see them that oppress thee with their own flesh they shall be
drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine & all of flesh shall know
that the Lord is thy saviour & thy redeemer the mighty one of Israel
Chapter V. 11 And now I can to pass that often I prophesy
that I had read these things which were written upon the plates of brass
my brother came unto me & said unto me what mean these things which
I have read behold are they to be understood according to things which
I find in which shall come to pass according to the spirit & not

And the ^{spirit} ~~sayeth~~ ^{saith} unto them ~~behold~~ ^{behold} they need make manifest unto the
people by the voice of the spirit for by the spirit are all things made known
unto the prophets which shall come upon the Children of men according to the
flesh wherefore the things of which I have read are things pertaining to the
both temporal & spiritual for it appears that the land of Israel ^{soon} ~~soon~~
shall be scattered upon all the face of the earth & also among all the
~~people~~ ^{peoples} there are many who are ^{blinded} ~~blinded~~ but from the knowledge of the truth
& at Jerusalem yea the more part of all the tribes have been ^{led} ~~led~~ away & are
scattered to & fro upon the isles of the sea & whether they are none of us there or not
we do not know that they have been ^{led} ~~led~~ away & since that they have been ^{led} ~~led~~
away all things have been prophesied concerning them & also concerning ^{all} ~~all~~
which shall hereafter be scattered & be confounded because of the help which
Israel for against him will the heavens ^{send} ~~send~~ down therefore they shall be ⁱⁿ ~~in~~
the ^{midst} ~~midst~~ of all nations & shall be hated by all men ^{remember} ~~remember~~ the law of the Lord
shall be ⁱⁿ ~~in the Gentiles & the Lord shall lift up his hand upon the Gentiles
& set them up for a standard & their children shall be carried in their arms & their
daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders ^{behold} ~~behold~~ these things of which have
spoken are temporal for thus is the Covenant of the Lord with ^{us} ~~us~~ ^{us} ~~us~~
meaneeth us in the days to come & also all our brethren which are of the house
of Israel & it meaneeth ~~that the time~~ ^{that the time} cometh that of ^{all} ~~all~~ the
house of Israel shall be ^{scattered} ~~scattered~~ & confounded that the Lord God will raise up
mighty nations among the Gentiles yea even upon the face of this land & by them
shall our seed be scattered & of ^{all} ~~all~~ that our seed is scattered the Lord God will pro-
ceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles which shall be of great worth
unto our seed ^{wherefore} ~~wherefore~~ it is ^{written} ~~written~~ unto the being nourished by the Gentiles
& being carried ⁱⁿ ~~in~~ their arms & upon their shoulders & it shall also be given
unto the Gentiles & not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of
Israel unto the making known of the Covenants of the Father of Heaven unto
Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed &
I would my brethren that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth
shall be blessed unless he shall make bear his arm in the face of the
nations wherefore the Lord God will proceed to make bear his arm in the face
of all the nations in bringing about his Covenants & his Gospel unto ^{all} ~~all~~
the house of Israel wherefore he will bring them again unto ^{the} ~~the~~
unity & they shall be gathered together to the ^{land} ~~land~~ of the ^{ancestors} ~~ancestors~~
they shall be brought out of obscurity & out of darkness~~

and that the Son is their Savior and their redeemer. the mighty one of Israel
all the blood of that great & abominable Church which is the vision of all the
earth shall turn upon their own heads. In they shall rise among themselves & the
sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads & they shall be drunk
in with their own blood & every nation which shall rise against this Church
of Israel shall be turned one against another & they shall fall into the pit
which they dig to ensnare the people of the Lord & all ^{that} fight against
Zion shall be destroyed & that great church which hath hardened the right
eyes of the Lord yea that great & abominable Church shall tumble to the dust
& great shall be the fall of it. for behold saith the prophet that the time cometh
speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the
Children of men for the day soon cometh that all the proud & those who do
mickledly shall be as stubble & the day cometh that they must be burned
for the time soon cometh that the fullness of the wrath of God shall be poured
out upon the Children of men for he will not suffer that the wicked shall
destroy the righteous wherefore he will pursue the righteous by his power
even if it so be that the fullness of his wrath must come & the righteous be
pursued even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire wherefore the right-
eous need not fear for thus saith the prophet they shall be saved even if it
so be as by fire behold me. But I must say unto you that these things must
so be as by fire & as by fire & as by fire & as by fire & as by fire & as by fire
it shall be upon the face of this land & it cometh unto men according to the flesh if
it so be that they will harden their hearts against the holy one of Israel for
behold the righteous shall not perish for the time surely cometh & cometh that
all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off & the Lord will surely
prepare a way for his people unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses
which he spake saying a prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you
like unto me him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say
unto you & it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that
prophet shall be cut off from among the people & now I will declare
unto you that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the holy one of Israel
wherefore he shall be ^{judgment} in righteousness & the righteous need
not fear for they shall not be confounded but it is the kingdom
of the Devil which shall be built up among the Children of men which
kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh for the time
speedily shall come that all Churches which are built up to get gain

47
... we should also have perished but said he notwithstanding
of this time we have obtained a land of promise & land which is Chailed
one of all other lands a land which the Lord God hath Covenanted with me the
also he a land for the inheritance of my seed for the Lord hath Covenanted this
land unto me & to my children forever & also all they which should be here
out of other countries by the hand of the Lord when I shall bring them according
to the workings of the spirit which is in me that there shall be none come
into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord wherefore
the land is Covenanted unto him whom he shall bring & it shall be that
they shall serve him according to the Commandments which he hath given & it
shall be a land of liberty unto them wherefore they shall never be brought
down into captivity if ever shall be because of iniquity for if iniquity
shall abound & sin shall be the land for their sakes he will bring them
it shall be his pleasure & he shall do it in wisdom that this land should be kept
secret from the knowledge of other nations for he hath many nations would
conquer the land that there would be no place for an inheritance which
he said. He hath obtained a promise that inasmuch as he shall bring out of the
Land of Jerusalem shall keep his Commandments they shall prosper upon the face of this land & they shall be kept
from all other nations that they may possess this land until themselves
shall so be that they shall keep his Commandments they shall be blessed upon
the face of this land & there shall be none to molest them nor to take
away the land of them in forever & they shall dwell safely forever but
he hold when the Lord cometh that they shall dwell in iniquity
after that they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord
and having a knowledge of the Creation of the earth & all men knowing
the great & marvelous works of the Lord from the Creation of the world
having power given them to do all things by faith having all the Com-
mandments from the beginning & having been brought by his infinite
goodness into this precious land of promise he hold that if the day shall
come that they will reject the Holy one of Israel the true Messiah
the Redeemer & their God he hold the judgments of him that is just shall
fall upon them & he will bring other nations unto them & he will give
unto them power & he will take away from them the lands of their
possession
and he will cause them to be scattered & smitten yea & one
generation passeth to another there shall be a land which is great

17 B

among them wherefore my Father would that ye would remember ye
would that ye would hearken unto my words & that ye would awake
from a deep sleep ye will from the sleep of hell & shake off the awful
chains by which ye are bound which are the chains which bind the Chil-
dren of men that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf
of misery & will awake & arise from the dust & hear the words of a true
believing parent whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold & silent
grave from whence no traveller can return a few more days & I get the
way of all the earth but behold the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell
I have beheld his glory & I am encircled about eternally in the arms
of his love & I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes
& the judgments of the Lord he holdeth that hath been the anxiety of my soul for
the beginning my heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from him
to him for I have feared lest for the hardness of your hearts ^{upon you} ye should
be cut off & destruction should come upon you for the sake of many generations
ye are visited by sword & by famine &
are hated & are dead according to the will & captivity of the Devil & I
know that these things might not come upon you but that ye might
be able to receive a promise & a full of the Lord but behold his will is done
for his angels are sent to you & he hath said that inasmuch
as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land but in
asmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from
my presence & now that my soul might have joy in you that my heart
might leave this world with gladness because of you that I might not
be brought down with grief & sorrow to the grave arise from the dust
my sons & be men & be determined in one mind & in one heart to abide
in all things that ye may not come down into captivity that ye may
not be carried with a sore chastening & also that ye may not incur the
displeasure of a just God upon you unto the destruction ye & the eter-
nal destruction of both soul & body awake my God that on the arms
of righteousness shake off the chains with which ye are bound &
come forth out of captivity & arise from the dust & be no more
a sinful generation whose eyes have been glorified & who shall keep
the commandments from the time when I shall send them to be
an instrument in the hands of God in bringing you forth from

And ye shall know that they know good from evil & the law is given unto
all. The law no flesh is qualified only the law men are cut off from
the temporal lawfully cut off & also by the spiritual law they perish
from that which is good & which is miserable forever wherefore redemption
cometh unto them by the Holy Spirit. Or he is full of grace & truth he
old he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin to answer the ends of the law
unto all those which have a broken heart & a contrite spirit & unto none
else can the ends of the law be answered wherefore how great the importance
will to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth that they
may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God
if he thought the merits & mercy & grace of the Holy Spirit which layeth
down his life according to the flesh & taketh it again by the power of the spirit
that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead being the first that he
should rise wherefore he is the first spirit unto God inasmuch as he shall
make intercession for all the children of men & they that believe in him shall
be saved & because of the intercession for all, all men cometh unto God
before they stand in the presence of him to be judged of him according to the
truth & holiness which is in him wherefore the ends of the law which the Holy
one hath given unto the fulfilling of the commandment, which is opposed which
punishment that is opposed, it is in opposition to that of the happiness which is off
in to answer the ends of the commandment for it, must needs be that there is
an opposition in all things if not so, my first born in the wilderness righte-
ousness could not be brought to pass neither holiness neither holiness nor
justice neither good men had wherefore all things must needs be ^{a compromise} ~~accomplished~~
one, wherefore if it should be one, had it, must needs remain as dead
having no life, neither death, nor corruption, nor incorruption, happiness nor
misery, neither sense, nor insensibility, wherefore it must needs have been
created for a thing of naught, wherefore there would have been no purpose
in the end of its creation, wherefore this thing must needs destroy the mind
of God & his eternal purposes & also the power & the mercy & the justice
of God & if ye shall say there is no law ye shall also say there is no sin & if ye
shall say there is no sin ye shall also say there is no righteousness & if there be
no righteousness there be, no happiness & if there be no righteousness nor
happiness there be, no punishment, nor misery & if these things are not there
is no God & if there is no God we are not neither the earth for there
could have been no creation of things neither to act nor to be acted upon

wherefore all things must have vanished away & now my Son I speak unto thee
these things for your profit & learning, for there is a God that he has created all the
things both the heavens & the earth & all things that in them is, both things & every
thing to be created upon it to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man after
that he has created sun, moon, & the stars of the field & the fowls of the air
in fine all things which are created & must needs be that there was an opposition
as the forbidden fruit was given to the tree & the one being sweet & the
other bitter wherefore the Lord God gave unto man that he should eat for himself
wherefore man could not eat for himself said it should be that he was enticed by
the one on the other & I like according to the things which I have read must needs
suppose that an Angel of God according to that which is written had fallen from
heaven wherefore he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before
God & because he had fallen from heaven & had become miserable forever
he sought one who was willing to do as he did & he sought until he found one even the
old serpent who is the Devil who is the father of all lies wherefore he tempted
Adam of the forbidden fruit & yet shall not die but ye shall be as God knowing your
I said it often that Adam & Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven
out from the garden of Eden he told the Earth that they had brought forth children
a man & a woman of all the sons & the daughters of men were born according
to the will of God that they might repent while in the flesh wherefore their
state became a state of probation & their land was lengthened according to the
commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men for he gave com-
mandments that all men must repent for he showed unto all men that they
were lost because of the transgression of their parents & now, behold if Adam
(his first transgression) he would not have fallen but it would have remained
in the Garden of Eden & all things which were created must have remained in the
same state which they were after what they were created & they must have remained
forever & had no end & they would have had no children wherefore they would have
remained in a state of innocence, having no joy for they knew no misery
knowing no good for they knew no evil & in both all things were given, love in the wisdom of him
who knoweth all things & Adam, all that man might be & to manifest that they might be
like unto him, the inheritance in the kingdom of him that is the Father of the
living men, from the fall & because that they are redeemed from the fall they have
become fallen forever knowing good from evil to act for themselves & not to be
acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great & last day according
to the commandments which I have given wherefore men are free according to the flesh
all things are given them which are expedient unto man & they are free to choose liberty

The eternal life thing, the great salvation of all men on earth explaining & death
according to the will of God the Father & the Son in the flesh that all men may be
miserable like unto him & know my Son & I would that ye should look to the
great mediator & listen unto his great Commandments & be faithful unto his words
Chose eternal life according to the will of his holy spirit & not Chose eternal death
according to the will of the flesh & the devil which is the law in which ye shall be
the devil power to captivate to bring you down to hell that he may reign over you
in his own Kingdom I have written these few words unto you all my Sons in these
last days of my tribulation & I have chosen the good part according to the words of the
scripture & I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of good souls
I have written Chapter 11 & now I speak unto you for ye my last birth
as I am born in the wilderness of mine afflictions yet in the days of my greatest sorrow
did thy Mother hear thee & may the Lord console thee also unto thee this land which
is most precious land for mine inheritance & the inheritance of the 1000 with thy
sons for thy seed thy forefathers & so be that ye shall keep the Commandments of the Father
& of Israel & mine Joseph my last born whom I have brought out of the wilderness
domine of afflictions may the Lord bless his Son for thy seed shall not wither
destrued for he holdeth out the fruit of my loins & I am a descendant of Joseph who
was carried captive into Egypt & great was the Covenants of the Lord which he
made unto Jacob when Joseph said his father & he obtained a promise of the
Lord that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous bran-
ch unto the house of Israel & that the Messiah had a branch which was to be broken
off nevertheless to be remembered in the Covenants of the Lord that the Mess-
iah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days in the spirit of power
unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light yea out of hidden darkness
out of captivity unto freedom for Joseph truly testified saying a Seed shall the
Lord my God raise up which shall be a Chaste Seed unto the fruit of my loins &
I truly said that saith the Lord unto me a Chaste Seed will I raise up out of
the fruit of thy loins & shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins &
unto him will I give Commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy
loins his brethren which shall be of great worth unto them even to the bringing
of them to the knowledge of the Covenants which I have made with thy father &
will give unto him a Commandment that he shall do none other work save the work
which I shall Command him & I will make him great in mine eyes for he shall
do my work & he shall be great like unto Moses whom I have said I would
raise up unto you to deliver my people O house of Israel & Moses will I
raise up to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt but a Seed will I

raise up out of the fruit of thy loins & I will give power to bring forth
my word unto the sea of thy loins & not to the bringing forth my word only unto
the Lord but to the conveniency thereof of my word which shall have already gone
forth among them wherefore the fruit of my loins shall write & the fruit of the land
of Judah shall write & that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins & also
that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah shall grow together
unto the confounding of false doctrines & casting down of contentions & establishing
all among the fruit of thy loins & bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the
latter days & also to the knowledge of my covenants saith the Lord & out of weakness
he shall be made strong in that day when my work shall commence among all my
people unto the restoring thee O House of Israel saith the Lord & that prophesies
up saying behold that I will make the Lord bless & they that seek to destroy him
shall be confounded for his promise of which I have obtained of the Lord & the
fruit of thy loins shall be fulfilled behold I am sure of the fulfilling of this
promise & his name shall be called of his name & it shall be often the name of his
father & he shall be like unto me for the thing which the Lord shall bring forth
by his hand by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation yet
thus prophesies Joseph I am sure of this thing even as I am sure of the promise of the
Lord for the Lord hath said unto me I will preserve thy seed forever & the Lord hath
said I will raise up a Master & I will give power unto him in a rod & I will give judgment
unto him in writing yet I will not loose his tongue that he shall speak much for
I will not make him mighty in speaking but I will write unto him my law by
the finger of mine own hand & I will make one a spokesman for him & the Lord
said unto me also I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins & I will make one
him a spokesman & I will give unto him that he shall write the
writing of the fruit of thy loins unto the fruit of thy loins & the spokesman of thy
loins shall declare it & the words which he shall write shall be the words
which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins & it
shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust & I know
wherein faith & they shall cry from the dust & I will answer unto them & I
know that of the many generations have come by them & it shall come to pass
that their cry shall go even according to the simplicity of their words & I know
their faith their words shall be made forth out of my mouth unto their brethren &
these are the fruit of thy loins & the weakness of their words will I make strong in
their faith unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers &
now behold my Son Joseph after that manner did my father of old prophesies
before because of his innocence which was a witness for his son & shall be

for they shall hearken unto the words of the Book & there shall raise up one
mighty among them, who shall do, much good, both in word & in deed, being
an instrument in the hands of God with an exceeding faith, to work mighty
works & do great things which shall be in sight of God unto the bringing to pass much
redemption unto the house of Israel & unto the seed of thy brethren & now ble-
sed art thou Jacob in behalf of them and little wherefore thou comest unto the words of
thy brother Nephi & it shall be done unto thee even according to the words
which I have spoken remember the words of thy father Laban when I was
Chapter III And now I will speak concerning the prophecies of ^{which}
my father hath spoken concerning Joseph who was carried into Egypt for he told
he truly, prophecies concerning all his seed & the prophecies which he wrote that
there are not many & shall be in sight of God concerning us & our future generations
& they are written upon the plates of brass which none of the sons of Laban had made
an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph he called the children
of Laman his sons & his daughters & ^{said} he unto them, he hold my sons & my da-
ughters which are the sons & the daughters of my first born & I would that ye should
be like unto my words, for the Lord God hath said that inasmuch as ye shall keep
my Commandments ye shall prosper in the land & inasmuch as ye will not keep
my Commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence but behold my sons &
my daughters & I would that ye should be like unto my words & I should leave a blessing upon
you for behold I know that ye are brought up in the right way that ye should
do all which will not depart from it wherefore it is now I leave a blessing upon
you & I know that the cursing may be taken from you & be turned upon the
heads of your parents wherefore because of my blessing the Lord God will not
suffer that ye shall be cut off wherefore he will be merciful unto you & unto
our seed forever & it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking
unto the sons & daughters of Laman he caused that the sons & daughters of his
small to be brought before him & he spoke unto them saying behold ^{my} sons
& ^{my} daughters which are the sons & the daughters of my second son behold
I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons & daughters of
Laman wherefore shall I be cut off & destroyed but in the end they
shall be blessed & it came to pass that ^{when} my father made an end of speaking
unto them behold it came to pass that he spoke unto the sons of Ishmael yea &
even all his household & of ten that he had made an end of speaking unto them
he spoke unto Sam saying blessed art thou & thy seed for thou shalt inherit
the land land like unto thy brother Nephi & thy seed shall be num-
bered with his seed & thou shalt be even like ^{unto} the brother & thy seed

like unto his seed & there shall he be used in all thy days & it came to pass
that after he had shewn unto all his household according to the feelings of his
heart & the spirit of the Lord which was in him, he named old & it came to pass that
he died & was buried & it came to pass that not many days after his death
on an & I went by the house & it was small, in the evening, with me, because of the admo-
nitions of the Lord, I had been constrained to speak unto them according to the
word for I had said many things unto them & also my father before his death, many of
his sayings are written upon mine other plates for a more history past are writ-
ten upon mine other plates & upon these I write the things of my soul & many of the
Scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass for my soul delighteth in the
Scriptures & my heart pondereth ^{them} & I would them for the learning & the profit of
my children behold my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord & my heart
hundredth continually upon the things which I have seen & heard & remembered
as not without saying the great goodness of the Lord in the seeing me his great
& manifold works my heart, & I would that I were able to man that I am
glad my heart rejoiceth because of ^{my} ~~the~~ flesh my soul rejoiceth because
of mine iniquities I am compassed about because of the temptations of
the Lure which hath so easily misled me & when I desire to rejoice my heart
it rejoiceth because of my sins nevertheless I know in whom I have trust
seeing my soul hath been my support he hath led me through mine afflictions
in the wilderness & he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep
he hath filled me with his love even unto the Consuming of my flesh he
hath Confounded mine enemies unto the Consuming of them to quake before
me behold he hath heard my Cry day & night he hath given me knowledge by
visions in the night time & day day I have wanted bold in mighty pray-
er before him yet my voice hath I sent upon high & Angels came down to
minister unto me & upon the wings of his spirit hath my body been carried
away upon exceeding high mountains & mine eyes hath he shewn great
things yet even to great for man therefore I was hidden that I should
not write them ⁱⁿ then if I have seen so great things if the Lord in his Com-
passion hath ^{the} children of men hath visited me in a most merciful
why should my heart weep & my soul linger in the valley of sorrow & my
flesh waste away & my strength shaken because of mine afflictions & I
why should I yield to sin because of my flesh yet why should I give way
to temptations that the evil one hath placed in my heart to destroy my
peace & afflict my soul why am I angry because of mine enemy who
my soul no longer snare in sin rejoice O my heart & glad place

whatsoever things were possible for us to do during in the wilderness
for the space of many days & years. Now we had journeyed in the day many days we
did not know. Until my people said that we should call the name of the place Ephraim
because we in our hearts did call upon the Lord with one heart & labored upon them to
do His will. The Spirit of the Lord was with us & we did observe to keep the judgments & the statutes
of the Lord's commandments. And we did small things according to the law of Moses & the
Lord was with us & we did prosper exceedingly. For we did sow seed & we did re-
ap again in abundance & we did raise flocks & herds & animals of every
kind. For the Lord said also brought the winds which were signs upon the
folds of Israel & also the still on compass which was a sign for my people by the hand
of the Lord according to that which is written & it came to pass that we began to prosper
accordingly & to multiply on the land & I did take the hand of Jacob as
often as the manner of it did most many words lead by any means the people
of the name of Israel should come upon us & destroy us. For I knew that the
Lord had said, and I said to my people that they should be called my people & I did lead
my people that they should build habitations & that they should work in all manner
wood & stone & of copper & of brass & of iron & of gold & of silver & of precious stones
which were in great abundance to build a temple & I did command
often the manner of the temple & I did command them to build it of so many
precious things as they were not to be found upon the land where we could
not be small like unto Solomon's temple. And the manner of the construction
was like unto the temple of Solomon & the workmanship thereof was exceeding fine
it came to pass that I did say to my people that they should be industrious
that they should labor with their hands & it came to pass that they should
that they should be their king. And I did say to my people that they should have no
king as the kings of the world. For I said according to that which was in my heart
to behold the word of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren which he spoke con-
cerning them that they should be their own king. For I said that they should be
in peace & their leaders according to the commandments of the Lord until the
time that they sought to take away my life. Wherefore the word of the Lord was fulfilled
which he spoke unto me saying that inasmuch as they will not hearken
unto my words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord & I did say to my
people that they should be cut off from his presence & he had caused the blessing to come upon them
and was saying because of their iniquity. For he said they had hardened their hearts
against him that they had become like unto a stone wherefore as they were cut off
it was exceedingly pain & delightful that they might not be entering into my
people. Therefore the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them

18. I shall with the Lord God will cause that they shall be scattered since
they have said they shall repent of their iniquities & would that be the seed of him
that sinned with their seed for they shall be sown with the same causing
the Lord God to be as it was (said) because of their iniquity which was upon them
they did become an idolatrous people full of iniquity & subtilty & did seek in their
holiness for beasts of prey like the Lord God said unto me they shall be a sponge
unto the Lord to draw them up in sin because of me & inasmuch as they will not
remember me & hearken unto my words they shall scourge them & will destroy
them & it came to pass that I prophesied of Jacob & Joseph that they should
be scattered & leave their inheritance the Land of my People & it came to pass that not
long after the manner of happiness & glory years had passed away from the time
we left Jerusalem & I prophesied the words upon my plates which I had
made of my plate that I came to pass that the Lord God said unto me make
other plates & thou shalt engrave many things upon them which are sealed in my
sight for the profit of thy people wherefore I prophesied to be obedient to the Commandments
of the Lord inasmuch as I made these plates upon which I have engraven these things &
I engraven that which is pleasing unto God & if my people will please with the
things of God ^{will} be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates &
if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my People they may
search mine other plates & it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away
yet we had already had wars & contentions with our Brethren Chapter V.

The words of Jacob the father of Joseph which he spoke unto the people of Joseph his
old my beloved brethren that I speak having been called of God & ordained of his
holy order & having been ordained by my Brother Joseph unto whom ye look as a
thing in a protection & a refuge & I say unto you safely behold ye know that I have spoken
unto you concerning many things nevertheless I speak unto you again for I desire
a vision for the welfare of your souls & I say unto you mine anxiety is great for you & ye yourselves
know that it hath been for I have labored with you with all diligence & I have
taught you the words of my father & I have spoken unto you concerning all things which
are written upon the plates of the world & now behold I would speak unto you
concerning things which are & which are to come wherefore I will read unto you
the words of Jacob & they are the words which my Brother hath desired me that I should
speak unto you & I speak them unto you for your sakes that ye may learn to glorify
the name of your God & now the words which I shall read are they which I have
written concerning all the house of Israel wherefore they may be likened unto you for
ye are of the house of Israel & there are many things which have been spoken by the
Lord which may be likened unto you because that ye are of the house of Israel & mine

upon me & on men as shall they trust. Let us your eyes to the heavens & look
upon the earth beneath, for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke & the earth
shall vanish like a garment & they that dwell therein shall die in like manner.
but my salvation shall be forever & my righteousness shall not be abolished. I have
written unto me that I need not fear the people in whose heart I have written
my law. I am not the respecter of person neither be ye afraid of their revilings
for the moth shall eat like a garment & the worm shall eat them like wool but
my righteousness shall be forever & my salvation from generation to generation.
I make a mockery of you though I am of the kind as were in the ancient days
and shall not. ~~He~~ hath cut Rahab & wounded the dragon and shall not be
driven. He hath driven the water of the great deep that hath made the deep
the of the sea away for the consumed to pass over therefore the redeemed of the
Lord shall not come with singing unto Zion & even laughing by & holiness shall
be upon their heads & they shall obtain gladness by & sorrow & mourning shall
be away & I am the God & I am he that comforteth you be hold who art thou that
thou shouldst be afraid of man which shall die & of the son of man which shall
be made like unto you & forgettest the Lord thy maker that hath stretched forth
the heavens & laid the foundations of the earth & shall persevere continually ev-
ery day because of the fury of the oppression as if he were ready to destroy & where
is the fury of the oppression the captive smile that length that he may be ^{loose}
~~loose~~ that he should die in the pit now that his bread should fail but I am
the Lord thy God whose name is above the Lord of hosts is my name & I have put
my words in thy mouth & I have covered thee in the shadow of ^{mine} hand that
I may plant the flag & lay the foundations of the earth & say unto Zion be-
hold thou art my people & make a wake awake stand up O Jerusalem which hast drunk at the
hand of the Lord the Cup of his fury shall hast drink the dregs of the Cup of trembling &
weep & wail to guide thee among all the Sons the hath brought forth neither that shall
be taken by the hand of all the Sons she hath brought up these two Sons are. Come
unto thee which shall be song for thee thy desolation & destruction & the famine & the sword
& by whom shall I comfort thee thy Sons have fainted since these things thy lie at
the head of all the shields as a wild Bull in a net they are full of the fury of the Lord there
shake of thy God therefore hear now this those afflicted & downcast & not with
us saith thy Lord the Lord & thy God pleadeth the cause of ^{his} people be hold I have
out of thine hand the Cup of trembling the dregs of the Cup of my fury thou
drink it again but I will put it unto the hand of them that
is to thy God how down that will may go over & there shall
stand & as the still to them that must come

Behold Zion put on thy beautiful garments O Jerusalem the Holy City London of the
West shall no more come into the world. and the world shall shake
itself from the dust. and shall be brought down. O Jerusalem loose thyself from the bands of thy
noose O Captive daughter of Zion. Chapter VI. And now, my beloved
Brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the Covenants of the
Lord that he hath covenanted with all the house of Israel that he hath spoken unto them
by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down from generation to ge-
neration, until the time cometh that they shall be united to the true Church of God
whom they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall
be established in all their lands of promise. Behold, my beloved Brethren, I
speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, & that of your hearts forever, because of
the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children, for I know that
there have been many of you who know of things to come, wherefore I know
that ye know that our flesh must waste away & die nevertheless in our bodies we
shall see God, & ye shall know that in the body he shall show himself unto
the people of Jerusalem, even when we come, for it is expedient that it should be among
them, for it becometh the great blessing that he saith unto himself, to become subject
unto man in the flesh, & to deliver all men that all men might become subject unto
him, for as death hath passed upon all men to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator
that man needs be a power of resurrection, & the resurrection must needs come unto
us, by reason of the fall, & all that fall come by reason of transgression, & because man has
fallen, they are cut off from the presence of the Lord, wherefore it must needs be
an infinite atonement, & it should be an infinite atonement, this corruption
could not put on incorruption, wherefore the first judgment, ^{which} came upon
us must needs have remained to our endless duration, & if so, the flesh must
have laid down to rot & to crumble to it, & no more to rise no more. O the
wisdom of God, his mercy & grace, for behold if the flesh should rise no more, our
spirits must become subject to that evil, which fell from before the crea-
tion of the world, & we should become the Devil to rise no more, & our spirits must
have become like unto him, & we should become Devils, Angels to a Devil, to be shut
out from the presence of our God, & to remain with the father of lies in misery, like
unto himself, & so that being who beguiled our first Parents who transformed the
himself, might unto an Angel, & light & strength up the children of men unto
secret combinations of murder & all manner of secret works of darkness, O the
great goodness of our God who prepared a way for our escape from the grasp
of this awful monster, yea that monster death, & hell, which I call the
devil of the body, & also the death of the spirit, & because of the way of deliverance

of our God the only one of Israel. His death of which I have spoken which is the
temporal shall deliver up its dead - which death is the grave & the death of which
I have spoken which is the spiritual death shall deliver up its dead - which spir-
itual death is hell - therefore death & hell must deliver up its dead & hell must de-
liver up its captive spirits & the grave must deliver up its captive bodies & the all that
is the spirit of man will be restored one to the other & it is by the power of the holy one
of Israel. I know great the plan of our God on the other hand the paradise of God must
deliver up the spirits of the righteous & the grave deliver up the body of the righteous
& the spirit & the body is restored to itself again & all men become incorruptible
& immortal & they are dancing souls, having a perfect knowledge, till I come to ruin
the flesh, said it, he that knoweth knowledge shall be brought wherefore we shall have
a perfect knowledge of all our guilt & our wickedness & our nakedness & the rig-
hteous shall have perfect knowledge of their enjoyment & their righteousness & be-
ing clothed with living garments with the robe of righteousness & it shall come to
pass that, when all men shall have passed from their first death unto life in so-
much as they have become immortal they must of stand before the judgment seat
of the holy one of Israel & then cometh the judgment & then must they be judged ac-
cording to the holy judgments of God & as surely as the Lord liveth in the Son of
God hath spoken it & it is his Eternal word which cannot pass away that they who
have been righteous shall be righteous still & they who have been filthy shall be fil-
thy still & wherefore they which are filthy are the Devil & his angels & they shall
go away into a everlasting fire prepared for them & their torment is as a lake of
fire & brimstone whose flames ascend all day long & there is no end & the great
master the Father of our God for he liveth with all his words & they have gone forth
out of his mouth & his law must be fulfilled but he hold the righteous that
Saints of the holy one of Israel they which have believed in the holy one of Israel
they which have endured the crosses of the world & despised the shame of it they shall inherit
the Kingdom of God which was promised ^{from} them from the foundation of the world & it
will be full of joy to the greatness of the mercy of our God the holy one of Israel
for he delivereth his Saints from that awful monster the Devil & death
hell & that lake of fire & brimstone which is endless torment & how great the
holiness of our God, for he knoweth all things & there is not any thing save he knoweth
it & he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken
unto his voice for he holdeth the sufferings of all men & the pains of
every living creature both men & women & children & he long to the family of
man & he suffereth that the resurrection might pass upon all men that all
might stand before him at the great & dreadful judgment & he commandeth all men

& that they must repent to the Father in his name having perfect faith in the
 holy one of Israel or they cannot be saved in the Kingdom of God & if they will not repent
 & believe in his name & be baptized in his name & endure to the end they must be
 damned for the Lord God the holy one of Israel hath spoken it & therefore he hath
 given a law & where there is no law given there is no punishment & where there is
 no punishment there is no condemnation & where there is no condemnation there is
 no punishment & the holy one of Israel hath said upon them because of the atonement for
 they are delivered by the power of him for the atonement satisfieth the demands
 of his justice upon all those who hath not the law given to them that they are
 delivered from that awful punishment death & hell & the devil & the lake of fire &
 brimstone which is endless torment & they are referred to that God who gave the law
 which the holy one of Israel hath said that he hath the law given
 a that hath all the commandments of God like unto us & that he is greater than we
 that was with the days of his probation for as yet is his state (that cunning
 plan of the evil one) & the cunningness & the subtilties & the craftiness of men
 when they are learned they think they are wise & they hearken not unto the counsel
 of God for they will not suffer themselves to be taught of him & therefore their
 wisdom is foolishness & it profiteth them not & therefore they shall perish but
 to be learned is good if it be that they hearken unto the counsel of God but
 not unto the rich which are rich as to the things of the world for because that
 they are rich they desire the poor & they have made the flesh & their hearts are set
 on their treasures wherefore their treasure is their God & behold their treasure
 shall perish with them also & no man shall be able to save them for they shall
 all perish as unto the blind that will not see for they shall perish also as unto the
 unconsumed of heart for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the
 last day as unto the liar for he shall be thrust down to hell as unto the
 unclean who deliberately killed for he shall die as unto them who commit
 it & whoredoms for they shall be thrust down to hell as unto those that are
 proud & idols for the Devil of all Devils doth dwell in them & as unto all
 those that die in their sins for they shall return to God & behold his face & rem-
 ain in their sins O my beloved Brethren remember the awfulness in transgressing
 against that holy God & the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning
 one remember that he carnally minded is death & he spiritually minded is life & eter-
 nal O my beloved Brethren give ear to my words remember the greatness of the holy
 one of Israel do not say that I have spoken hard things against you for if ye do ye
 will testify against the truth for I have spoken the words of your maker & know
 that the records of truth are hard against all uncleanliness but the righteous

from that for thy love the truth hath not shaken & thou my beloved brethren & s.
 Come unto the Lord the only one ^{remember} that in father and righteousness behold the
 way for man is narrow but it hath one straight course before him & the hope.
 If the way is the only one for man & he cannot forget nor forget that there is none
 other way saved by the gate for in cannot be discerned in the Lord God who is
 one & he is unchangeable. To him will be given the wise & the learned & they that are
 rich will be put off because of their learning & their wisdom & their riches
 as men they are like, when he desires that they shall cast these things away &
 consider themselves as a beggar & come down in the dust & in humility he
 will not give unto them but the things of the world & the prudent shall be hid from
 them. I want you that happiness which is prepared for the King & King, beloved brethren
 remember my words be bold & take off my garments & I make them before you
 joyful of my salvation that be given me with his all watching eye & therefore
 shall know at the day & day when all men shall be judged of their works that the God
 of Israel did witness that I shook your impieties because of that & that stand with
 brightness before him & around of our Lord King & our brethren & our many from
 you I shall off the chains of him that would bind you, but come unto that God who
 is the rock & our salvation live in peace your souls for that glorious day when justice
 shall be administered unto the righteous even the day of judgment & all men
 shall be afraid with awful fear that ye may not remember your awful guilt in secret
 places & be constrained to me again & do help me by judgment, O Lord God. I have
 thought but know my guilt & transgressions the law & my transgressions are mine
 & the Devil hath obtained me that I am a beggar in his awful misery but behold my
 brethren is obedient & that I should make call to an awful reality of these things
 would I know why you & why your mind would I place unto you
 according to the blindness of the truth of your heart held from in behold if ye will
 shall I would speak unto you of holiness but ye are not holy & ye lack upon me
 a broken & must needs be impudant that I trust you the consequences of sin
 behold my soul address to him & my heart delighteth in might & richness & I will pro-
 ceed the holy name of my God (I know my brethren every one that sheweth himself to the
 world that hath no money, come sing & eat ye shall sing wine & mirth without me
 my & without price when ye do not spend money for that which is of no worth nor
 your labour for that which cannot satisfy. Iarken diligently unto me & remember
 the words which I have spoken & come unto the sons of Israel & feast upon the
 at which justice shall be made & he is made & let your soul delight in justice
 behold my brethren. I then remember the words of your prayer unto him con-
 tinually by day & night thank unto his holy name by night let your hearts

of my faith to behold the great the covenants of the Lord & how great his kindness
towards me & the children of men & because of his great mercies & his great & many the
faith promises unto us that our lives shall not only be directed according
to the flesh but that he would preserve them & in future generations they shall
become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel & in coming. Nations I would the
ark unto you more but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my
words. Amen. (Chap. 11. V. 11.) And now I speak unto you
again my beloved brethren concerning that right branch of which I have spoken
for behold the promises which we have obtained our promises unto us according to the
covenants which have been given unto me that many of our children shall perish in
the flesh because of unbelief nevertheless God will be merciful unto many & our Chi-
ldren shall be redeemed that they may come to that which will give them the true know-
ledge of their redemption wherefore we said unto you it must needs be expedient
at Christ's coming in the last night of his angel spoke unto me that this should be the
name of the branch that should come among the Jews among whom shall be the more rich-
ed part of the world & they shall crucify him for he hath our God & there is no
one other nation on earth that would crucify their God & you should the might of our
savior be wrought among other nations they would reject & know that he is the
in Jew but because of his gifts & his prophecies they at present will stiffen their
in necks against him that he be crucified wherefore because of their iniquities de-
struction & plagues & tribulations & bloods shall come upon them & they shall
shall not be his name shall be scattered among all nations but behold that sa-
th the Lord God when the day cometh that they shall believe in me that I am the
Christ then I have covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the
flesh upon the earth unto the lands of their inheritance & it shall come to pass
that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion from the Isles of the Sea
& from the four parts of the earth & the fallow of the Gentiles shall be great in the
eyes of me saith God in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance the Tin-
ty of the Gentiles shall be nursing others unto them & their Incest shall become
nursing. Mothers wherefore the promises of the Lord is great unto the Gentiles for
he hath spoken & who can dispute but behold this land saith God shall be a la-
nd of their inheritance & the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land & this land shall
all be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles & there shall be no King upon the land
which shall raise up unto the Gentiles & I will fortify this land against all other
nations & he that fighteth against Zion shall perish saith God for he that raiseth
up a King against me shall perish for the Lord the King of Heaven will be their
King & I will be a light unto them for ever that hear my words wherefore for

it shall be laden down & it will lay it waste it shall not be burned nor depth of it
but there shall come up bushes & thorns & I will also command the clouds that they
rain no rain upon it for the vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the House of Israel & the
men of Judah in pleasant plant & he looked for judgment & he beheld of presumption
not that they were to be destroyed we write them that they have to know till there
can be no more that they may be blotted out in the midst of the earth in many
south the land of hosts for truth many houses shall be desolate & great & fair
cities without inhabitant your vineyards of vineyard shall yield one better & the
seed of a woman shall yield an offspring we write them that rise up early in the
morning that they may follow strong drink that continue until night & wine
inflame them & the harp & the viol the tabret & pipe & wine are in their feasts
but they regard not the work of the Lord neither consider the operation of his hands
they say my people have gone into captivity because they have no knowledge & their
honorable men are famished & their multitude divided up with thirst therefore shall
they enlarge their mouth without measure & their glory & their small
trades shall perish & in that day with shall divided into it & the mean man shall be
brought down & the mighty man shall be humbled & the eyes of the lofty shall be
humbled but the Lord of hosts shall be exalted in judgment & God that is holy shall
be sanctified in righteousness then shall the Lamanites be of their manner &
the waste places of the land shall be strangers call we write them that draw iniquity
into with cords of vanity & sin and ^{with} with a cart rope that say let him make
his speed hasten his work that we may see it & let the counsel of the holy one of God
shall draw nigh & come & call we write them that call (evil good) &
good evil that bat darkness for light & light for darkness that put bitters for
sweet & sweet for bitter we write the wise in their own eyes & prudent in their own
sight we write the mighty to drink wine & men of strength to mingle strong
drink which has left the wisdom for reward & take away the righteousness
of the mighty men from them therefore as the Lord & commandeth the stubble & the plain
consumeth the chaff their wood shall be rottenness & their blossoms shall go up
as dust because they have despised the law of the Lord & despised the word
of the holy one of Israel therefore is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people
& he hath stretched forth his hand against them & hath smitten them & the
hills did tremble & their carcasses were down in the midst of the streets for all
this his anger is not turned away but his hand is stretched out still & he will
lift up an ensign to the nations from far & will hiss unto them from the end of
the earth & behold they shall come with speed swiftly none shall be weary
nor slumbering among them none shall slumber nor sleep neither shall

The quiddle of them that he looted, nor the hatred of them that he broken
 out of doors shall be sharp & all their bow-bent & their bows bent shall be count
 sin like a plant & their wheels like a wheel of wind their roaring like a lion they shall
 all roar like young lions you they shall roar & lay hold of the prey & shall carry away
 a prey & none shall deliver it in that day they shall roar against them like the
 roaring of the sea & they look unto the land to hold darkness & sorrow & the
 light is darkened in the heavens thereof Chap. 18
 In the year that King ¹⁸ Mithiah died & saw the Lord sitting upon a throne
 high & lifted up & his train filled the temple above it & saw the Seraaphims, each
 one had six wings, with two he covered his face & with two he covered his feet
 & with two he did fly & one cried unto another & said Holy, holy, holy, is the
 Lord of hosts the whole earth is full of his glory & the posts of the doors moved at
 the voice of him that cried & the house was filled with smoke then said I went
 down & saw ^{an unclean thing} & I saw in the midst of a people of unclean lips for
 not yet have I seen the Lord the Son of hosts then flew one of the seraaphims
 & he was having a live coal in his hand which he had taken with the tongs from
 off the altar & he laid upon my mouth & said he then hath touched thy lips
 thine iniquity is taken away & thy sin purged ^{the} I heard the voice of the Lord
 saying whom shall I send & who will go for us then I said here I am send me & he
 said go & tell this people hearing indeed but they understand not & they see indeed but
 they perceive not make the heart of this people fat & make their ears heavy & shut
 their eyes lest they see with their eyes & hear with their ears & understand with
 their heart & ^{and} convert ^{and} be healed then said I saw how long & he said until the cities be
 made without inhabitant & the houses without man & the land be utterly desolate
 & the Lord have removed men far away for there shall be a great forsaking in
 the midst of the land but yet in that time shall be a tenth & they shall return & shall
 be called as a stubble field as an oak whose substance is in them when they cut
 their leaves so the holy God shall be the substance thereof & it came to pass
 the days of Ahaz the Son of Jotham the Son of Uzziah King of Judah & he
 reigned King of Syria & Pekah the Son of Remaliah King of Israel went up to
 assault Jerusalem to war against it but could not prevail & it was told the
 house of David saying Syria is confederate with Ephraim & his heart was
 moved & the heart of his people as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind
 then said the Lord unto Isaiah go forth now to meet Ahaz thou shalt see him
 thou shalt see him at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the
 fullers & say unto him Take heed be quiet fear not neither be faint hearted
 for the tails of these smoking firebrands for the kindling of them with the

Counselor, He might say, The Everlasting Father, He Father of Ages, O the increase of
of government & peace there is now, upon the throne of Israel & upon his kingdom to stand,
to establish it with judgment, & with justice from hence forth even forever. The heart of the
Lord of hosts will perform this. The Lord sent his word unto Jacob & it hath light upon his
heart & all the people shall know even Ephraim & the inhabitants of Samaria that now
in the pride & the stoutness of heart, the bricks are fallen down but we will build
with them stones: the beams are cut down, but we will change them into Cedar.
Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Reuben against him, & join his ene-
mies together the Syrians before & the Philistines behind: they shall devour Israel
thoroughly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand stretched out still
against the people to smite them, not to give them rest, neither do they seek the Lord their
Judge: will the Lord cut off from Israel head & tail, branch & such in one day?
The answer, he is the head of the staff that he cutteth off, he is the tail, for the
leaders of this people cause them to err: they that are head of them are destroyed: there-
fore the Lord shall have mercy upon the young men: neither shall have mercy on them, the
few & widows: for every one of them is a hypocrite & conceit doeth every mouth: speaketh
folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand stretched out still
against them, as the finger shall know the bitterness & thorns, & shall kindle
in the thickets, & they shall mourn like the lifting up of smoke: through the
wrath of the Lord of hosts is the land darkened: & the people shall be as the fuel of the
fire: no man shall spare his brother. He shall snatch on the right hand, & he han-
deth: he shall eat on the left hand, & they shall not be satisfied: they shall eat
every man the flesh of his own arm: Manasseh, Ephraim, & Ephraim (transcribed)
they together shall be against Judah: for all this his anger is not turned away, but his
hand stretched out still. He will say unto them that decrease in righteous desires, & that will
pierce earnest, which they have forsaken to turn aside the needy from judgment, & to take
away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, & that they may
eat the fatherless: & what will ye do in the day of visitation, & in the desolation which
shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? & where will ye leave your glory? will it
come? they shall bow down under the prisoners, & they shall fall under the chains:
all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand stretched out still. O Benjamin, the
rod of mine anger, & ~~the~~ ^{the} staff in their hands is their indignation: I will send him
against a hypocritical nation, & against the people of my wrath: with I give him
charge to take the spoil & to take the prey, & to tread them down like the mire of
streets. Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so: but he
saith it is to destroy & cut off nations not a few for he saith, are not mine
to get and I desire not Calno as Canaan: mine is not it, neither is it.

[illegible]

[illegible]

And have thought, so shall it come to pass, and I have purposed, so shall it stand, that I will
bring the Assyrian in my ^{land} ~~land~~ upon my mountains, tread him under foot, then shall
his yoke be despised from off them, & his burden shall depart from off them, & he shall say, this is the purport
that is purposed upon me, whole, saith the Lord, this is the hand, that is stretched out upon all nations
for the Lord of hosts hath purposed, & what shall disannul this hand, stretched out, & what
shall turn it back in the year that King Balthazar died, was this burden, & ye see not that
whole Babelonia, because the seed of him that smote thee is broken off, out of the City,
his seed shall come for that seed, & his seed shall be a few, flying, flying, & the
first horn of the ^{horn} shall fall, & the meek shall lie down in a prey, & I will kill them
with famine, & he shall slay the remnant, how, & the City shall be whole, & the
not decay, & there shall come from the south a smoke, & none shall be alone in his
cave, & what shall then answer the messengers of the nations, that the Lord hath
founded, & the seed of his people shall trust in it. Chapter X.

Chapter XI. I have also spoken somewhat concerning the words, which I have written, which
as been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah, in behalf of Isaiah, & many things, which have
hard for many of my people to understand, for they know not concerning the manner of proph-
ing among the Jews, & I have not taught them many things concerning the man-
ner of the Jews, for their words, were words of darkness, & their doings, were doings of abom-
ination, wherefore I wrote unto my people, unto all ^{them} that shall receive hereafter the
things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all
nations, according to the word, which he hath spoken, wherefore I wrote, O my people, what
are of the land of Israel, & ye can see my words, for because ~~the~~ the words of Isaiah are
not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all ^{those} that are filled with the spi-
rit of prophecy, but I give unto you a blessing, according to the spirit, which is in me, where-
fore I shall prophesy according to the plainness, which hath been with me from the time
that I came out from Jerusalem with my father, for beholding my soul delighteth in plai-
nness, unto my people, that they may learn, & my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah,
for I came out from Jerusalem, & mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, & I know that
few do understand the things of the prophets, & there is none other people that understand the
things of ~~the prophets~~ ^{which I have} spoken, unto the Jews, like unto them, save it be, that they are taught after
the manner of the things of the Jews, but behold, I have not taught my children
after the manner of the Jews, but behold, I have dwelt at Jerusalem, & therefore I
know concerning the regions round about, & I have made mention unto my children concern-
ing the judgments of God, which shall come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, accord-
ing to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, & I do not write them, but behold, I have written
the mine own prophecy, according to my plainness, in the which I know that no man can
be negligent, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled, men shall be

Behold I say unto you, that the right way is to believe in Jesus & deny him,
not Christ is the only one of God, therefore ye must bow down before him, & worship
him with all your might, mind & strength, & give whole heart & ye shall come
into the Father's Kingdom, & inasmuch as ye shall be obedient ye must keep the commandments
of God, until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses &
after that Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my
children, & my beloved Brethren, & the words which he shall speak unto you shall be
the law which ye shall do, for he shall say unto you, I have said, behold that
many generations shall pass away, & there shall be great wars, & contentions among
my people, & after that the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my
people of his birth, & also of his death, & resurrection, & great & terrible shall that
day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish, & they shall perish, because they cast out the prophets,
& the Saints, & on that day I am, wherefore the day of the blood of the Saints shall
all ascend up to God from the ground again, & there shall be all those that are faithful, & that
do not wickedly, the day that cometh shall bring them up with the Lord of Hosts, for they shall
be as stubble, & they that kill the prophets & the Saints, the inhabitants of the earth shall not
allow them up with the Lord of Hosts, & mountains shall cover them, & whirlwinds shall
carry them away, & buildings shall fall upon them & crush them to pieces & grind them
to powder, & they shall be visited with thunders, & lightnings, & earthquakes, & all man-
ner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them,
they shall be as stubble, & the day that cometh shall consume them with the Lord of Hosts,
O the pain & the anguish of my soul for the loss of the blood of my people, for I have both
said & will, with concernment, in the presence of the Father, that I will bring unto my
Father, & my Father shall hear, but he shall not the righteous, that hearken unto the words of the
prophets & destroy them, not that I look forward unto Christ with a steady trust, for those
that have given notwithstanding all persecutions, he shall be, they are they which
shall not perish, but the Lord of Hosts shall bring them up with the Lord of Hosts, & he shall
show them, they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed
away, & many of the people the generations shall have passed away, in righteousness, &
when these things shall have passed away, a speedy destruction cometh upon my people,
for notwithstanding the pains of my soul I have seen, wherefore I know that it shall
all come to pass, & they shall themselves, for they have not kept the commandments of their fathers, & therefore
shall they have destruction, for because they have not kept the commandments of their fathers, & therefore
shall they have destruction, rather than right, therefore they must go down to hell for the sin of
the Lord will not always stand with man, & when the spirit ceaseth to shine within
in them cometh a speedy destruction, & this grieveth my soul, & as I spoke concerning
the convincing of the Jews that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be.

[illegible]

—mandated any that they should not partake of his holiness. Behold I say unto you this
may be. He hath given it for all men. He hath commanded his people that they
should persuade all men unto repentance. Behold hath the Lord commanded any that
they should not partake of his goodness. Behold I say unto you nay, but all men are freely
led to the one who will be their father in heaven. He hath commanded that those who shall be
his priests shall be for his holiness. Behold priests shall be that men preach & set themselves up for
a light unto the world. That they may get gain & praise of ^{the} world, but they seek
not the will of their God. Behold the Lord hath forbidden this thing, wherefore the Lord
God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is
love & concord. They should have charity. They were nothing, wherefore they should have
charity. They would not suffer the laborer in his sin to perish, but the laborer in
you shall be laborer for Zion, for if they be laborer for money, they shall perish & again
the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder, that they should not
lie, that they should not steal, that they should not take the name of the Lord
their God in vain, that they should not envy, that they should not have malice, that
they should not contend one with another, that they should not commit whoredoms,
that they should not do none of these things. For whose death shall he
ask for none of these iniquities come of the Lord, for he doeth that which is good and
up to his wisdom. He doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men
that he can do it. He doeth it to show his goodness & he doeth it to show
his love unto his children, who he doeth to make them his members with the
holiness of all and he doeth to show his holiness, but he doeth in the last day
in the day of the Gentiles, he doeth all the nations of the Gentiles & also the Jews, but
those who shall come upon that land in the ^{those who} which shall be of another land, they
shall inherit the land, the which he doeth to show his holiness with iniquity & all
manner of abominations, when that day shall come they shall be visiting ^{of} the Lord
of hosts with thunder & with earthquake & with a great noise & with storm & tem-
pest & with the flame of devouring, fire & all the nations that fight against Zion &
that desire her shall be as a dream of a night vision, yet it shall be unto them
as an arrow in a target, which means they shall be slain, but he awaketh &
his soul is ready on like unto a thirsty man, which doeth with & he doeth to drink
with but he awaketh & he doeth he is faint & his soul hath of thirst, yet he awaketh
all the multitude of all the nations, he that fight against mount Zion, for
behold all ye that do iniquity, I say unto you, ye shall cry out &
ye shall be drunken, but not with wine, ye shall stagger, but not with
strong ^{light} for behold the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of sleep & sleep,
for he hath ye have closed your eyes & ye have rejected the prophets & ye have

10 but thus saith the Lord God of Israel they shall have a Bible & it shall proceed forth from the
fleshy mine ancient covenant. I will give unto them the Bible which they have given for the Bible which they
gave them for what do the Jews like me unto the Jews the hands & the labors & the blood
of the Jews & I will deliver unto me, in bringing forth the salvation unto the Gentiles & I will
write large remainder on the fleshy mine ancient covenant. I will give unto them the Bible which they
have given them & I have not sought to receive them but to be that I will return all these things
in your own hands for I the Lord shall not forget my people. They shall feel that shall
see a Bible, we have got a Bible. I have need no more Bible have ye obtained a Bible and
it was by the Jews know ye not that there are more nations than one know ye not that I
the Lord your God have created all men & that I remember ^{more of} them which are upon the Isles of
the Sea & that I will in the heavens above & in the earth beneath to bring forth my word
unto the children of men ye shall see upon all the nations of the earth, which I have made
because that ye shall receive mine & my word know ye not that the testimony of two
nations is a ~~testimony~~ witness unto you that I am God that I remember one nation like unto
to another, when I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another &
when the two nations shall come together the testimony of the two nations shall come
together also & I do this that I may know unto many that I am the same God
as today & forever & that I shall speak with my words according to mine own pleasure & the
order that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another
for my work is not yet finished neither shall it be until the end of man neither
until that time hence forth I come where I will because that ye have a Bible ye need
not suppose that it contains all my words neither will ye suppose that I have
not caused more to be written for I command all men both in the east & in the
west & in the south & in the north & in the islands of the Sea that they shall write
the words which I speak unto them in all of the Book which shall be written & I
will judge the words every man according to their words according to that which is written
in the Book & I shall speak unto the Jews & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto
the Ishmaelites & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house
of Israel which I have left away & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto all the
nations of the earth & they shall write it & it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have
the words of the Ishmaelites & the Ishmaelites shall have the words of the Jews & the Ishmaelites
& the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel & the lost tribes of Israel
shall have the words of the Ishmaelites & the Jews & it shall come to pass that I will
gather out of the house of Israel I will gather some unto the lands of their possession
my word also shall be gathered in one & I will speak unto them that fight
against my word & against my Spirit which have of the house of Israel that I am
the God of the covenant with the Ishmaelites that I will remember his covenant

Y now behold unto this be true that if it would speak unto you for a better world than the
suffering that we shall be subject to that ye are more right than the Gentiles shall be from
enemies shall be the firmament of the earth shall all likewise perish & because of the work
which have been broken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed for he who
I say unto you as many of the Gentiles will repent and the commandments of the Lord & as many
of the Jews as will not repent shall be cut off from the Lord's covenant with none said
it be with them that repent ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ his commandments is the help of Israel & I know
I would have these come what more concerning the Jews & the Gentiles for after the time
of which I have spoken shall come forth & be written unto the Gentiles & I shall in a
pain unto the Lord shall be many which shall believe the words which are written
& they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of an Israel then shall the remnant of an
Israel know concerning us how that we come not from Jerusalem & that they are a descendant of
the Jews & the Gospel of Jesus Christ shall be dispensed among them wherefore they shall have
knowledge of their fathers & also the knowledge of Jesus Christ which was had
among their fathers & then shall they rejoice for they shall know that it is a blessing unto
them from the hand of God & their hearts of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes
& many generations shall no longer among them save they shall be a white & a deli-
cious people & it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall
begin to believe in Christ & they shall begin to gather in about the face of the land & as
many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightful people & it shall be
me to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations kindreds
tongues & people to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth & with
righteousness shall the Lord God judge the world & reward with equity to the meek
of the earth & he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth & with the blast
of his lips shall he slay the wicked on the time speedily cometh that the Lord
God shall cause a great division among the people & the wicked will be destroyed
he will spare his people even if it is so that he must destroy the wicked by their
righteousness shall be the gift of his love & his faithfulness the yoke of his reins
& then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb & the Leopard shall lie down with the
kid & the calf & the young lion & the lambing together & a little child shall lead them
& the cow & the bear shall feed their young ones shall lie down together & the lion
shall eat straw like the ox & the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp & the
weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den they shall not hurt nor destroy
in all my holy mountain for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the
waters cover the sea wherefore the things of all nations shall be made known unto
things shall be made known unto the children of men there is nothing which is secret
at soul it shall be revealed there is no work of darkness save it shall be made

It manifest in the light & there is nothing which is sealed upon earth cannot it
all be made manifest all things which have been revealed unto the Children
men shall at this day be united & there shall have power over the hearts of
the Children of men no more in a long time know my beloved brethren I must
make an end of my sayings. Amen X III

And now I desire to make an end of my prophesying unto you my beloved brethren &
I cannot write but a few things which I know must surely come to pass neither
can I write but a few of the words of my Father which I know the things which I have
written sufficient unto you it be a few words which I must speak concerning the
doctrine of Christ wherefore I shall speak unto you plainly according to the plain
manner of my prophesying. I know that I delight in plainness for I see that men
misdoth the Law of God among the Children of men for the Lord God is the light he is
the understanding he is the light unto men according to their language unto their
understanding wherefore I would that ye should remember that I have spoken
unto you concerning the baptism which the Lord hath commanded me that I should baptize
the Lamb of God which should take away the sin of the world. Now if the Lamb of
God being holy should have need to be baptized by water to fulfil all righteousness
O then how much more need have we being unholy to be baptized. Ye men be men & ye
will ask of you my beloved brethren wherein the Lamb of God is justified all right
eousness in being baptized. I know that he was baptized but he was not unwilling
he being holy he chose the water that he might be baptized according to the law he
humbleth himself before the Father & submitth unto the Father that he would be
obedient unto the Father in keeping his commandments wherefore I know that he was baptiz-
ed with water for the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove & again it show-
eth unto the Children of men the righteousness of the Father & the righteousness of the Son by
which they should enter the Kingdom of the Father before them & be baptiz-
ed children of men follow me wherefore my beloved brethren can ye follow Jesus
and will ye be willing to keep the commandments of the Father & the Father will give
unto you ye shall be baptized in the name of my beloved Son & in the name of the Father
to me saying in that is baptism in my name to him with the Father give the Holy Ghost
unto me wherefore follow me & do the things which ye have seen me do wherefore
my beloved brethren I know that if ye shall follow the Son with all your heart
and with all your might & with all your mind & with all your strength with not in least repenting of
your sins submitting unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ
by baptism ye shall follow him & I know that if ye shall follow him ye shall be baptized
in his name he shall give unto you the Holy Ghost & then can ye walk with the Son
of God & shall be baptized unto the Father of all but he shall be baptized in the name of the Father

And I have come up hither to bear the pleasing word of God unto the word which has
left the wounded soul, which I have seen with my soul, that I should be
wounded because of the evil commandment which I have received from you
to do, namely, to cause you to sin, to enlarge the wounds of those which
are already wounded, instead of considering & healing their wounds, & those which have not
been wounded instead of healing upon the pleasing word of God, have I have placed to
pierce their souls & wound their delicate minds, but notwithstanding the greatness
of the task I must do according to the which commands of God, I tell you concerning
your wickedness & abominations in the presence of the pure in heart, & the broken
heart, & under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God, wherefore, I must tell you
the truth according to the plainness of the word of God, for he said, as I engaged of the Lord,
that came the wind unto me, saying, Jacob get thee up into the temple on the mountain
& declare the word which I shall give thee, unto this people, & now behold my brethren,
this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for
Gold, & to Silver & all manner of precious ores, in the which this land which is a land
of promise unto you & to your seed doth abound most plentifully, & the hand of the
midnight hath smiled upon you, most pleasingly, that ye have obtained magnificence
& because that some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren
ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, & wear stiff necks & high heads, because of
the evilness of your opponent & persecute your brethren, because that ye suppose that
ye are better than they, & now my brethren, I ye suppose that God justifyeth you in this
thing, behold I say unto you, I say, that he condemneth you, & if ye hearken in these things
my judgment must needs come unto you, that he would show you that he com-
passeth you, with one glance of his eye, he can smite you to the dust, that he would
rid you from this iniquity & abomination, & that ye would listen unto the word of the
commandments & let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls, think of your
children, like to your fathers, be familiar with all & live with your substance, that
they may be rich like unto you, but before that ye seek to be rich, seek ye for the Kingdom
of God, & if ye have obtained a hope in Christ, ye shall obtain riches if ye seek them,
& ye will not ^{lose} them, for the intent to do good, to do both the naked, & to feed the hungry, & to
behold the captive, & administer relief to the sick, & the afflicted, & now my brethren
I have spoken unto you concerning pride & those of you which I have said, ye are
righteous & be ye called him, because that ye are proud in your hearts, of the things which
God hath given you, & that ye suppose that such things are commendable
unto him who created all things, & the one thing is as precious in his sight as
another, & all which is of the dust of the earth, & the self same end hath he created them, that

I should keep his commandments & glorify him & would make an end of speaking
unto you concerning this bridge & were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a
greater thing, my heart would cease speaking, because if you had the word of God here
thou art because of your great crimes, for behold thus saith the Lord, this people begin
to be men in iniquity, they understand not the Scriptures, for they seek to increase themselves
in evil & will not be righteous, because of the things which are written concerning
David & Solomon his sons, behold David & Solomon truly had many wives & con-
cubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord, wherefore thus saith the
Lord, I have led this people out of the land of Urucum long by the house of mine
ancestors, that it might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins
of Joseph, wherefore the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto the
of old, wherefore my brethren, hear me & hearken to the word of the Lord, for there shall not
be ^{many} among you, have said it, he one wife & concubines he shall have none, for the
Lord God delighteth in the chastity of women, & wherefore ~~the~~ ^{his} ~~hominations~~ ^{hominations} before me
thus saith the Lord of hosts, wherefore this people shall keep my commandments, saith
the Lord of hosts, & I will be the land, for their sakes, for I will saith the Lord of
hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people, otherwise they shall be
to these things, for behold, the Lord, have seen the sparrow & heard the mourning of the
daughters of my people in the land of Urucum, & in all the lands of my people, because
of the wickedness & abominations of them, & I will not suffer, saith the Lord of hosts,
that the cries of the daughters of my people, which have lead out of the land of Urucum,
shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of hosts, for
I shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people, because of their tenderness
sare I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction, for they shall not
commit whoredoms like unto the women of the land of Urucum, & now, behold my
brethren, ye know that these commandments, was given to you for this, wherefore
these known, when before ye have come unto great condemnation, for ye have done these
things, which ye are not to have done, behold ye have done greater iniquity than the
Lamanites, & now, ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, & lost the con-
fidence of your children, because of your had examples before them, & the robings
of their hearts ascend up to God against you, & because of the strictness of the word
of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts did pierce with deep wounds
but, behold I have said unto you, that one person in heart, shall say to God, I
am innocent of mind & I pray unto him with exceeding faith, & he will console you in
your afflictions, & he will plead your cause & send down fire upon those who seek
your destruction, I tell you that one person in heart, shall lift up your heads & receive
the pleasing word of God, & least of all, his love for more of your minds and hearts

however, but we write unto you that are not pure in heart, that will not ^{be} this day
before God, for except ye shall repent, the land is cursed for your sakes & the Laman-
ites, which is now. All ye who write unto you, never the less, they are cursed with a curse
they shall reach you again unto destruction, to the time, speedily cometh. Take heed
therefore, they shall possess the land of you in haste, & the Lord God will lead among
the righteous in you among you, & hold the Lamanites, whom ye hate, because of the
evil they do, & the cursings which hath come upon their skins, are, more righteous
than you, for they have not forgotten the Commandment of the Lord, which was
given unto our fathers, that they should have it, were over us, & conclude that
they should have none, & they should not be, whom do we commit among them, & now
the Commandment they observe to keep, wherefore because of their observance in keep-
ing this Commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful
unto them, & one day they shall become a blessed People, & hold their hands out
their wives, & their wives love their husbands, & their husbands love their wives, & their
elders, & their brethren, & their fathers, towards you, & because of the sinfulness of the
Lamanites, wherefore how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator, O my
Brethren, I say, that, unless ye shall repent of your sins, that their skins will be white
than snow, & ye shall be known to be with them, before the throne of God, wherefore, a
Commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye shall no more go
against them, because of the hardness of their skin, & that ye shall go with them, be-
cause of their sinfulness, but ye shall remember your own sinfulness, & remember that
their sinfulness came because of their sins, wherefore, ye shall remain, be ye good children
unto the Lord, that ye have quickened their hearts, because of the example that ye have set, before the
Lord, & also remember that ye may, because of your sinfulness, bring your children, un-
to destruction, & their sins be added upon your heads at the last day, O my Brethren, be
warned unto, my words, because the Labalties of your souls, & be yourselves that ye may
awaken from the slumber of death, & save yourselves from the pains of hell, that ye may
not become angels to the Devil, to be cast into that lake of fire & brimstone, which
is the second death, & now I speak, unto many, many things unto the People of Joseph
in warning, them against fornication, & drunkenness, & every kind of iniquity, & tell-
ing them of the awful consequences of them, & a hundredth part of the proceedings of this
People, which now began to be numerous cannot be written upon these plates,
but many of their iniquities are written upon the larger plates, & their names, & their
names, & the signs of their things, these plates are called the plates of Jacob, & they were
made by the hand of Joseph, & I make an end of speaking these words. (Light 111)
now I bid adieu, it came to pass, that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my
People in word, & I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the time, that

100 of engraving some words upon plates & with now that the things which we will upon
plates must remain but what some things we write upon any thing that it be upon
plates must perish & vanish away but we can write a few words upon plates which
shall give our children & also our beloved brethren a small degree of knowledge con-
cerning us in concerning themselves now in this thing we do rejoice & we have delig-
ently to engrave these words upon plates hoping that our beloved brethren & our child-
ren will receive them with thankful hearts & look upon them that they may learn
with joy & not with sorrow neither with contempt concerning their first pain-
to for for this intent have we written these things that they may know that we know
of Christ & we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming & not
only we ourselves had a hope of his glory but also all the holy prophets which we have
sent us to have they believed in Christ & worshipped the Father in his name & also we
worship the Father in his name & for this intent we keep the law of Moses & paint-
ing our souls to him & for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness even
as it was as covenants unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the com-
mands of God in offering up his Son Isaac which was a similitude of Jesus & his only be-
gotten Son wherefore we search the prophets & we have many revelations & the spirit
of prophecy & having all these witnesses we obtain a hope & our faith becometh un-
shaken inasmuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus & the Holy
Spirit they are on the mountains on the waves of the sea nevertheless the Lord
God himself is our witness that we may know that it is by his great & his great conde-
scensions unto the children of men that we have power to do these things to have great
marvellous & the works of the Lord have been searched out the doers of the mysteri-
es of him & it is impossible that man should find out all his ways & no man know-
eth of his ways until he be revealed unto him wherefore brethren desire not the reve-
lations of God for to have by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth
which earth was created by the power of his word wherefore if God being able to speak &
the word was & to speak & man ^{was} ^{not} (O then why not able to command the earth and the
workmanship of his hands upon the face of it according to his will & pleasure not
wherefore brethren seek not to counsel the Lord but to take counsel from his hand for he
knows that he counselleth in wisdom & in justice & in great mercy unto all
his works wherefore become ^{holy} reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ
his only begotten Son that ye may obtain a resurrection according to the power
of the resurrection which is in Christ & be presented at the first fruits of Christ unto God
having faith & obtaining a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself
in the flesh & now our beloved marvel not that I tell you these things for ye may
seek of the atonement of Christ & attain to a perfect knowledge of him as to attain

to the knowledge of a resurrection & the world to come beholding, from the that Joseph
 let him prophesy to the understanding of men for the Spirit speaketh the truth & lieth in
 wherefore it speaketh of things as they really are & of things as they really will be wherefore
 as things are manifested unto us plainly for the salvation of our souls but beholding
 are not witnesses alone in these things for God also spake them unto the fathers of old but
 beholding the Jews were a stiffnecked people & they despised the words of plainness & killed the
 prophets & sought for things that they could not understand wherefore because of their blind-
 ness which blind men came by looking beyond the mark they must needs fall for-
 ward & be taken away his plainness from them & delivered unto them many things which
 they cannot understand because they desired it & because they desired it God hath done
 it that they might stumble & now I Jacob am led on by the spirit unto prophesying
 for I perceive by the workings of the spirit which is in me that by the stumble-
 ing of the Jews the wall which the stone upon which they might build & have safe
 foundation but he hold according to the scriptures this stone shall become the gra-
 vel & the last & the only true foundation upon which the Jews can build & now my
 beloved how is it possible that men of learning reject the true foundation
 can ever build upon it that it may become the head of them can behold-
 ing beloved brethren will understand this mystery unto you if I do not by any means
 get shaken for my justification in the spirit & I stumble because of my own anxiety for
 you beholding my brethren do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet
 nor which spake unto the house of Israel saying hearken ye house of Israel & hear the
 words of one a prophet of the Lord for behold I will speak with the Lord I will speak
 house of Israel like unto a lance which is full of holes which a man look & marvel in his
 mind & it grow & marvellous & began to decay & it came to pass that the master of the
 vineyard went forth & he saw that his olive tree began to decay & he ^{said} I will
 dig about it & I will plant it that perhaps it may shoot forth young & tender bran-
 ches & it flourish not & it came to pass ^{that} he pruned it & digged about it & I ^{said} I will
 according to his word & it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth some
 what a little young & tender branches but he held the main top the rest began to
 wither & it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it & ^{said} I will
 now I perceive that I should have had the vineyard where I digged the branches
 from a wild olive tree & bring them hither unto me & I will pluck off those main
 branches which are beginning to wither away & I will cast them into the fire that
 they may be burned & he held with the Lord of the vineyard I will take away many of
 these young & tender branches & I will graft them whether I shall or not & it mattereth
 not that if it is so that the root of this tree will flourish may present the fruit
 unto myself & therefore I will take these young & tender branches & I will graft

that the servant saith unto his master how comest thou hither to plant this tree
 on this branch of the tree for behold it was the servant that in all the land of thy vine-
 yard & the land of the vineyard ^{saith} saith unto him I cannot see it. I know that it is a
 poor spot of ground, wherefore I said unto thee I know, namish'd it this long time & the-
 refore behold thou it both brought forth much fruit & it came to pass that the Lord of
 the vineyard ^{saith} saith unto his servant look hither behold I have planted another branch
 of a better kind of wood, that this soil of ground may bear fruit this year, but behold
 the tree I have namish'd it this long time & it both brought forth much fruit & the
 Lord gather'd it & lay it up against the season that I may present it unto mine own
 self & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{saith} saith again unto his servant look
 hither, behold another branch also which I have planted, behold that I have namish'd
 also & it both brought forth fruit & he ^{saith} saith unto the servant look hither, I behold the
 last, behold this, I have planted in a good spot of ground & I have namish'd it, this year
 will I bring a part of the tree both brought forth fruit, & the other part of the tree, be-
 cause the fruit is wild, I have namish'd this tree like unto the others & it
 came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{saith} saith unto the servant pluck off the branches
 that have not brought forth good fruit & cast them into the fire, but behold the servant
^{saith} saith unto him, let me present it & lay it up, & I namish'd it a little longer, that per-
 haps it may bring forth good fruit, unto thee that thou mayest lay it up against the season
 that I may present it, that the Lord of the vineyard & the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did
 namish all the fruit of the vineyard & it came to pass that a long time had pass'd away & the
 Lord of the vineyard ^{saith} saith unto his servant come let us go down into the vineyard, that we may
 labour again in the vineyard, for behold the time cometh, when the Lord shall cometh where-
 fore I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self, & it came to pass that the
 Lord of the vineyard & the servant, went down into the vineyard & they came to the tree, &
 all natural branches had been broken off & the wild branches had been grafted in, & he
 hold all sorts of fruit did come from the tree & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard
 did taste of the fruit every sort according to its name, & the Lord of the vineyard ^{saith} saith
 behold this long time, have we namish'd this tree & I have laid up unto myself again
 at the season much fruit, but behold this time it both brought forth much fruit & that
 is more of it, which is good & he hold that are all kinds of fruit & it is all the more nothing
 notwithstanding all our labour & now it giveth me that I should love this tree & the
 Lord of the vineyard saith unto the servant what shall we do unto the tree that I may
 present again good fruit, that I may present unto mine own self, & the servant ^{saith} saith unto his master
 behold because they did not graft in the branches of the wild tree, they have more
 might, the roots, that they are alive & they have not perish'd, wherefore thou behold
 that they are yet good & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{saith} saith unto

184 I mean the will befalling me nothing, the roots being profitable me nothing, & long
and shall bring forth evil fruit nevertheless, I mean that the roots are good & for much
in purpose I have preserved them because of their worth though the fig have been brought
forth from the wild branches good fruit but behold the wild branches have ^{grown} ~~grown~~ ^{overcome} the
one over the roots thereof & because that the wild branches have overcome the roots then
of it hath brought forth much evil fruit & because that it hath brought forth so much
evil fruit than beholdeth that it beginneth to perish & it will soon become ripe
and that it may be cast into the fire except we should do something, for it to pass
and it will come to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sayeth unto his servant, let us go
down into the vineyard, for the roots of the vineyard & the whole of the natural branches have
also brought forth evil fruit & it came to pass that they went down into the vine
yard for the roots of the vineyard & it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the
natural branches had become corrupt also & the fruit of the second & also the last
of the year all became corrupt & the wise fruit of the last had overcome that part of the
fruit which brought forth good fruit even that the branch had withered away & it
came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went & ^{said} ~~spoke~~ unto the servant what he
said I have done more for my vineyard behold I know that all the fruit of the vine
year had it were true had become corrupt & now these which have once brought
forth good fruit have also become corrupt & now all the trees of my vineyard are
good for nothing save it be to be hewn down & cast into the fire & behold this is
that which I have done more for my vineyard & I have said that I might plant that tree in the place thereof & I shall behold it that a part thereof may
bring forth good fruit & the part thereof brought forth evil fruit & because ~~that~~ I have
seen that the branches thereof have been into the fire & I have overcome the
good branch that it ^{had} withered away & now to hold me notwithstanding all the cases
but we have taken away my vineyard the trees thereof ^{have} ~~have~~ become corrupt & that they
bring forth no good fruit & these ^{had} ~~would~~ be preserved to have laid up fruit thereof again
in the season unto mine own self but behold they have become like unto the roots of the
vineyard & they are of no worth but to be hewn down & cast into the fire & I perceive
me that I have lost them but what could I have done more in my vineyard & have
I slackened mine hand that I have not nourished it, nay I have nourished it & I have
digged it & I have planted it & I have dunged it & I have checked ^{for} the mine hand all
most all the day long & the end thereof is right & it grieveth me that I should hew
down all the hills of my vineyard & cast them into the fire & that they should be burnt
up who is it that ^{has} ~~has~~ overcome my vineyard & it came to pass that the servant ^{said} ~~said~~

I will now conclude this record declaring that I have written according to the
best of my knowledge by saying that the time passed away, with us & also our lives pass
ed away like a dream, we being as those who are asleep, & a solemn people standing
in dust and bones, awaiting burial in a wild, wilderness & a state of our
infirmity both came, many conventions, whosoever we do, mourn and we days & of Jacob
that I must come down to my grave wherefore I came unto my son Enos, take these plat-
ters & I told him the things, which my father Joseph had commanded me & he promised
obedience unto the Commandments, & I made up my writing upon these plates, which were
long, both been small & to the reader, but I am well hoping, that many of my brethren
may read my words, & follow the advice. The Book of Enos Chapter 1
The Lord came to Joseph, Enos hearing my father, that he was a just man, & he
taught me in his language & also in the name & admonition of the Lord & he blessed
the name of my father, & I will tell you of the marvel, which I have heard
of the Lord before ~~that~~ I received a revelation & I went to hunt, beasts
in the forest & the words which I heard, I heard my father speak concerning
eternal life & the way of the saints & the words of my father sunk deep into my heart
and my soul hungered & I knelt down before my maker & I cried unto him in
mighty prayer & supplication, for mine amendment & all the day, long did I cry unto him
and when the night came I did still, raise my voice high, that it reached the
heavens & there came a voice unto me, saying Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee &
these shall be thy blessings, & Enos knew, that God could not lie wherefore my guilt
was swept away, & I was in peace, & I was happy, and I was because of thy faith
in Christ whom thou hast ^{now before} ~~not~~ ^{now} ~~not~~ many years passed away, before that
he shall manifest himself in ^{the} flesh, whosoever go to ~~the~~ ^{the} faith both small & great
now it came to pass that when I had heard these words, I began to feel a desire for the
willings of my father, the spirit of holiness, & I did present my whole soul unto God
and I did write, & I was then struggling in the spirit, he held the voice of the Lord
came into my mind again saying, I will visit thy brethren, according to their diligence
in keeping my Commandments, & I have given unto them, this land & it is a holy land
& I cannot visit save I be on the coast of inquiry, wherefore I will visit thy brethren
according as I have said & their transgressions will I bring down, with iron upon
their heads & of that ~~that~~ Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to become
broken in the Lord & I prayed unto him with many long supplications, & I said, brethren
the Lord will & it came to pass that after I had prayed & labored with all diligence
the Lord said unto me, I will grant unto thee according to thy desires because of thy
faith & now, behold it is as the desire which I desired of him, that if it should so be
that my people the Nephites should fall into transgression & by any means be destroyed

id & the Lamanites should not be disturbed. But the Lord said would preserve a remnant of my people
righteous & faithful enough to be by the form of his religion that it might be brought in
the same, when they come to the Lamanites. But perhaps they might be brought into salva-
tion in all the pleasant new shoppings when again in restoring them to the true faith &
the same in their small plant they were possible they would destroy our seed as it
were all the Lamanites were with us when we had the knowledge that the Lord was able to pass
our sins & we would continue to go on as we had said unto me, in obedience to the
word which he had said unto me, that we shall receive in the name of Christ we shall receive
it & the Lord said I will bring you into the land which I have sworn unto you, that I would give it
unto you, that he would bring them, with us to the Lamanites in his own due time
& I know that I would be according to the covenant which he had made with
us before we had done it & that we had said unto me the Father, that he would give us the
thing & it shall be done unto them according to their faith. In this faith was like unto
the Lord & now I came to pass the Lord's word & now among the people of the land, in obeying
the things to come & testifying of the things which I had heard & seen & which I had seen that
the Lord had said I would diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith
in God, but our labors were vain, then I was filled with sorrow & wept & said by their evil
nature that they became wild & cruel & a blood thirsty people full of idolatry & the
iniquity, leading upon beasts & men, dwelling in tents & wandering about in the wild-
erness, with a cruel thing in their hands, having their heads shaved, & their hair long
as in the hair of the women & the men & women, then did I see nothing more & I saw
more & I saw continually seeing to do this, and it came to pass that the Lord
said I will see that I will raise all manner of grain, of wheat & barley, of kindred
of flocks of all manner of cattle, of every kind of grain & wild goats & also much honey &
there were exceeding many people among us & the people were called upon to people, had
to understand that there was nothing to be feared, was exceeding kindness, breathing & keep
keeping of wars & contentions, & distressed consciences continually reminding them of death
& of the duration of life, & the judgments of the Lord & God all these things stirring them
up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord & say that there was nothing about of these
things & exceeding great blessings of which he would keep them from going down sheeplike
to destruction & I saw the manner in which I would comfort them & I saw means between the
highland & the Lamanites in the course of my days & it came to pass that I began to be slow
in hand & it came to & nine years had passed away from the time that I came to the valley
of the river Lem & I saw that the Lord must come down to my people & having been wrought
upon by the word of the Lord I must speak & prophesy unto this people & declare the word
according to the truth which is in Christ & I have declared it in all my days & I have
said in it above that of the world & I am so to the place of my rest which is with

[illegible]

116:10 I have to this day ~~written~~ fulfilled it as many as go beyond this day must surely
come to pass wherefore I chose these things to finish my record upon them which
remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Lephai & I cannot write a hundred
th part of the things I have to write but I shall take those plates which contain
these prophecies & revelations & put them with the remainder of my record for they
are chosen unto me & I know they will be chosen unto my brethren & I do this for a wise
purpose for thus it will be according to the workings of the spirit of the Lord
which is in me & now I do not know all things but the Lord knoweth all things with
which he will come unto me & I will be in me according to his will & my prayer
God is answering me, brethren that they may once again come to the knowledge of God
and his redemption which is a gift that they may once again be a delightful people
I now, O Mormon, proceed to finish out my record which I take from the plates
of Lephai & I make it according to the knowledge & the understanding which God hath
given me, wherefore it came to pass that after Amalek had delivered up these pla-
tes unto the hands of King Benjamin he took them & put them with the other plates
which contained records which had been handed down by the kings from generation
to generation until the days of King Benjamin & they were handed down from King
Benjamin from generation to generation until they have attained to my hands & I
Mormon say to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth & I know
that they will be preserved for these are great things written upon them and of which
my people shall be judged at the great & last day according to the word
of God which is written & now concerning this King Benjamin he had some what
intentions among his own people & it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites
came down out of the land of Lephai to battle against his people but beholding King
Benjamin & his people his armies & a cloud against them & he was with the
strength of his army with the sword of a hundred in the strength of the Lord they did con-
quer against their enemies until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites & it
came to pass that the Lamanites against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of
all the lands of their inheritance & it came to pass that of the there has been Lamanites
& their number has been that the Lamanites according to their custom & of their kind
have been hospitable & full of kindness & goodness among the people & all these having been
happened according to the promise of the Lord having been made & covenanted & many di-
visions of armies and the Lamanites & it came to pass that King Benjamin with the
assistance of the people of his ~~people~~ ^{who} were among his people & his people King Benjamin
was a holy man & he did reign over his people in righteousness & there were many holy
men in the land & they did speak the word of the Lord with authority & they did
use much charity because of the blessings of the Lord upon them with the

help of their king, Benjamin for Benjamin with all the might of his soldiers. 11
 Surely in those days also the people of the land were established
 in the law of the Lord. (Chapter 12) For now there was no more con-
 fusion in all the land of Israel among all the people. ^{They} belonged to King Ben-
 jamin so that King Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days. & when
 he was old he had that done he called three of his sons, Micaiah & Helai & Heli-
 man & he said unto them should he have in all the sayings of our fathers that
 hereby they might become men of understanding & that they might know concern-
 ing the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouth of their fathers which ^{they} were
 delivered them by the hand of the Lord & he also taught them concerning the words
 which were engraven on the plates of brass saying unto them I would that ye should re-
 member that there is not for these plates which contain these records & these com-
 mandments, we must have copies in quenees or metal this present time not knowing the
 mysteries of God, as it were not possible that our fathers if he could have remembered
 all these things to have taught them to his children except it were for the help of the
 plates. In saying thus he taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could
 read these engravings & teach them to his children that they might be able to teach them
 to their children & so teaching the commandments of ^{the Lord} ~~the Lord~~ in this present time
 say unto you, and thus say, in these things which have been kept & preserved by the
 hand of ~~the Lord~~ ^{the Lord} that we might read & understand of his mysteries & have his command-
 ments always before our eyes that we might have dwelt in unto his
 & we should have been able to say when the commandments ^{which} were nothing com-
 ming these things as we do not believe them when they are taught them because of
 the hardness of these plates which are not carved by man's hand & would that ye
 should remember that these engravings are true & also that these records are true & he
 should also the plates of gold which contain the records & the sayings of our fathers for
 in the time they left Jerusalem until now & they are true we can know of them in
 our hearts as we have the witness in our hearts that we have seen that we would
 remember to teach them saying that ye may profit hereafter & would that ye should
 keep the commandments of God that ye may prosper in the land according to the prom-
 ises which the Lord made unto our fathers & many more things did King Benjamin teach
 his sons which are not written in this book & it came to pass that after King Benja-
 min had made an end of teaching his sons that he wanted old & he said that he
 must now go to the way of all the earth therefore he thought it expedient that
 he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons therefore he had Moriah brought
 before him & there are the words which he spoke unto him saying, my son I would
 that ye should make a great lamentation throughout all this land among all the peo-

... in the temple of Garabanda & the temple of Mosiah ~~which~~ dwell in this land that
thereby they may be gathered together for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto ~~the~~ this
my people out of mine own mouth that ~~there~~ and a king & a ruler over this people ^{which}
the Lord our God hath given us & moreover I shall give this people a name that shall
be ^{known} by ~~signifying~~ be distinguished about all the people which the Lord God hath brought
out of the land of Jerusalem & which do believe they have been a diligent people in keep-
ing the commandments of the Lord & I will give unto them a name that never shall be blot-
ted out except it be through transgression & evil & moreover I say unto you that if this highly
favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression & become wicked & an adul-
terous people that the Lord will deliver them up that thereby they become weak like an
old man & their brethren & we will we most preserve them by his might lest & moreover I say
as he hath been to preserve them & I say unto you that if he had not intended
his power in the preservation of you that they must have fallen into the hands of the
enemies & become victims to their hatred & it came to pass that after the king Benjamin
had made an end of these sayings to his son that he gave him charge concerning all
the affairs of the kingdom & moreover he also gave him charge concerning the records
which were engraven on the plates of brass & also the plates of silver & also the names
of Laban & the gold ornaments which had come to pass through the wickedness which
was wrought by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be lead everyone
according to the law & the justice which they gave unto him they ~~therefore~~ were
in faith & they did not prosper nor prosper in their coming but were driven back &
therefore they were ~~driven~~ driven back & therefore they were ~~driven~~ driven back &
affliction to the Jews up in Jerusalem & their Gaby & moreover came to pass that the
kingdom & did at the same time command him & proclaimed unto all the people ^{which}
were in the land of Garabanda that thereby they might gather themselves together
to go up to the temple to hear the words which he should speak unto them & it
came to pass that after Mosiah had done as he father had commanded him & had made
a proclamation throughout all the land that the people gathered themselves together from
throughout all the land that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which
king Benjamin should speak unto them & there were a great number even so many
that they did not number them for they had multiplied exceedingly & wanted
great in the land & they also took of the furlongs of their flocks that they might offer
sacrifice & burn offerings according to the law of Moses & also that they might give
thanks to the Lord their God who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem & who
had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & had appointed unto them
their teachers & also a great many to be thinking who had established peace in the
land of Garabanda & who had taught them to keep the commandments of God that

That which had been delivered unto him by the Angel of the Lord that he cast his eyes
round about on the multitude & he held they had fallen to the earth for the fear of the
Lord. he said upon them & they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state even less
than the dust of the earth & they all cried aloud with one voice saying O that we may be
freed from this bondage. O that we may have Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins & our
hearts may be purified for we believe in Jesus Christ the Son of God who created heaven
& earth & all things who shall come down among the children of men & it came to pass that
as he spake these words the spirit of the Lord came upon them & they were
filled with joy having received a remission of their sins & having peace of conscience
because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ which should come according
to the words which King Benjamin had spoken unto them & King Benjamin again open-
ed his mouth & began to speak unto them saying my friends & my brethren my kindred
& my people I would again call your attention that ye may hear & understand the reme-
inder of my words which I shall speak unto you for he hath ~~that~~ if the knowledge of
the goodness of God at this time hath ~~made~~ ^{led} you to a state of your nothingness & your
weakness & fallen state I say unto you ~~that~~ if ye have come to ^{a knowledge} ~~the knowledge~~ of the good-
ness of God & his matchless power & his wisdom & his patience & his long suffering
towards the children of men & also the atonement which ~~hath~~ ^{hath} ~~been prepared~~ ^{been prepared}
prepared from the foundation of the world that thereby salvation might come to
him that should put his trust in the Lord & should be diligent in keeping his com-
mandments & continue in the faith even unto the end of his life I mean the
life of the mortal body I say that this is the man that receiveth salvation through
the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind
and which even was ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~fall of Adam~~ ^{the fall of Adam} ~~on which we are~~ ^{on which we are} ~~we shall~~ ^{we shall}
be even unto the end of the world & that is the means whereby salvation cometh &
there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of. neither is there any
conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you he
shall believe in ^{God} believe that he is & that he created all things both in heaven & in earth he
shall believe that he hath all wisdom & all power both in heaven & in earth believe that
no man doth nor comprehendeth all the things which the Lord can comprehend & again
I say believe that ye must repent of your sins & forsake them & humble yourselves before
God & ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you & now if you believe these
things see that ye do them & again I say unto you as I have said before that as
ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God or if ye have known of his goodness
& have tasted of his love & have received a remission of your sins which causeth
such exceeding great joy in your souls even so I would that ye should remember
& always retain in remembrance the greatness of God & your own nothingness &

his good me & long suffering towards, your worthy brethren & humble yourselves even to
in the debt of ~~humility~~ calling on the name of the Lord daily & standing stedfastly in the
faith that which is to come which was of them in the minds of the Angel & which he
unto you that if ye do this ye shall always receive & be filled with the love of God & also
retain a remission of your sins & ye shall grow in the knowledge of the things that
in the knowledge of that which is past & here & ye will not have a mind to quarrel one
another about to live here & to live there every man according to that which is his
due & ye will not suffer your children that they go hanging on necks neither will ye
suffer that they transgress the laws & give to fight & quarrel one with another & that
the Devil which is the master of sin in whom the evil spirit which hath been the
then of his fathers he being an enemy to all righteousness but ye will teach them
to walk in the ways of truth & righteousness ye will teach them to love one another & to re-
ve one another & if ye yourselves will see that they stand in need of your substance
ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need & ye will not sa-
ffer that the beggar pulleth up his petition to you in vain & turn him out to perish
perhaps there shall say the man, I have brought upon myself his misery therefore I will
stop my ears & will not give unto him of my substance nor impart unto him of my substance
that he may not say for his punishment and just but I say unto you I command
therefore that the same hath great cause to repent & except he repenteth of that
which he hath done he shall be forever & hath no interest in the kingdom of God for he
shall be one of the beggars who are not all depend upon the same thing even God for all
the substance which we have for that we have it for gold & for silver & for all the rich
as which we love of every kind & behold even at this time ye have been calling on his name &
begging for a remission of your sins & ~~that ye~~ ^{that ye} suffer that ye have begged in vain may he be
pained out his spirit upon you & I say that your hearts should be filled with joy & that can
red that your mouths should be closed that ye could not find utterance exceeding great
was your joy & now if God who hath created you on whom you are dependant for your lives
& for all that ye have & are doth give unto you what ye ask that is right in
faith believing that ye shall receive it then how had ye ought to impart of the substance
that ye have one to another & if ye judge the man who pulleth up his petition to you for your
substance that he perish not & condemn him how much more fast will be your conde-
mnation for withholding your substance which doth not belong to you but to God to who
also your life belongeth & yet ye put up your petition nor repentance of the thing which
ye have done I say unto you as he said that man for his substance shall perish
with him & now I say that things unto those ^{which} are rich as pertaining to the things
of this world & again I say unto the poor ye that ^{have} ~~have~~ not & yet both sufficient to
remain from day to day I mean all day that day the beggar because I have

now because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of
men of Christ his law & his daughters for he said this day he hath virtually begotten
you & ye say that you have changed thought faith in his name therefore ye are born
of him & have become his law & his daughters & under that head ye are made part of the
tree in no other head whereby it can be made for there is no other name given whereby
salvation cometh therefore I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ
not all you that name yourselves into the covenant with God but ye should be obedient
unto the end of your lives & it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be
recorded at the right hand of God in the book which shall be called the name by which he is called for
he shall be called by the name of Christ & when it shall come to pass that whosoever
shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name the
which he will tell himself on the left hand of God & I would that ye should remem-
ber also that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that none should
be called out except it be through transgression therefore take heed that ye do not
transgress him the name for me be given out of your hearts say unto yourself now
that ye should remember & retain the name which is written always in your hearts that
ye are not ashamed in the left hand of God that that ye have & know the name by which
ye shall be called & also the name in which ye shall call your law & your brethren
in the name of ^{Christ} ~~him~~ ^{the Father} ~~his~~ ^{the Father} ~~not~~ ^{the Father} & ~~the Father~~ ^{the Father} ~~is~~ ^{the Father} ~~changed~~ ^{the Father} ~~unto him~~ ^{the Father} & is for-
given the thought & in the heart of his name & again with a man take an ass which he
sitteth in his neighbor's back him & say unto him may he will not even suffer that
he shall feed among his flock but will drive him away & cast him out I pray
unto you that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are
called therefore I would that ye should be steadfast & immovable always aban-
doning in good words that I said the Father God our Father may I say that you
may be brought to heaven that ye may have everlasting salvation & eternal life
through the wisdom of heaven & desire to know of him who dwelleth in all things in heaven
in earth in the air & in the water. Chapter 1111 and now ki-
ng Benjamin thought it was expedient of him having finished speaking to the people that
he should raise the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his
commandments it came to pass that there was not one soul ~~left~~ ^{except} ~~in the land~~ ^{in the land} but
what had entered into the covenant & had taken upon them the name of Christ & again it
came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these ^{things} ~~things~~ & had
consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler & a king over his people & had given them all
the charges concerning the kingdom & also had appointed priests to teach the people that they
might keep the commandments of God & to do this they remembered
the oath which they had made but did mind the multitude & they returned every

pass that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Samson began to grow angry that by any means my people should remain in the land & that they could not overcome ^{the} & bring them into bondage now they were ~~strong~~ as an Ishelcham. People therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage that they might put themselves into the labours of our hands yet that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields therefore it came to pass that king Samson began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people therefore there began to be wars & contentions in the land in in the thirtieth year of my reign in the land of Ephraim away on the south in the land of Simeon when my people were reaping & leading their flocks & tilling their lands a numerous host of Ammonites came upon them & began to lay their hands to take of their flocks & the corn of their field the year & it came to pass that they fled all that were not overtaken even into the City of Ephraim & did call upon me for succour & it came to pass that I did arm them with bows & with arrows with swords with simchals & with clubs & with stings & with all manner of weapons ^{while} ~~where~~ we could invent & my people did go forth against the Ammonites to battle & again the strength of the Lord did not go forth to battle against the Ammonites for my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies for we were come to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers & God did hear our cries & did answer our prayers & we did go forth in his might yet we did go forth against the Ammonites in one day & we did slay the thousand & so that we did say there were unable we had driven them out of our land & we were with minor wounds & help being their dead & he hold to us great sorrow & lamentation have bound & wounds mine & our brethren were slain & it came to pass that we again began to establish the tentacles & the nation began to possess the land in place & I caused that there should be suspicion was made of every kind that thereby I might have vengeance on my people against the time the Ammonites should come up again to war against my people that guards & armed about that land that the Ammonites might not come upon us again to invade & destroy us & thus I did guard my people & my flocks & keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies & it came to pass that we did inhabit the land of our fathers for many years & we for the space of twenty & two years & I did cause that the men should till the ground & raise all manner of grain & all manner of fruit of every kind & I did cause that the women should spin a loom & work & work all manner of fine linen & yea & do all manner of kind that we might be to our work & thus we did prosper in the land & thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty & two years & it came to pass that king Ammonites & his son began to reign in his stead & he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people & therefore they began to suspect in us

134 & to come up to battle against my people but ~~therefore~~^{had} sent my spies out round
about the land of Shulon that I might discover their preparations that I might
guard against them that they might not come upon my people & destroy them & it came
to pass that they came up upon the south of the land of Shulon with their numerous
battles, men armed with bows & with arrows & with swords & with darts & with stones
& with slings & they had their heads shaved, that they were naked & they were girt about
with a lether girdle about their loins & it came to pass that I caused that the men
my & children of my people should be hid in the wilderness & I also caused that all my
old men that could bear arms & also all my young men that were able to bear arms
should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites & I did place
them in their ranks every man according to his age & it came to pass that we did
go up to battle against the Lamanites & I even in my old age did go up to battle
against the Lamanites & it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord
to battle & now the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord nor the strength of the Lord
therefore they depended upon their own strength that they were a strong people as to the
strength of men they were wild & fierce & a hardy people believing in the traditions
of their fathers which is this believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem
because of the iniquities of their fathers & that they were wronged in the wilderness by the
sin of their fathers they were also wronged while crossing the sea & again that they were wronged
in the land of their inheritance after they had crossed the sea & all this because
that Lehi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord therefore he was favored
of the Lord for the Lord heard his prayers & answered them & he took the lead
of their journey in the wilderness & his brethren were wroth with him because they understood
not the dealings of the Lord they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they
hardened their hearts against the Lord & again they were wroth with him when they had
arrived to the promised land because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people
out of their hands & they sought to kill him & again they were wroth with him because
he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him & took the records which
were engraven on the plates of brass for they said that he had hidden them & that they should
kill their children that they should hate them & that they should murder them & that they should
rob & plunder them & do all they could to destroy them & therefore they had an eternal hate
ed towards the children of Lehi for this very cause that they had taken the ruling of the
people out of their hands & his fair promises ~~was~~^{had} deceived me that I have brought this my
people up into this land that they may destroy them & we have suffered this many
years in the land & now I ~~will~~^{do} ~~send~~^{send} after having told all these things unto my people
concerning the Lamanites I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might putting
their trust in the Lord therefore we did contend with them face to face & it came to pass

that was slain there again, out of our law & we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them & it came to pass that we were again in our own law & my people ^{again} began to line their flocks & to till their ground & we were old & the kingdom upon one of my sons therefore I say now may the Lord bless my people Amen. Chapter VIII.

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon one of his sons & as soon as he began to reign in his stead he did not walk in the ways of his father for he did not keep the commandments of God but he did walk after the desires of his own heart & he had many wives & concubines & he did cause his people to commit sin & do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord yea they did commit whoredoms & all manner of wickedness & he laid a law upon them that they possessed a fifth part of their gold & of their silver & a fifth part of their brass & of their iron & a fifth part of their tithings & also a fifth part of all their grain & all this did he take to support himself & his wives & his concubines & also his priests & their wives & their concubines thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom for he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father & consecrated new ones in their stead such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts yea thus went the substance in their largeness & in their holiness & in their righteousness & in their law which King Noah had put upon his people thus did the people labor exceedingly to support & maintain him & they also became idolatrous because they were deceived by the vain & flattering words of the king & priests for they did offer up flattering things unto them & it came to pass that King Noah built many elegant & spacious buildings & he ornamented them with fine work of wood & of all manner of precious things & gold & of silver & of iron & of brass & of gill & of copper & he also built him a spacious palace & he tarried in the midst thereof all of which was of fine work & was ornamented with gold & silver & with precious things & he also caused that his workmen should make all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple of fine wood & of copper & of brass & the stone ^{which} was set apart for the high priests which were above all the other stone he did ornament with ^{pure} gold & he caused a breastwork to be built before them that they might rest their heads & their arms upon while they should speak giving down words to his people & it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple & it was a very high tower even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof & overlook the land & he knew also the land of Shemlon which was possessed by the Ammonites & he could even look over all the land saying about & it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land ^{thereon} & he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land of Shemlon which had been a resort for the children of Ishmael at the time they were out of the land & thus he did do with the riches which he obtained

136 to the taxation of his people & it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his
riches & he loved his kind in iniquitous living with his wives & his concubines & so did
also his priests spend their time with harlots & it came to pass that he & his priests were
somewhat in the land & he built wine presses & made wine in abundance & thus
he became a wine drinker & also his priests & it came to pass that the Lamanites began to be
come upon his people upon small numbers & to slay them in their fields & while they were
in cutting their crops & king Noah sent servants round about the land to keep them off
but he did not send a sufficient number & the Lamanites came upon them & killed them
& drove many of them out of the land thus the Lamanites began to destroy them
& to encircle their habitation upon them & it came to pass that king Noah sent his arm-
ies against them & they went down back as they drove them back in a time that before
they returned regarding in their spirit & now because of this great wailing they were
filled upon the pride of their hearts they did boast in their own strength saying that
their army could stand against thousands of the Lamanites & thus they did boast & did
right in blood & the shedding of the blood of their brethren & this because of the wickedness of
their king & priests & it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was
Shinadi & he went forth among them & began to prophesy saying behold thus saith the Lord
thus hath he commanded me saying go forth & say unto this people thus saith the Lord we have
to this people for I have seen their abominations & their wickedness & their iniquities & I
will visit them in mine anger & except they repent & turn to the Lord
in God behold I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies yea & they shall be brought into
bondage & they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies & it shall come to pass that
they shall know that I am the Lord their God & am a jealous God visiting the iniquities
of my people & it shall come to pass that except this people repent & turn to the Lord
their God they shall be brought into bondage & none shall deliver them except it be
the Lord the Almighty God yea & it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will
be slow to hear their cry & yea & I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies
& except they repent in sackcloth & ashes & cry mightily to the Lord their God I will not hear
their prayers neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions & thus saith the Lord
thus hath he commanded me & now it came to pass that when Shinadi had spoken these
words unto them they were wroth with him & sought to take away his life but
the Lord delivered him out of their hands now when king Noah had heard of these words
which Shinadi had spoken unto the people he was also wroth & ^{he said} that he would
slay him for he ^{had} said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one
with another & to raise contentions among my people that I may slay them

ye have not & have ye taught this people that they should do all these things. & say unto 139
ye may ye have not, & now when the king had heard these words he said unto his priests
amongst them they fellow & slay him for what have ye to do with him for he is mad & they stood
forth & attempted to lay their hands on him but he withstood them & said unto them Touch
me not for I will write ye if ye say some words upon me for I have not delivered them
message which the Lord sent me to deliver unto you have I said some word which ye re-
spect that I should say. & the Lord will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this
time but I must fulfill the commandment which the Lord hath commanded me & I have
not have I said you the truth ye are angry with me for I have taken the word
of God ye have judged me but I am mad if now it came to pass after a kind of had
spoken these words that the Father of our Lord direct not lay their hands on him for the
Spirit of the Lord was upon him & he was clothed with shining armor & he did while in
the presence of many while speaking with the Lord & he spoke with power & authority from
God & he continued his work saying ye see that ye have not power to slay me therefore I must
my message ye & I delivered that it came ye to your hearts because I tell you the truth
concerning your iniquities after I say words I tell you with words & amazement & with things
but I will say more & I will say more & I will say more & I will say more & I will say more
but this must be I tell you what ye do with me after this shall be as a type & as a
show of things which shall come & now I read unto you the remainder of the Commandments of God
which are written in your hearts because that ye have studied & taught
iniquity the most evil I ever saw & I never remember that I said unto you that shall not
make unto thee any graven image or any likeness of things which are in heaven above or
that are in the earth beneath in which I am God neither under the earth & again these shall
not have down these I write them now send them from the Lord thy God am I
speaking God visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children unto the third & fourth
generation of them that hate me & I will bring thine and thousands of them that love me & keep
my commandments they shall not be brought to the Lord thy God in vain for the Lord will
not hold him guiltless that doeth so I command you to remember that the Sabbath day to keep
it holy six days shall thou labor & do all thy work but the seventh day the Sabbath
of the Lord thy God thou shalt not do any work thou nor thy son nor thy daughter
thy man servant nor thy man servant nor thy cattle nor thy change that is with
thy gates for in six days the Lord made heaven & earth & the sea & all that therein is
before the Lord blessed the Sabbath day & he gave it for a sabbath day thy mother
that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee thou shalt
not kill thou shalt not commit adultery thou shalt not steal thou shalt
not have false witness against thy neighbor thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house
thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife nor his man servant nor his maid servant

140 Now for as we will see now anything that is by neighbors

And it came to pass that after Othniel had made an
 end of these sayings that he said unto them have ye taught this people that
 they should observe unto all these things, to keep these commandments & say unto you
 that ye had the word would not have caused me to come, both to the people & to the king
 But he said now he said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses & say unto
 you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet. But he say unto
 you that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of
 Moses & moreover say unto you that salvation doth not come by the law alone
 neither not for the alone men which I have said shall make, on the king & in
 midst of his people that they must unavoidably perish notwithstanding the law of
 Moses & now say unto you that it is expedient that there should be also given to the
 children of Israel yet another law for they were a stiffnecked & rebellious
 people & prone to commit sin & they thought that there was a law given them of a
 law of righteousness & holiness & law which they were to observe strictly from day to day
 to keep them in subjection unto God & man. Truly I consider them that he held say
 unto them that all these things which he said things to come & now did they understand the law
 say unto you now they did not all understand the law & this because of the hardness of
 their hearts for they understood not that which he said & now many had said each
 more to the other that ~~the law~~ ^{the law} of God for he held did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning
 the coming of the messiah & that God should anoint his people yet & even all the prophets who
 have prophesied ^{before} ~~before~~ ^{of} him have said that God himself should come down among the children
 of men & take upon him the form of man & so on in many places upon the face of the
 earth have they not said also that he would bring to pass the resurrection of the dead
 & that he himself should be oppressed & afflicted yet even doth not Isaiah say, which
 he believed and of whom it is whom the arm of the Lord rested, in his will grow up before him
 as a lowly shoot & as a root out of dry ground for he was from unclean seed & when he
 shall be thus that is he shall be that we should love him he is despised & rejected of men &
 a man of sorrows acquainted with grief & so on but as I have said from him he was despised
 & men counted him not & he had no hall, barren and grief & sorrow on sorrows yet he did
 esteem himself when smitten of God & afflicted but he was wounded for our transgressions
 he was bruised for our iniquities the chastisement of our peace was upon him & with his stripes
 we are healed all we like sheep have gone astray we have turned every one to his own way
 & the Lord hath said on him the iniquities of us all he was oppressed & he was afflicted
 yet he opened not his mouth, he is thought as a lamb, he is led as a sheep he
 loved him whereas it should be he should not his mouth, he was taken from prison to

signs before them & bid him if that they found him not to be being deceived, so many did
did write all the words & said: & Hinadi had spoken & it came to pass that the King said
that his guards would seize him and Hinadi to be bound & they bound him & cast him
into prison & after three days having consulted with his brethren he came that he should upon
be brought before him & he said unto him: & Hinadi, we have found an acquaintance
and that is Hiram, worthy of death. He has just said that God himself would consider
among the Children of men & man for such come, thou shalt be put to death unless thou
wilt ~~that~~ ^{recall} all the words which thou hast spoken until concerning me & my people.
& Hinadi ~~came~~ ^{came} unto him & say unto you: I will not recall the words which I have
spoken concerning this people. They are true & that ye may know of their state & that
suffered myself that I have taken ~~into~~ ^{into} your hands, ye shall suffer even until death
& I will not recall, I would that they should stand as a testimony against you & if ye say, my
will shed innocent blood & they shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last
day & nothing shall man have to release him, for he sealed his word for he knew
that the judgments of God would come upon him but he trusted himself up, & now again
and now I began to accuse him saying he had ~~been~~ ^{been} taking things for the King was blind
in anger against him & he delivered him up that he might be slain & it came to pass
at that time that his hands were bound & he was cast into the stocks & ye even unto death
& now when the flowers began to wither, then he came unto them saying, behold I am a
man of peace & I shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall
be slain that I do suffer even the pains of death by fire & this because they believe
in the salvation of the Lord their God & it will come to pass that they shall be afflicted in
all manner of diseases because of your iniquities & ye shall be smitten on one
hand & shall be driven & scattered to & fro even as a wild flock is driven by
might & forcible hands & in that day ye shall be hunted & ye shall be taken by the
hand of your enemies & then ye shall suffer even the pains of death by fire that God will
bring upon those that destroy his people. O God, receiving my soul & now when Hinadi
had said these words he fell, having suffered death by fire & he having been put to death
because he would not deny the Commandments of God having sealed the truth of his words
with death & now it came to pass that Alma who had fled from the servants of King Noah
wrote of his sins & iniquities & went about privately among the people & began to teach the
words of Hinadi & also concerning that which was to come & also concerning the resurrection
of the dead & the redemption of the people which was to be brought to pass through the power of
the life & death of Christ & his resurrection & ascension into heaven & as many as would hear
him said he did teach & he taught them privately that it might not come to the knowledge
of the King & many did believe his words & it came to pass that as many as did believe
him did go forth to a place which was called Mooson, having received his name.

The King being in the borders of the land having been informed by some men at seasons by night
beasts now there was in Inimmon a Mountain of pine wood & Alma resorted thither there being
near the water a flock of small trees where he did hide himself in the day time from
the search of the king & it came to pass that as many as believed him went forth with
single hearts & minds & it came to pass after many days there were a great number gathered together to
the place of Inimmon to hear the words of Alma yea all were gathered together that believed
his word to him & he did teach them & did lead them to repentance & ademi-
stration laid on their hearts & it came to pass that he said unto them behold here is the manner of
Inimmon for thus saith God called know ye are desired to come into the fold of God & to be
called his people & are willing to bear one anothers burdens that they may be light yea
are willing to mourn with those that mourn yea & comfort those that stand in need of
comfort & to stand as witnesses of God at all times & in all things & in all places that
ye may be in love until death that ye may be redeemed of God & be numbered with
those of the first resurrection that ye may have eternal life now I say unto you if this
be the desire of your hearts what shall ye give against being baptized in the name of the
Lord as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him that ye will
serve him & keep his commandments that he may pour out his spirit more abundantly
upon you & now when the people had heard these words they clasped their hands joyfully
& exclaimed this is the desire of our hearts & now it came to pass that Alma took
Helaman who being one of the least & next to last youth in the assembly cried saying
O Lord pour out thy spirit upon thy servant that he may do this work with holiness
of heart & when he had said these words the spirit of the Lord was upon him & he said Al-
ma baptize these having given the testimony of God as a testimony that ye have
entered into a covenant to serve him until ye are dead as to the mortal body &
may the spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you & may he grant unto you eternal life
through the redemption of Christ ^{who} hath prepared from the foundation of the world
that Alma had said these words both Helman & Helaman ^{were} buried in the water
& they arose & came forth out of the water rejoicing being filled with the spirit again
Alma took another & went forth a second time into the water & baptized him ac-
cording to the first only he did not bury himself again in the water yea & thereafter
he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Inimmon & they were in numbers
about five hundred & four ^{yca} souls were baptized in the water of Inimmon & were filled with
^{the} spirit of God & this was ~~the~~ called the house of God or the Church of Christ from
that time forward & it came to pass that who so ever was baptized by the power & autho-
rity of God ~~was~~ was made to rise & change & it came to pass that Alma having authority
from God ordained ^{by the power of the Holy Spirit} twelve of the young men did he ordain to preach
the word to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God &

the king, & there began to be a great contention among them: And now there was
a man among them whose name was Gideon, & he being a strong man, & an-
swering to the king, though he drew his sword & swore in his wrath, that he would slay
the king: And ~~now~~ came to pass that he, being with the king, & when the king saw
that he was about to overthrow him, he fled & ran & got upon the horses, which were near
the temple: And Gideon pursued after him, & was about to get upon the horse to slay
the king: & the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, & that
all the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land: And now the king
cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying, Gideon, spare me for the Lamanites are upon
us: they will destroy thee, & they will destroy my people. And now the king was not
at all concerned about his people, as he was about his own life: nevertheless Gide-
on did spare his life: And the king commanded the people that they should flee from
the Lamanites, & he himself did go before them, & they fled into the wilderness
with their women & their children: And it came to pass that the king did fear them,
did conclude them, & began to slay them: And it came to pass that the king commanded them
that they should leave their wives & their children, & flee before the Lamanites, now
as men of war that would not leave them, but did rather try to perish with them:
The next night their wives & their children fled: & it came to pass that those that tarried
with their wives & their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth
& plead with the Lamanites, that they would not slay them: & it came to pass that the La-
manites had compassion on them, for they were chained with the beauty of their women:
Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, & took them captives, & carried them back to the
land of Nephi, & quailed unto them, that they might possess the land under the condition
that they would deliver up the king back into the hands of the Lamanites, & deliver up their property
even one half of all they have, & all your day of their gold, & their silver, & all their precious
things: that they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, from year to year: & now there
was one of the sons of the king among them, that had been taken captive, whose name was Lin-
hi: & now Linhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed: nevertheless he
did not say a word of the iniquities of his father: & he himself, being a just man, & it came
to pass that Gideon went down into the wilderness, & went to search for the king: & those that were
with him, & it came to pass that they met the king in the wilderness, all said the king to his friends,
now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, & if their wives
& their children were slain, & also those that had tarried with them, that they would not
return: & also their wives, & the king commanded them that they should not return
& if they were angry with the king, & caused that he should suffer unto death: & he said
they were about to take the priests also, to put them to death: & they fled before them, & it
came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi: & they and Linhi

148 of Gideon & the sons of Gideon told them of all that had happened to them
& their children & that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the
land paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed & the people held
men of Gideon that they had slain the king & his priests had fled from them farther
into the wilderness but came to pass that night they had ended the ceremony that they
returned to the land of Lehi repairing because their wives & their children were needed
and they told Gideon what they had done to the king & it came to pass that the king
of the Lamanites made a covenant unto them that his people should not slay them & also
Limhi being the son of the king having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people made
covenant unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him even one
half of all they possessed & it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom & to
establish peace among his people & the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the
land that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land that they might not
depart into the wilderness & he did support his guards out of the tribute which he de-
ceived from the people & now King Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for
the space of two years that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them
now there was a place in Jerusalem where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather them-
selves together to sing & to dance & to make themselves merry & it came to pass that
there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing & to dance & now
the priests of King ~~Amor~~ ^{Amor} had been warned & he returned to the city of Lehi & also
learning that the people would slay them therefore they durst not return to their wives
& their children & having tarried in the wilderness & having discovered the daugh-
ters of the Lamanites they laid & watched them & when there were but few of the
young women gathered together to dance they came forth out of their secret places & took
them & carried them into the wilderness & twenty & seven of the daughters of the Laman-
ites were carried into the wilderness & it came to pass that when the Lamanites found
that their daughters had been missing they were angry with the people of Limhi
for they thought it was the people of Limhi therefore they sent their armies forth
yea even the king himself went before his people & they went up to the land of Lehi
to destroy the people of Limhi & now Limhi had discovered them from the towers
all their preparations, & now did he discover therefore he gathered his people together
and said wait for them in the fields & in the forests & it came to pass that when
the Lamanites had come up that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from
their waiting places & began to slay them & it came to pass that the battle became sore
for they fought like lions for their prey & it came to pass that the people of
Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them & yet they were not half as numerous
as the Lamanites but they fought for their lives & for their wives & for their children

The Lord's compassion on them was speedily manifested towards them & returned with their king
in peace to their own land & it came to pass that Simhi & his people returned to the
city of Joppa & began to dwell in the land again in peace & it came to pass that after many
days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Joppites & they began
to come into the borders of the land round about & now they durst not stay them because
of the oath which their king had made unto Simhi but they would smite them in
their churches & carnal authority over them & began to put heavy burdens upon them
books & drive them as they would a dumb ass & all this was done that the people
the Lord might be humbled & now the afflictions of the Joppites were great & they
were in such a way that they could do nothing but weep and cry for their Lamanite
rulers had surrounded them on every side & it came to pass that the people began
to murmur with the king because of their afflictions & they began to be desirous
to go against them to battle & they did so that the king, seeing their complaint, there-
fore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desire & they gathered their
swords together again & put on their armour & went forth against the Lamanites to drive them
out of their land & it came to pass that the Lamanites did hear them & ~~therefore~~ ^{there}
hearkened they many of them & now there was a great mourning & lamentation among
the people of Simhi the widow & mourning for her husband the Lord & the
widow & mourning for their father & the brothers for their brethren now there
was a great many widows in the land & they did cry mightily from day to day for a
great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them & it came to pass that their contin-
ual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Simhi to anger against the
Lamanites & they went again to battle but they were driven back again suff-
ering much loss & so they went again even to the third time & suffered in the like
manner & those that remained then returned against the city of Joppa & they did
humble themselves even to ~~that~~ ^{the} durst subverting themselves into the yoke of bondage
submitting themselves to be smitten to be driven to & fro & humbled according to
the desires of their enemies & they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility
& they did cry mightily to God year after year & day long & they cry unto their God & he
would deliver them out of their afflictions & now the Lord was slow to hear their
cry because of their iniquities & nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries & began
to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens yet the
Lord did not altogether deliver them out of bondage & it came to pass that they began
to prosper by degrees in the land & began to raise grain more abundantly & flocks
& herds that they did not suffer with hunger now there was a great number
of women more than there was of men therefore King Simhi commanded that every
man should impart to the support of the widows & their children that they

might not perish with hunger & this they did because of the greatness of their
number that had been slain now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much
as it was possible to secure them grain & their flocks & the king himself did not travel
his person without the walls of the City unless he took his guards with him fearing that
he might
be some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites & he caused that his people should wa-
tch the land round about that by some means they might take those priests that
fled into the wilderness which had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites & that had
caused such a great desolation to come upon them for they were desirous to take them
that they might furnish them for they had come into the land of Lehi by night
& carried off of their grain & many of their precious things therefore they laid wa-
it for them & it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between
the Lamanites & the people of Limhi even until the time that Ammon & his Bre-
thren came into the land & the king having been without the gates of the City with
his guard he discovered Ammon & his Brethren & supposing them to be priests of
that nation he caused that they should be taken & bound & cast into prison & had
they been the priests of God he would have caused that they should be put to death
when he found that they were not but when they were his Brethren & had come from the
land of Judah he was filled with exceeding great joy now King Limhi did
not know of the coming of Ammon & a small number of men to search for the land of Ja-
rahemla but they could not find it & they were lost in the wilderness nevertheless they
did find a land which had been peopled yea a land which was covered with the
honey on a land which had been peopled & which had been destroyed & they having re-
posed it to be the land of Jaharhemla returned to the land of Lehi having marked the
boundaries of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon & they brought a
record with them which was a record of the people ^{which} comes they had found & they were engraven on
plates of ore & now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of
Ammon that King Benjamin had a gift from God whereby he could interpret such
engravings yea & his son also did receive yet Ammon & his Brethren were filled with
sorrow because so many of their Brethren had been slain & also that King Noah & his priests
had caused the people to commit so many sins & iniquities against God & they also
did mourn for the death of Shileadi & also for the departure of Alma & the people
that went with him who had planned a Church of God through the strength & power
of God to faith on the words which had been spoken by Shileadi yea they did mourn
for their departure for they knew not whether they had sinned now they would have gladly
joined with them for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve
him & keep his commandments & now since the coming of Ammon King Limhi
had also entered into a covenant with God & also many of his people had done so

And now it came to pass that King Limhi & many of his people
 were desirous to be baptised but there was none in the land that had authority
 save God & Samuel the Lamanite. This thing considering himself unusually, Samuel
 therefor they did cast at that time from themselves such a blanket waiting upon the
 will of the Lord now they were desirous to become even as Alma to his brethren who
 had fled into the wilderness. They were desirous to be baptised as a witness to a nation
 that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts nevertheless they did for-
 getting the time & an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter to now all
 the study of Samuel & his people & King Limhi & his people was to deliver themselves
 out of the hands of the Lamanites & from bondage. Chapter X
 And now it came to pass that Samuel & King Limhi began to counsel with the people
 how they should deliver themselves out of bondage & even they did cease that all the
 people should gather themselves together & that they did that they might have the
 will of the people concerning the matter & it came to pass that they could find none
 to deliver themselves out of bondage except it were to take their women & children
 & killing & slaying their hands & their feet & depart into the wilderness for the Lamanites be-
 ing so numerous that it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them.
 Therefore to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword was not comely least the
 Lamanites would fight & slay before they could depart into the wilderness. Now O King, thou hast
 said to hear, & thou hast said to my words many times where we have been contending with
 our brethren the Lamanites & now O King if thou hast not found me to be an uncompe-
 tent servant or if thou hast rather to be named to my words in any degree that they
 have been of service to thee even so I desire that thou wouldst let us to my
 words at this time & I will be thy servant & deliver thy people out of bondage &
 nothing granted unto him that he might speak & Gideon said unto him he would
 back pass through the back wall on the back side of the city the Lamanites on the guard
 of the Lamanites by night and slay them. Therefore he sent a proclamation among all the peo-
 ple that they gather together their flocks & hands that they may drive them into the wilder-
 ness by night & will go according to thy command to pay the tribute of wine to the
 Lamanites & they will be drunken & we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their
 camp where they are drunken & asleep & we will slay with our women & our children
 our flocks & our hands into the wilderness & we will travel around the land of Shiloh
 & it came to pass that the King Lamanite came to the words of Gideon & he said that
 King Limhi desired that his people should gather their flocks together & pay the
 tribute of wine to the Lamanites & he also sent more wine as a present unto them
 they did drink freely of the wine which King Limhi did send unto them & it came
 to pass that the people of King Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with

[illegible]

It should be far to death, ~~it came to pass that~~ Alma & his people did not raise their voice
to the Lord their God, but did give out their hearts to him; he did know the thoughts
their hearts, & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions,
saying, Lift up your heads, be of good courage, for I know of the covenant which ye have
made unto me, & I will covenant with thee, my higher deliverance, the more of bondage, I will
also ease your burdens which ye put upon you; should I say, that even you cannot feel them
upon your backs, then, while you are in bondage, I will do, that ye may stand as my
Latter, I have heard, & that ye may know, I am only that of the Lord God do visit
people in their afflictions; now it came to pass that the burdens which ~~ye~~ ^{had} laid upon
Alma & his brethren, were made light, & the Lord did strengthen them, that they could
bear up their burdens with ease; they did submit cheerfully & with patience to all the will
of the Lord, & it came to pass that so great was their faith & their patience, that the
voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying, Be of good courage, for on the morrow
now I will deliver ~~you~~ ^{you} out of bondage, & he raised unto them, that shall ye
see this people, & I will go with you, & deliver this people out of bondage; now it
came to pass that Alma & his people, in the night time, gathered their flocks & ge-
sees also of their grain; ye, even all the night time were they gathering their flocks
& together, & in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites;
ye, & all their labor-master were in a profound sleep; ~~it came to pass that~~ Alma
his people departed into the wilderness, & when they had traveled all day, they pitched their
tents in a valley, & they called the name of the valley Alma, because he had been
in the wilderness, & in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God, because
he had been merciful unto them, & eased their burdens, & had delivered them out of
bondage; for they were in bondage, & none could deliver them, except it were the Lord
their God, & they gave thanks to God, ye, all their men, & all their women, & all their children,
that could speak, filled their voices in the praises of their God; & now the Lord said unto
Alma, Haste thee, & get thou & this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have
awakened, & do pursue thee; ye, ye, get thee out of this land, & I will stop the Lamanites
in this valley, & they came no further in pursuit of his people; & it came to pass that they
departed out of the valley, & took their journey into the wilderness; & it came to pass that
after they had been in the wilderness twelve days, they arrived to the land of Gadi-
kemah king. Mosiah did also receive them with joy, & Mosiah caused
that all the people should be gathered together; now there were not so many of
the children of Joseph, as of those ~~which~~ ^{who} were descendants of Joseph, as there were of
the people of Gadikemah; ~~there~~ ^{there} was a descendant of Manasse, & those which came with
him into the wilderness, there were not so many of the people of Joseph, of the people
of Gadikemah, as were ~~there~~ ^{there} of the Lamanites; ye, they were not half so numerous as

[illegible]

153 King Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches
throughout all the land of Zarahemla and gave him power to ordain
priests and teachers over every church, now this was done because there
^{was} so many people that they could not be all gathered by one teacher, neither
could they all hear the word of God in one assembly, therefore they did as-
semble themselves together in different bodies being called churches, every
church having their priests and their teachers and every priest preach-
ing the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma;
and thus notwithstanding there being many churches, they all one church
were even the church of God, for there was nothing preached in all the church
~~in the land of Zarahemla~~ - except it were repentance and faith in
God, and now there ^{were} seven churches in the land of Zarahemla, and it
came to pass that whosoever was desirous to take upon them the name
of Christ of God, they did join the churches of God, and they were called
the people of God, and the Lord did pour out his spirit upon them, and
they were blessed and prospered in the land, now it came to pass that
there were many of the rising generation that could not understand
the words of King Benjamin being little children at the time he spake un-
to his people, and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers,
they did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection
of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ,
and now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of
God, and their hearts were hardened, and they would not be baptized,
neither would they join the church, and they were a separate people as
to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful
state, for they would not call upon the Lord their God, and now in the
reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God, but
because of the desertions among the brethren they became more nume-
rous, for it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering
words ^{which} were in the church, & did cause them to commit many sins,
therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin that ^{was} in
the church should be admonished by the church, and it came to pass
that they were brought before the priests & delivered up unto the
priests by the teachers, & the priests brought them before Alma ^{who}
~~and he was the high priest~~ was the high priest, - Now King Mosiah had
given Alma the authority over the church, and it came to pass
that Alma did ^{not} know concerning them, for there were many witnesses

157 against them yea the people stood & testified of their iniquities in a burnt
- dance now there had not any such thing happened before in the church
therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit & he caused that they should
be brought before the King & he said unto the King behold here are many
~~which~~ ^{which} we have brought before thee ^{which} are accused of their brother
yea & they have been taken in divers iniquities and they do not repent of
their iniquities therefore we have brought them before thee that thou mayest
judge them according to their crimes but, King Mosiah ^{said} ~~said~~ unto Alma
behold I judge them not therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be
judged and now the spirit of Alma was again troubled and he went in
enquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter for he
feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God & it came to
pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God the vo-
- ice of the Lord came to him saying blessed art thou Alma blessed
are they ~~which~~ ^{which} were baptized in the waters of Mormon thou art
- blest because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my son
- ant Ammon & Abinadi and blest are they because of their ex-
- ceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them
& blest art thou because thou hast established a church among this people
& they shall be established & they shall be my people yea blest is this peo-
- ple ^{which} ~~which~~ ^{which} are willing to bear my name for in my name shall they call & they
are mine & because thou hast enquired of me concerning the transgressor
thou art blest thou art my servant and I covenant with thee that thou
shall have eternal life and thou shalt serve me & go forth in my name &
shall gather together my sheep & he that will hear my voice shall be
my sheep & him shall ye receive into the church & him will I also receive
for behold this is my church whosoever ~~that~~ ^{that} is baptized shall be bapt-
- ized unto repentance & whosoever ye receive shall believe in my name
& him will I freely forgive for it is I that taketh upon me the sins of this
world for it is I that hath created them & it is I that granteth unto him that
believeth in the end a place at my right hand for behold in my name
are they called & if they know me they shall come forth and shall have
a place eternally at my right hand and it shall come to pass that
when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never
knew me come forth & shall stand before me & then shall they know
that I am the Lord their God that I am their redeemer but they would not
be redeemed & then will I confound them that I never knew them &

let they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil & his
angels therefore I say unto you that he that will not hear my voice the
same shall ye not receive into my church for him I will not receive at
the last day therefore I say unto you go and whosoever transgresseth
against me him shall ye judge according to the sins which he ^{has} committed & if he confess his sins before thee and me and repenteth in
the sincerity of his heart him shall ye forgive & I will forgive him also
yea & as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses
against me & ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses for verily
I say unto you he that forgiveth not his neighbors trespasses when he
saith that he repenteth ^{him} the Father brought himself under condemnation
now I say unto you go & whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall
not be numbered among my people and this shall be observed from this time
forward. And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote
them down that he might have them & that he might judge the people of
that church according to the commandment of God, and it came to pass
that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity
according to the word of the Lord and whosoever repented of their sins & did
confess them, them he did number among the people of the church &
those that would not confess their sins & repent of their iniquity, the same
were not numbered among the people of the church & their names were
blotted out. And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of
the church & they began again to have peace & to prosper exceedingly in the
affairs of the church walking circumspectly before God receiving many &
baptizing many & now all these things did Alma and his fellow labourers
do, ^{and} were over the church walking in all diligence teaching the
word of God in all things suffering all manner of afflictions being
persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God &
they did admonish their brethren, & they were also admonished every
one by the word of God according to his sins or to the sins which he
had committed. Being commanded of God to pray without ceasing & to give
thanks in all things, and now it came to pass that the persecutions which
were ^{being} inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that
the church began to murmur & complain to their leaders concerning
the matter and they did complain to Alma & Alma laid the case be-
fore their king Mosiah and monarch consulted with his priests, and it
came to pass that King Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the

161 land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of them
which belonged to the church of God, & there was a strict command through-
out all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them that
there should be an equality among all men that they should let no pride
nor haughtiness disturb their peace that every man should esteem his
neighbor as himself labouring with their own hands for their support
yea and all their priests & teachers should labour with their own hands
for their support in all cases save it were in sickness or in much want
& doing these things they did abound in the grace of God and there began to
be much peace again in the land and the people began to be very
numerous and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth yea on
the north & on the south on the east & on the west building large cities
and villages in all quarters of the land & the Lord did visit them and
prosper them & they became a large & a wealthy people. Now the
sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers & also one
of the sons of Alma was numbered among them he being called
Alma after his father nevertheless he became a very wicked & an adu-
-rous man & he was a man of many words & did speak much flattery to the people
therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities &
he became a great hindrance to the prosperity of the church of God stealing
away the hearts of the people causing much discontent among the people
giving a chance for the enemies of God to exercise his power over them & now
of God to exercise his power it came to pass that while he was going ab-
-out to destroy the church of God for he did go about secretly with
the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church & to lead astray the
people of the Lord contrary to the commandments of God or even the
king & as said unto you no they were going about ^{rebelling} against God
Behold the angel of the Lord appeared unto them & he descended as it were in
a cloud & he spake as it were with a voice of thunder which caused the
earth to shake upon which they stood, & so great was their astonishment
that they fell to the earth & understood not the words which he spake
unto them nevertheless he cried again saying Alma arise & stand
forth for why persecutest thou the church of God for the Lord hath said
this is my church & I will establish it & nothing shall overthrow
save it is the transgressions of my people & again the angel said Behold
the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people & also the prayers of his
servant Alma who said they rather for he had prayed with much faith

162 concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth
therefore for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power & au-
-thority of God that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to
their faith, & now behold can ye dispute the power of God for behold
doth not my voice shake the earth & can ye not also behold me before
you & I am sent from God, now say unto thee go & remember the captivity
of thy fathers in the land of Helam & in the land of Kipli & remember how great
things he hath done for them for they were in bondage & he hath delivered
them, now say unto thee Alma go thy way & seek to destroy the church no
more that their prayers may ~~be~~ answered & this even if thou wilt of
thyself be cast off, & now it came to pass that these were the last words which
the angel spake unto Alma & he departed & now Alma & those that were
with him fell again to the earth for great was their astonishment for
with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord & his voice
was as thunder which shook the earth & they knew ^{that} there was nothing else
the power of God that could shake the earth & cause it to tremble as this
-up it would part asunder & now the astonishment of Alma was so great
that he became dumb that he could not open his mouth & he became
weak even that he could not move his hands therefore he was taken
by those that were with him & carried helplessly even until he was laid
before his father & they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened
unto them & his father rejoiced for he knew that it was the power of
God & he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might
witness what the Lord had done for his son & also for those that were with
him & he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together & they
began to fast & to pray ^{to the} Lord their God that he would open the
mouth of Alma that he might speak & also that his limbs might receive
their strength that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and
know of the goodness & glory of God, & it came to pass after they had fasted
and prayed for the space of two days and two nights the limbs of Alma received
their strength & he stood up & began to speak unto them bidding them to be
of good comfort for said he I have repented of my sins & have been redeemed
of the Lord & behold I am born of the spirit & the Lord ^{said} unto me marvel not
that all mankind yea men & women all nations ^{from} kindreds & people
must be born again yea a born of God changed ^{from} their carnal & fallen state
to a state of righteousness being redeemed of God becoming his sons & daugh-
-ters & thus they become new creatures & hence they do this they can.

is I in, now I inherit the kingdom of God. I say unto you unless this be the case they
must be cast off, and this I know because I was like to be cast off, never the life after
wading through much tribulation repenting night unto death the Lord in
mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning & I am born
of God my ^{my} hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness & bonds of iniquity
I was in the darkest abyss but now I behold the marvelous light of God my
soul was writhed with eternal torment but I am snatched & my soul is freed
no more I reject my redemption & denial that which had been spoken of by
our fathers but now that they may foresee that he will come & that he re-
-embirth every creature of his creating & he will make himself manifest
unto all, yea every knickhole bow & every tongue confess before him yea
even at the last day when all men shall stand to be judged of him then shall
-all they confess that he is God then shall they confess who live without
-God in the world that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is
just upon them & they shall quake & tremble & shrink beneath the glance
of his allsearching eye & now it came to pass that Alma began from this
time forward to teach the people & those ~~who~~ ^{were} were with Alma at
the time the angel appeared unto them traveling round about through all
the land publishing to all the people the things which they had
heard & seen & preaching the word of God in much tribulation being
greatly persecuted by those ^{who} which were unbelievers being smitten
by many of them but notwithstanding all this they did impart much
consolation to the church confirming their faith & exhorting them with
long suffering and much travel to keep the commandments of God, and
of them were the sons of Mosiah & their names were Ammon and
-Aaron and Cimon and Hirmni then were the names of the sons of
Mosiah ~~after they had~~ ^{and} traveled throughout all the land of Zarahem-
-la & among all the people ^{who} which were under the reign of King Mosiah
Zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done
to the church confessing all their sins & publishing all the things which
they had seen & explaining the prophecies & the ~~scriptures~~ ^{scriptures} scriptures
to all who desired to hear them & thus they were instruments in the
hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea to the
knowledge of their redeemer & how blessed are they for they did publish
peace they did publish good tidings of good and they did
-declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth Chapter 13

164

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things they took a solemn ~~meeting~~ ^{council} with them and returned to their father the King and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might with those whom they had selected to go up to the land of Nephi that they might ~~preach~~ ^{publish} the ~~good~~ things which they had heard and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren the Lamanites that they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers in that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God that they might become friendly to one another that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature for they could not bear that any human soul should perish, yea even the very thought that any ^{soul} should endure endless torment did cause them to quake & tremble & thus did the spirit of the Lord work upon them for they were the vilest of sinners & the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities & suffering much fearing that they should be cast off forever. And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi, and it came to pass that King Mosiah went & enquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word & the Lord said unto Mosiah let them go up for many shall believe on their words & they shall have eternal life and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go & do according to their request & they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites. And I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter. Now King Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon for there was not any of his sons ^{which} would accept of the kingdom therefore he took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass & also the plates of Nephi & all the things which he had kept & preserved according to the commandments of God & after having translated & caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi which ~~was~~ ^{were} delivered to him by the hand of Limhi and this he ~~done~~

165 because of the great amity of his people for they were desirous to ^{know} ~~be~~ ^{to} know concerning those people ^{who} which had been destroyed now he translated them by the means of these ^{two} stones which ^{were} ~~was~~ ^{had} ~~been~~ ^{been} ~~translated~~ ^{translated} into the two ^{times} of a ^{hour} now these things ^{were} ~~was~~ ^{had} ~~been~~ ^{been} ~~translated~~ ^{translated} from the beginning & ~~had~~ ^{were} handed down from generation to generation for the purpose of interpreting Languages & they have been kept & preserved by the hand of the Lord that he would discover to every creature ^{who} ~~which~~ should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people & whosoever has these things is called ^{seer} ~~seer~~ after the manner of old times. Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records behold it gave an account of the people ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{were} ~~was~~ destroyed from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower at the time the Lord confounded the Languages of the people & they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the Earth yea & even from that time until the creation of Adam, now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly yea they were filled with sorrow notwithstanding it gave them much knowledge in the which they did rejoice & this account shall be written hereafter, for behold it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account

Chapter 14th

And now as I said unto you that after King Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of Brass, and all the things which he had left, and conferred them upon ^{his} ~~the~~ ^{son} ~~son~~ of ^{Alma} ~~Alma~~, ^{who} ~~which~~ was the son of Alma, yea the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep it record of the people handing them down from one generation to another; even as they had been handed down from the times that Lehi left Jerusalem, now when King Mosiah had done this, he set it out through all the land, among all the people, desiring ~~the~~ ^{them} to know their will concerning who should be their King, and it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying, We are desirous that Aaron, thy son, should be our King, and our ruler, now Aaron was gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the King could not confer the Kingdom upon him; ^{neither would Aaron take upon him the Kingdom,} neither was any of the chief of King Mosiah willing to take upon them the Kingdom, therefore King Mosiah sent again among the people, yea, even a ~~written~~ ^{written} word sent it among the people, and these were the words that were ~~sent~~ ^{sent}

166

Saying: Behold, O ye my people, on my Brethren, for I esteem you as such.
for I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to
consider for ye are desirous to have a king, now I declare unto you,
that he to whom that Kingdom doth rightfully belong, hath declared
and will not take upon him the kingdom, and now if theirs should
be another appointed in his stead, behold, I fear their would
rise contentions among the you, and who knoweth. But what say
I, to whom the Kingdom doth belong, should I turn to the
^{unhappy} ~~and~~ down among a part of this people after him, which will
cause ~~it~~ wars & contentions among you, which would be the
cause of shedding much blood, and perverting the way of the
Lord, ye, and destroy the souls of ^{many} people. Now I say unto
you, let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no
right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right
to destroy another, if he should be appointed in his
stead, and if ^{my} son should turn again to his pride and vain thou-
ghts, he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his
right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this to
~~commit~~ ^{commit} to commit much sin, and now let us be wise,
and look forward to these things, and do that which will make
for the peace of this people, therefore I will be your king the
remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us ~~appoint~~ ^{appoint}
appoint judges to judge this people according to our law; and
we will wisely arrange the affairs of this people; for we will
appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people
according to the commandments of ~~the Lord~~ ^{the Lord} god, now it is that
that a man should be judged of god ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ of man, for the
judgements of god are allways just, but the judgements of ~~man~~ ^{man}
men are not allways just, therefore, if it ~~was~~ ^{was} possible that ye
could have just men to be your judges, kings, ^{which} ~~which~~ would esta-
blish the laws of god, and judge this people according to his com-
mandments, ye, if ye could have men for your kings, ^{which} ~~which~~ would
be even as my father Benjamin ~~did~~ ^{did} for this people, say unto you,
if this could be allways the case, then it would be
expedient that ye should allways have kings to rule over you, and
even I myself have laboured with all the power and ~~strength~~ ^{strength} of

167

passages which I have promised to teach you the Commandments of
God and to establish peace throughout the land that there should be
no wars nor contentions no slaying nor poisoning nor murdering nor
any manner of unrighteousness and whosoever hath committed any of these things
I punished according to the crime which he had committed according to
the law which hath been given to us by our fathers now I say unto you
that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have
a king or kings to rule over you for behold how much tragedy doth one
wicked king bring to be committed ye could not but greatly be distressed
ye remembering ^{of} his wickedness and his abominations and also the
wickedness and abominations of his people behold what great distress
hath come upon them and also because of their Enmities they were brought
into bondage and were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Coun-
sellors and this because of their sinners' repentance they must unavoidably
remain in bondage until now but behold he did deliver them be-
cause they ~~did~~ ^{pleaded} humble themselves before him & they cried might-
ily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage & thus doth the
Lord work with his Power in all cases among the children of men extend-
ing the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him & behold
now I say unto you ye cannot ~~have~~ ^{be} an iniquitous king save it be
through much contention & the shedding of much blood for behold he
hath his friends in iniquity & he keepeth his ^{guards} ~~guards~~ about him and
he turneth up the Law of those ^{to his} ~~which~~ have reigned in righteousness before
him & he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God & he enacteth
Laws & sendeth them forth among his people, yea Laws after ^{the} manner of his own
wickedness & whosoever doth not obey his Laws he causeth to be destroyed & who-
ever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war
& if he can he will destroy them & thus an unrighteous king doth pervert
the ways of all righteousness and now behold I say unto you it is not expedient
that such abominations should come upon you therefore choose ye by the voice
of this people judges that ye may be judged according to the Laws which ^{have} ~~been~~
been given you by our fathers which are correct & which ^{have} ~~was~~ given them by the
hand of the Lord, now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth any
thing contrary to that which is right but it is common for the lesser part of the
people to desire that which is not right therefore this shall ye observe &
make it your law to do your business by the voice of the people will

168 time cometh that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity then is the
time that the judgments of God will come upon you yea then is the time he will
visit you with great destruction even as he hath hitherto visited this land
and now I ye have judges & they do not judge you according to the law
which has been given ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher Judge
if your high Judge doth not judge righteous judgments yea shall cause that
a small number of your lower Judges should be gathered to gather and
they shall judge ~~ye~~ your high Judges according to the voice of the people
& I Commanded you to do these things in the fear of the Lord & I Commanded
you to do these things & that ye have no fear that if these people commit sins
and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads for be-
hold I say unto you the sins of many people have been covered by the
iniquities of their kings therefore ~~their~~ their iniquities are answered
on the heads of their kings and now I desire that this people's iniqui-
ty should be no more in this land especially among this my people but
I desire that this land be a land of liberty and every man may
enjoy his rights and privileges alike so long as the Lord shall
let that men may live and inherit the land ye even as long as any
of our posterity remaineth upon the face of the land and many more
things Did King Mosiah write unto them unfolding unto them all
the Kings and transgressions of his fathers and all the troubles of sorrow
for their people and also all the murmurings of the people to the
King and he explained it all unto them and he told them that
these things had not ought to be but that the burden should come
upon all the people that every man might bear his part and he
also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they ~~had~~ laboured under
by having an unrighteous King to rule over them yea all his iniquities & abominations
and all the wars and contentions and blood shed and the stealing and the
plundering and the committing of whoredoms and all manner of iniquities which
cannot be enumerated telling them that these things ought not to be that
they ~~was~~ ^{were} expressly rebellious to the commandments of God And now it
came to pass after King Mosiah had sent these things forth among the peo-
ple all the were convinced of the truth of his words therefore they relinquished their
desires for a King and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an
equal chance throughout all the land yea & every man a priest & willing
-ness to answer for his own sins, therefore it came to pass that they assembled
themselves together in bodies throughout the land to cast in their voices common

They who should be their judges to judge them according to the law which had
been given them & they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which
had been granted unto them & they did wax strong in love towards him
- such was this. They did esteem him more than any other man for they did
not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain yea for that
which which doth corrupt the soul for he had not exacted riches of them
neither had he delighted in shedding of blood but he had established
Peace in the land & he had granted unto his people that they should be
delivered from all manner of bondage therefore they did esteem him
yea exceedingly beyond measure. And it came to pass that they did ap-
- point judges to rule over them or to judge them according to the law &
this they ~~did~~ ^{did} throughout all the land. And it came to pass that Alma
was appointed to be the Chief Judge he being also the High Priest his
Father having conferred the office upon him & had given him the char-
-ge concerning all the affairs of the church and now it came to pass
that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord & he did keep his com-
- mandments & he did judge righteous judgments & there was continual
Peace through the land & thus commenced the reign of the Judges thro-
- ughout all the land. & Laman was among all the people ^{who were} ~~who were~~
called the Nephites, and Alma was the first & Chief Judge. And now
it came to pass that his Father did being Eighty and two years old
having lived to fulfill the commandments of God. And it came to pass
that Mosiah did also in the thirty & third year of his reign being sixty
and three years, making in the whole five hundred & nine years from
the time Lehi left Jerusalem, and thus ended the reign of the Kings over
the people of Nephi, and thus ended the days of Alma who was the fou-
- nder of their Church. ^{the end of the first chapter} ~~the end of the first chapter~~

The Account of Alma who was the Son of Alma the First and
Chief Judge over the people of Nephi & also the high Priest over the
Church. an account of the reign of the Judges and the wars & contentions
among the people, and also an account of a war between the Nep-
- hites & the Lamanites according to the Record of Alma the first and
Chief Judge. — c Now it came to pass that in the first year of
the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi from this time forward. This
Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth having waged a good war
- fore walking uprightly before God, leaving no more to him in his old age
- whether he established laws & they were acknowledged before the people.

171 Therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made
And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the
Judgment seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged a man
which was large & was noted for his much strength & he had gone about
among the people preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of
God, bearing down against the Church declaring unto the people that
every Priest & teacher had ought to become popular & they ought not to labor
with their own hands but that they had ought to be supported by the people
And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be sa-
ved at the last day & that they need not fear nor tremble but that they
might lift up their heads & rejoice for the Lord had created all men
& had also redeemed all men & in the end all men should have Eter-
nal Life, And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much
that many did believe on his words even so many that they began to su-
port him & give him money & he began to be lifted up in the pride of
his heart & to wear very costly apparel yea & even began to establish
a Church after the manner of his preaching. And it came to pass as
he was going to preach to those who believed on his word he met a man
which belonged to the Church of God, yea even one of their teachers & he began
to contend with him sharply that he might lead away the people of the Church,
but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the ^{words} of God.
Now the name of the man was Gideon & it was him that was an instrument
in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage now
because Gideon withstood him with the words of God, he was wroth with Gi-
deon & drew his sword & began to smite him, now Gideon being tri-
bled with many years therefore he was not able to withstand his blows
therefore he was slain by the sword & the man who slew him was
taken by the people of the Church & was brought before Alma to be
judged according to the crime which he had committed, & it came to pass
that he stood before Alma & pled for himself with much boldness, but
Alma said unto him behold this is the first time that Priestcraft has
been introduced among this people & behold thou art not only guilty
of Priestcraft but thou hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword & were Priestcraft to
be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction,
and thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man yea a man which has
done much good among this people & were we to spare thee his blood wou-
ld come upon us for vengeance, therefore thou art condemned to die acc-

171— according to the Law which had been given us by ^{the} Lord our Lord Jesus Christ, & they
have been acknowledged by this people therefore this people must abide by the
Law, & it came to pass that they took him, & his name was Behor, & they car-
ried him upon the top of the hill mantle, & there he was caused or rather did
acknowledge between the Heavens & the Earth, that what he had taught to the people
was contrary to the word of God, & there he suffered an ignominious death, & never
theless this did not put an end to the spreading of Priestcraft through the land,
for there ~~were~~ ^{were} many ~~who~~ ^{who} loved the vain things of the world, & they went
forth preaching false doctrines, & this they did for the sake of riches & honor.
Nevertheless they durst not lie, if it were known for fear of the Law, for
Lies were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their
beliefs, & ~~they~~ now the Law could have no power on any man for ^{his} ~~their~~ belie-
-of, & they durst not steal for fear of the Law, for such were punished;
neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was
punished unto death. But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong
to the Church of God, began to persecute those that did belong to the Church
-of God, & had taken upon them the name of Christ; yea, they did per-
-secute them, & afflict them with all manner of words, & this because of
their humility, because they were not proud in their own eyes, & because
they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money or without
price. Now there was a strict Law among the people of the Church, that there
should not any man belonging to the Church, arise & persecute those that did
not belong to the Church, & that there should be no persecution among them-
-selves. Nevertheless there were many among them who began to be proud,
and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows,
yea, they would smite one another with their fists. Now this was in the second
year of the reign of Alma, & it was a cause of much affliction to the Church,
yea, it was the cause of much trial with the Church, for the hearts of many
were hardened, & their names were blotted out, that they were remembered
no more among the people of God, and also many withdrew themselves from
among them, now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the
-faith; nevertheless they were still fast & immovable in keeping the
commandments of God, & they bore with patience the persecution which was
heaped upon them, & when their Priests left their labour, to impart the word
of God unto the people, the people also left their labours to hear the word of God,
& when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God, they all returned
again diligently unto their labours, & the priest, not returning himself, &

And he had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici for they knew
that according to their Law that such things must be established by the
voice of the people; therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain
the voice of the people, he being a wicked man would deprive them
of their rights & privileges of the Church &c. for it was his intent to de-
stroy the Church of God. And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves
together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether
it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and
wonderful contentions one with another. & thus they did assemble themselves
together to cast in their voices concerning the matter, and they were laid before
the judges. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici,
that he was not made king over the people. Now this did cause much joy in the
hearts of those ~~which~~^{who} were against him, but Amlici did stir up those ~~which~~^{who}
were in his favor to anger against those ~~which~~^{who} were not in his favor. And it
came to pass that they gathered themselves together, & did Consecrate Amlici to
be their King. Now when Amlici was made King over them he commanded
them that they should take up arms against their Brethren. & this he
did that he might subject them to him. Now the people of Amlici were
distinguished by the name of Amlicites, being called Amlicites; the remain-
-ing were called Nephites, or the people of God; therefore the people of the
Nephites ~~was~~^{were} aware of the intent of the Amlicites; & therefore they did
prepare for to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, with
dimiters, with bows, with arrows, with stones, with slings, with all man-
-ner of weapons of war, of every kind; thus they were prepared to meet the
Amlicites at the time of their coming. & there was appointed Captains, & higher
Captains, & Chief Captains, according to their numbers. And it came to pass
that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every
kind; & he also appointed rulers & leaders over his people to lead them
to war against their Brethren. & it came to pass that the Amlicites came
up upon the hill Amnihu, which was East of the River Sidon, which ran
by the land of Zarahemla; there they began to make war with the Nephites,
Lehi & his sons being the chief judge & the governor of the people of Nephi;
therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his Captains & Chief Captains,
yea, at the head of his armies against the Amlicites to battle. & they began to
slay the Amlicites upon the hill East of Sidon. & the Amlicites did continue with
the Nephites with great strength in so much that many of the Nephites did
fall before the Amlicites; nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hands

174

the Nephites saw the Amlicites with a great slaughter that they began to flee before them, and it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day & did slay them with much slaughter in so much that there was slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty or two souls. And there was slain of the Nephites with a thousand five hundred sixty or two souls. And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon the valley being called after that Gideon ^{who} was slain by the hand of Ishmael the sword. In this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night; & Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites that he might know of their plans & their plots whereby he might guard himself against ^{them} that he might preserve his people from being destroyed, now these ^{whom} he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Leraem & Amnor & Manti & Simcha these were they ^{who} went out with their men to watch camp of the Amlicites, & it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste being greatly astonished & struck with much fear saying Behold we followed the camp of the Amlicites to our great astonishment in the land of Minon above the land of Karahemla in the course of the land of Nephi we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites, and behold the Amlicites have joined them and they are upon our Brethren in that Land & they are fleeing before them with their flocks and their wives & their children towards our City & except we make haste they obtain possession of our City & our Fathers & our wives and our children be slain, and it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents & departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their City which was the City of Karahemla, and behold as they were crossing the River Sidon the Lamanites & the Amlicites being a numerous almost as it were as the sands of the Sea ^{came} upon them to destroy them, & nevertheless the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord having prayed mightily to Him ^{that} he would deliver them out of the hands of their Enemies therefore the Lord did hear their cries & did strengthen them & the Lamanites & the Amlicites did fall before them, and it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword face to face & they did contend mightily one with another and it came to pass that Alma ^{being} a man of God being exercised with much faith & a bride saying O Lord have mercy & spare my life & the

176

were dark according to the mark which was set upon their Fathers which was
a curse upon them because of their transgression & their rebellion against their brother
-en, ^{who} which consisted of Nephi Jacob & Joseph & Sam ^{who} ^{who} were just & holy men
& their brethren sought to destroy them therefore they ^{were} cursed & the Lord God set a
mark upon them yea upon Laman & Lemuel and also the sons of Ishmael & the Ish-
-maelitic women & this was done that their seed might be distinguished from
the seed of their brethren that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people
that they might not mix & believe in iniquitous traditions which would prove
their destruction. And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his
seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed there-
-fore whosoever suffered himself to be led away ^{by} the Lamanites were call-
-ed under that head & there was a mark set upon him. And it came
-to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lam-
-anites but believed those records which were brought out of the land of
Jerusalem & also in the tradition of their Fathers which were correct
^{who} ^{who} believed in the commandments of God & kept them were called
the Nephites or the people of Nephi from that time forth & it is they ^{who} ^{who}
have kept the records which are true of their People & also of the people
of the Lamanites. Now we will return again to the Amlicites for they also
they had a mark set upon them yea they set the mark upon themselves yea ^{even} ^{even}
a mark of red upon their foreheads thus the word of God is fulfilled ^{for} these are the words
which he ^{spoke} ^{to} Nephi. Behold the Lamanites have I cursed & I will set a mark
upon them that they & their seed may be separated from thee & thy seed from
this time henceforth and for ever except they repent of their wickedness
& turn to me that I may have mercy upon them. And again I will set a
mark upon him that minglith his seed with thy Brethren that they may
be cursed also and again will I set a mark upon him that fighteth agai-
-not thee and thy seed & again I say he that departeth from thee shall no
more be called thy seed and I will bless thee & and whosoever shall be call-
-ed thy seed henceforth and forever. And these were the promises of the Lord unto
Nephi and to his seed. Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling
the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads nev-
-ertheless as they had come out in open rebellion against God therefore
it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them now I would that
ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse & even so doeth
every man that is cursed bringeth upon himself his own condemnation

177 Now it came to pass that not many days after the Battle which was fought
- in the land of Zarahemla by the Lamanites & the Amlicites that there
was another army of the Lamanites ~~Lamanites~~ came in upon the People of
Nephi in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.
And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out
of their land, now Alma himself, being afflicted with a wound did
not go up to Battle at this time against the Lamanites but he sent
up a numerous Army against them & they did up & slew many of the Lamanites & drove
the remainder of them out of the borders of their land & then they returned again &
began to establish peace in the land being troubled no more for a time with their
Enemies now all these things were done yea all these wars & contentions ^{were}
commenced & ended in the fifth year of the Reign of the Judges & in one year ^{were}
thousands & tens of thousands of souls ~~were~~ sent to the eternal world that they
might reap their rewards according to their works whether they were good or
whether they were bad to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery
according to the spirit which ^{they} listened to obey whether it be a good spirit
or a bad one for every man receiveth wages of him ^{when} he listeth to obey &
this according to the words of the spirit of Prophecy therefore let it be accord-
-ing to the truth And thus ended the fifth year of the reign of the Judges
- Chapter 2.

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the Reign of the Judges over the peo-
-ple of Nephi there ^{were} no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla
^{but} the people ^{were} afflicted yeagradually afflicted for the loss of their brethren &
also for the loss of their flocks & herds & also for the loss of their fields of grain which ^{were}
trampled under foot & destroyed by the Lamanites & so great ^{were} their afflictions that
every soul had cause to mourn & they believed that it was the judgment of
God sent upon them because of their wickedness & their abominations
therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their history. And they be-
-gan to establish the Church more fully. yea & many were Baptised in the
waters of ~~Lehi~~ ^{Lehi} & were joined to the Church of God. yea they were Baptised
by the hand of Alma who had been consecrated the High Priest over the
People of the Church by the hand of his Father Alma. And it came to pass in the
seventh year of the Reign of the Judges there ^{were} about three thousand five hundred
souls that united themselves to the Church of God & were Baptised. And thus en-
-ded the seventh year of the Reign of the Judges over the People of Nephi & there
^{were} continual peace in all that ~~one~~ ^{time} And it came to pass in the eighth
^{year} of the Reign of the Judges that the People of the Church began to wax proud.

179 have power to enact Laws according to the Laws which had been given to
to put them in force according to the wickedness & the crimes of the people. So this
mans name was Sephiak & he was appointed Chief Judge & he sat ~~in~~ in the
Judgment seat to Judge & to govern the people, now Alma did not grant unto
him the office of ^{high} Priest over the Church but he retained the Office of high
Priest unto himself, but he delivered the Judgment seat unto Sephiak &
thus he said that he himself might go forth among his people or among the peop-
le of Sephi that he might break the word of God unto them to stir them up in
remembrance of their duty & that he might pull down by the word of God all
the pride & craftiness & all the contentions which ^{was} among his people
saying no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down
in pure testimony against them and thus in the ~~year~~ the commencement
of the ninth year of the ^{reign of the} Judges over the people of Sephi Alma delivered
up the Judgment seat to Sephiak & confined himself wholly to the
High Priesthood of the holy order of God to the testimony of word ac-
cording to the spirit of revelation and Prophecy

Chapter 3rd

The words which Alma, the high priest, according to the holy order of God
delivered to the people in their Cities & Villages throughout the land. Now
it came to pass that Alma began to declare the word of God unto the people first
in the land of Zarahemla, & from thence ^{out} ^{unto} all the land & these are the
words which he spake to the people in the Church which was established in the
City of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying: I, Alma, having been
consecrated by ^{him} ~~him~~ ^{God} ~~Alma~~ to be a High Priest over the Church of God,
he having power and authority from ^{God} to do these things, Behold, I say unto
you that he began to establish Church in the land which was in the borders of
Sephiya, the land was called the land of Mormon, yea & he did baptize
his brethren in the waters of Mormon. Behold, I say unto you, they were alive
and out of the hand of the people of King Noah by the mighty power of God and.
Behold, after that they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites, in
their wilderness, I say unto you, they were in captivity & again the Lord did del-
iver them out of bondage by the power of his word, & we were brought into this
land, & here we began to establish the Church of God throughout this land, also.
And, Behold, I say unto you, my Brethren, ~~ye~~ ^{ye} you that belong to this Church,
have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your Fathers?
Yea & have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his many & long suffer-
ings towards them? & more over have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance

180- that he had delivered their souls from Hell. Behold he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep; & they awake unto God. Behold they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of Death; the chains of Hell & an everlasting destruction did await them. But now I ask of you my Brethren, what they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you nay, they were not; & again I ask, ^{were} the bands of death broken, & the chains of Hell which encircled them about were they loosed? I say unto you, yea, they were loosed; & their souls did expand; & they did sing, redeeming love. & I say unto you that they are saved; now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation; what is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, & also, the chains of Hell? Behold, I can tell you; did not my Father Alma believe in the words which ^{were} delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? & was he not a holy Prophet? did he not speak the words of God? & did my Father Alma believe them according to his ~~faith~~ faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold, I say unto you that this is all true. & Behold he preached the word unto your Fathers; & a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts; & they humbled themselves, and put their trust in the true & living God. & behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved. & now behold, I ask of you my Brethren of the Church, have ye spiritually been born of God? have ye received his image in your own countenances? have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts? & do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you; do you look forward with an eye of faith, & view this mortal body raised in immortality, & this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which ^{have} been done in the mortal body? I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day come unto me, ye blessed, for ye have done my will? Behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth. Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord at that day, & say, Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth; that he will save you, or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt & remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at naught & despised the commandments of God? I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God

181 ^{1st} improved upon your countenances. I say unto you, can ye think of
being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the Devil?
I say unto you, ye will know at that day, that ye cannot be saved, for there
can no man be saved & lift his garments & ~~be dressed from all stain~~ ^{be dressed}
are washed white as snow, his garments must be purified until ~~he~~ ^{they are} cleansed
from all stain through the Blood of him of whom it ^{has} been spoken
by our Father, ~~which~~ ^{who} should come to redeem his people from their
sins. Now I ask of you, my Brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye sh-
all stand before the Bar of God, having your garments stained with
Blood, & all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify
against you? Behold, will they not testify that ye are murderers, ye are
that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness? Behold, my Brethren, do ye suppose
that such an one can have a place to sit down in the Kingdom of God, with
Abraham, with Isaac, & with Jacob, & also all the Holy Prophets, whose garments are
cleansed, and are spotless, pure & white? I say unto you, nay, except ye make our
Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning,
or ye cannot suppose that such ~~persons~~ ^{persons} can have place in the Kingdom of Heaven,
but ~~they~~ ^{they} shall be cast out, for they are the children of the Kingdom of the Devil.
And now Behold I say unto you, my Brethren, if ye have experienced a change
of heart, & if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, would ye not
now have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye
were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently
humble, that your garments have been cleansed & made white, through the Bl-
-ood of Christ, ~~which~~ ^{who} will come to redeem his people from their sins? Behold,
are ye stripped of Pride? I say unto you, if ye are not, ^{ye are not} prepared to meet God, Beh-
-old, ye must prepare quickly, for the Kingdom of Heaven is soon at hand, and
such an one hath not Eternal life. Behold I say, ~~is there~~ ^{is there} one among you who
is not stripped of envy? I say unto you, that such an one is not prepared, & I would that he
should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, & he knoweth not when the
time shall come, for such an one is not found guiltless. & again I say unto you,
is there one among you that doth ~~make~~ ^{make} a mark of his brother, or that heareth upon
him persecutions? Woe unto such an one, for he is not prepared, & the time is at hand
that he must repent, or he cannot be saved, yea, even woe unto all ye workers of iniqu-
-ity, repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it. Behold, he sendeth an
Invitation unto all men, ^{are} for the arms of mercy ^{are} extended towards them, he saith, Repent, &
will revive you, yea, he saith, ^{ye shall} ^{partake} of the fruit of the tree of life, yea, ye
shall eat & drink of the ^{bread} ^{and} the waters of life freely, yea, come unto me, I bring forth the works of

All righteousness must be put down & cast into the fire for behold the time
is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doth not the
works of righteousness, the same shall ^{have} cause to weep & mourn. O ye workers of iniquity
ye that are puff'd up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed
to have known the ways of righteousness, nevertheless have gone astray as sheep ha-
ving no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you & art still calling
after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice. Behold, I say unto you that
the good shepherd doth call you, yea, in his own name he doth call you, wh-
ich is the name of Christ, if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to
the name by which ye are called, Behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd,
and now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye?
Behold, I say unto you, that the Devil is your shepherd, & ye are of his fold, & now who
can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever doth this is a liar & a child of
the Devil, for I say unto you, that whatsoever is good cometh from God, & whatsoever
is evil, cometh from the Devil, therefore if a man bringeth forth good works,
harkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him, but
whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the Devil;
for he harkeneth unto his voice, & doth follow him, & whosoever doth this must re-
ceive his wages of sin, therefore for his wages he receiveth Death, as to things pertain-
ing unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works, and now my Brethren, I
say ~~unto you~~ would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul,
for behold, I have spoken unto you plain, that ye cannot err, or have spoken ac-
cording to the commandments of God, for I am called to speak after this manner,
according to the Holy Order of God, which is in Christ Jesus, ye are commanded
to stand & testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our Fa-
thers concerning the things which ^{are} to come, & this is not all, do ye suppose that
I know ~~not~~ of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you, that I do know
that these things, whereof I have spoken, are true, & how do ye suppose that I know
of their surety? Behold, I say unto you, they are made known unto me by the
Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted & prayed many days, that I might know
these things of myself, & now I do know of myself that they are true, for the Lord God
hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit, & this is the spirit of revela-
tion which is in me, & moreover, I say unto you, that as it has thus been revealed unto me
that the words which have been spoken by our Fathers, are true, even so according
to the spirit of Prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the
spirit of God, I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you
concerning that which is to come, is true, & I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ

183 And all come unto the son of the only begotten of the Father full of grace &
mercy and truth & behold it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the
world yea the sins of every man ^{who} still fastly believeth on his name & now say
unto you that this is the order of it which I am called ^{unto} ^{me} ^{unto} my
beloved Brethren yea & everyone that dwelleth in the land yea to preach
unto all both old & young both bond and free yea I say unto you the ap-
ple & also the ~~young~~ ^{young} middle aged & the rising generation yea to cry unto them that
they must repent & be born again yea thus saith the spirit & first of all ye
ends of the earth for the Kingdom of Heaven is soon at hand yea the son of God
cometh in his glory in his might in his majesty & power & dominion yea my beloved
Brethren I say unto you that the spirit saith Behold the glory of the King
of all the earth & also the King of Heaven shall very soon shine forth among all
the children of men & also the spirit saith unto me yea crieth unto me with a
mighty voice saying Go forth & say unto this people repent for except ye repent
ye shall in no wise inherit the Kingdom of Heaven & again I say unto you the
spirit saith behold the axe is laid at the root of the tree therefore every tree
which bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down & cast into the fire yea
a fire which cannot be consumed even an unconquenchable fire Behold & remem-
ber the holy one hath spoken it & now my beloved Brethren I say unto you
can ye withstand these sayings yea can ye lay aside these things & trample the
holy one under your feet yea can ye be puffed up in the pride of your heart yea
will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel & setting your heart upon
the vain things of the world upon your riches yea will ye persist in supposing
that ye are better one than another yea will ye persist in the persecutions
of your Brethren who humble themselves & do walk after the holy order
of God wherewith they have been brought into this Church having been sanctified
by the holy Spirit & they do bring forth works which ^{are} ^{meat} for repentance
yea & will ye persist in turning your backs upon the poor & the needy & withholding your
substance from them & finally all ye that will persist in your wickedness I say unto
you that these are ^{these} ^{things} which shall be hewn down & cast into the fire except they
speedily repent & now say unto you all ye that are desirous to follow the son
of the good shepherd come ye out from the wicked and be ye separate and touch
not their unclean things and their names shall be blotted out that the names
of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous that the
word of God may be fulfilled which saith the names of the wicked shall not be ^{joined}
~~be~~ ^{shall} mingled with the names of my people for the names of the righteous ^{shall} be
written in the Book of Life and ^{unto} them will I grant an inheritance at my

185. 1. & unto the Church which was established in the valley of Jidion according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers & according to the spirit of Prophecy which was in him according to the testimony of Jesus Christ the son of God ^{which} should come ~~for~~ to redeem his people from ^{their} iniquities and the holy order by ~~which~~ which he was called, and thus it is written ~~written~~ —

Chapter 5th

I the words of Alma which he delivered to the People in Jidion according to his own desire. — Behold my beloved Brethren seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you therefore I attempt to address you in my language yea by my own mouth saying that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth I having been wholly confined to the Judgment seat ^{having} much business that I could not come unto you and even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the Judgment seat ^{had} been given to another to Reign in my stead and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you, and behold I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had ^{been} entered yourselves before God and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace that I should find that ye were blameless before him that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our Brethren were in at Zarahemla but blessed be the name of God that he hath given unto me to know ye both given unto me the exceeding great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteous men and I trust according to the spirit of God which is in me that I shall also have joy over you nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the Brethren at Zarahemla, for behold my joy cometh over them after wading through much afflictions and sorrow but behold I trust that ye are not in a state so much as I do as were your Brethren, I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts ye I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches & the vain things of the world, ye I trust that ye do not worship Idols but that ye do worship the true and the living God and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins with an everlasting, with which it cometh behold my unto you there be many things to come and behold there is one thing which is of more importance than they all, behold the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among ^{his} people ^{and} he do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle for behold the spirit hath not said unto you that this should be the case now as to this thing I do not know but this much I do know that the Lord God hath power to do all things which ^{are} according to his will, and behold the spirit hath said this much.

unto me saying say unto this people saying repent ye and prepare the
way of the Lord and walk in his paths which are straight for behold the Kingdom of
Heaven is at hand and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the Earth and behold
he shall be born of Mary at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers she
being a virgin a precious and chosen vessel who shall be overshadowed and
conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost and bring forth a son yea even the Son of
God and he shall go forth suffering pains and affliction and temptations of every
kind and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take up
on him the pains and the sicknesses of his people and he will take upon him
Death that he may loose the bands of Death which bind his people, and he
will take upon him their infirmities that his bowels may be filled with me-
racy according to the flesh that he may know according to the flesh how to
suffer his people according to their infirmities, now the spirit knoweth all things
nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take
upon him the sins of his people that he might blot out their transgressions accord-
ing to the power of his deliverance and now behold this is the testimony which is
in me, now I say unto you that ye must repent, and, ~~and~~ be born again for the
spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the Kingdom of He-
aven, therefore come and be Baptized unto repentance that ye may be washed
from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God ^{who} ~~which~~ taketh
away the sins of the world ^{who} ~~which~~ is mighty to save and to cleanse from all
unrighteousness; yea I say unto you come and far out and lay aside every sin which
easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction; ye come and go forth
and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a new
covenant with him to keep his commandments and witness it unto him this day by
going into the waters of Baptism and whosoever doth this and keepeth the com-
mandments of God, from thenceforth the same will remember that I say unto him
yea he will remember that I have said unto him he shall have eternal life according
to the testimony of the holy spirit which testifieth in me and now my beloved brethren
do you believe these things, behold I say unto you yea I know that you believe them
and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestations of the spirit which
is in me and now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea concerning the things
which I have spoken great is my joy for as I said unto you from the beginning that I had much
desire that ye ^{had} ~~was~~ not in the state of dilemma like your brethren even as I have found
that my desires have been gratified for I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness
I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the Kingdom of God yea I perceive
that ye are making straight paths and I perceive that it hath been made known unto you

1870. He testified of his word that he cannot walk in crooked paths neither doth
he vary from that which he ~~saith~~ hath said neither hath he a shadow of turning
from the right to the left or from that which is right to that which is wrong therefore
his cures is one eternal soundly he doth not dwell in unclean things neither can filthiness
or anything which is unclean be received into the Kingdom of God therefore I say unto
you the time shall come yea and it shall be at the last day that he ~~shall~~ ^{who} is filthy
shall remain in his filthiness and now my beloved Brethren I have said these
things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God that ye
may walk blameless before him that ye may walk after the holy ^{one} of God after
which ye have been received and now I would that ye should be humble
and be submissive and gentle easy to be entreated full of patience and longan-
-suffering being temperate in all things, being diligent in keeping the comman-
-ments of God at all times asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need both
spiritual and temporal always ~~rejoicing~~ giving thanks unto God for whatsoever
things ye do receive and see that ye have faith hope and charity and then ye will al-
ways abound in good works, and may the Lord bless you and keep your garments
spotless that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham Isaac and Jacob
and the holy Prophets ~~which~~ ^{who} have been ever since the world began having
your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless in the Kingdom of
Heaven to go no more out, and now my beloved Brethren I have spoken these
^{words} unto you according to the spirit which testifieth in me and my soul doth exee-
-dingly rejoice because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have giv-
-en unto my word, and now may the peace of God rest upon you and upon
your houses and lands and upon your flocks and herds ^{and} all that you possess
your women and your children according to your ^{and} good works from this
time ~~thence~~ forth ~~and~~ forever ~~with~~ ^{thy} I have spoken Amen

Chapter 6th

And ^{now} it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon after hav-
-ing taught the people of Gideon many things which can not be written having
established the order of the Church according as he had before done in the land of
Zarahemla yea he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself
from the labors which he had performed, and thus ended the ninth year of
the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, and it came to pass in the
commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of
Nephi that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land
of Melek on the west of the river Sidon on the west by the borders of the wilderness
and he began to ~~preach~~ teach the people in the land of Melek according

188 So the holy order of God by which he had been called and he began to teach
the people throughout all the land of Mulek and it came to pass that the
people came to him ^{throughout} all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness
side and it came to pass that they were baptized throughout all the land
so that when he had finished his work at Mulek he departed thence
and traveled three days journey on the north of the land of Mulek and he
came to a city which was called Ammonihah, now it was the custom of
the people of Zephi to call their Lands and their Cities and their villages
as ye even call their small villages after the name of him who first
possessed them and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah and it
came to pass that when Alma had come to the City of Ammonihah
he began to preach the word of God unto them, now Satan had got great
hold upon the hearts of the people of the City of Ammonihah there-
fore they would not hear him ^{and} the words of Alma nevertheless Alma
labored much in the spirit wrestling with God in mighty prayer
that he would pour out his spirit upon the people ^{who were} in the City that
he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance nevertheless
they hardened their hearts saying unto him behold we know that
thou art Alma and we know that thou art high Priest over the Church
which thou hast established in many parts of the land accord-
ing to your tradition and we are not of thy Church ~~and we do not believe in such foolish traditions and~~
~~now we know that because we are not of thy Church we know that thou ha-~~
~~st no power over us and thou hast delivered up the judgment seat unto~~
~~Zephihah therefore thou art not the Chief Judge over us now~~ When the
people had said this ^{and} had withstood all his words and reviled him
and spit upon him and ^{saied} that he should be cast out of their City and he departed thence
and he looked his journey towards the City which was called Warren, and it came to pass
that while he was journeying he was weighed down with sorrow weeping through
much tribulation and anguish of soul because of the wickedness of the people ^{who were}
ⁱⁿ the City of Ammonihah and it came to pass that while Alma was thus weighed
down with sorrow the Lord appeared unto him saying Blessed
art thou Alma therefore lift up thy head and rejoice for thou hast great cause to
rejoice for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the
time which thou receivedst thy first message from him behold I am he that deli-
vered it unto thee and I have I am sent to command thee that thou return to the City
of Ammonihah and preach again unto the people of the City ^{yea} preach unto them ^{yea}

189 I say unto them except they repent the Lord will destroy them for behold they are steady
at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people for thus saith the Lord, which
is contrary to the statutes and judgments and commandments which he hath given unto
his people, now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the an-
gel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Munnahab, and it came to pass
that he entered the city by another way yea by the way which was on the south of
the city and more dark, and it came to pass that as he entered the city he was an hunger
and he said to himself will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat
and the man said unto him I am a Saphite and I know that thou art a holy
Prophet of God for thou art the man ^{whom} ~~which~~ an angel said in a vision thou
shalt receive therefore go with me into my house and I will impart unto
thee of my ^{food} ~~power~~ and I know that there will be a blessing unto me and my house
and it came to pass that the man ^{of the} ~~man~~ carried him into his house and the man was
called Amulek and he brought bread and meat and sat before Alma and it
came to pass that Alma ate to make ^{him} ~~it~~ full and he blessed Amulek and his
house and he gave thanks unto God and after he had eat and was filled he said
unto Amulek I am Alma and am the high Priest over the Church of God through-
out the land, and he told him he had been called to preach the word of God among all
this people according to the spirit of revelation and Prophecy, and was in the land
and they would not receive me but they cast me out and I was about to set my
back towards this land forever, but behold I have been commanded that I should
turn again and prophesy unto this people yea and to testify against them
concerning their iniquities & now Amulek because thou hast fed me and taken care
thou art blessed for I was an hungered for I had fasted many days, and it came to
pass that Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach
unto the people, and it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in
their iniquities, and the word came to Alma saying go and also say unto my ser-
vant, Amulek go forth & prophesy unto this people saying repent ye for thus saith
the Lord except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger yea & I will not
turn my fierce anger away, and it came to pass that Alma went forth and also
Amulek among the people to declare the words of God unto them and they
were filled with the holy ghost and they had power given unto them in so much that they
could not be conquered in any manner, neither was it possible that any man could slay
them, nevertheless they did not use their power until they were bound in bonds,
and cast into prison, now this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in
them and it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prop-
hesy unto the people according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given
them.

And ye being thus cut off from the presence of the Lord now we see that the word of the Lord hath been remembered in this thing and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence from the beginning of their transgressions in the land nevertheless I say unto you that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you if ye remain in your sins yea and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you next ye say for there are many promises which are ~~extended~~ ^{extended} to the Lamanites for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that ~~cause~~ ^{cause} them to remain in their state of ignorance therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land and at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word and to know of the iniquities of the traditions of their fathers and many of them will be saved for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name, but Behold I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when ye know not and ye shall be visited with utter destruction and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord for he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities to destroy his people, ^{For} ^{unto} ye may he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all this people ^{who call} ^{on his name} in the people of this land if it were possible that they could fall into sin and transgressions after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God yea after having been such a mighty favoured people of the Lord yea after having been favoured above every other nation kindred tongue or people after having had all things made known unto them according to their desires and their faith and prayers of that which has been and which is to come having been visited by the spirit of God having conversed with the angels and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord and having the spirit of prophecy and the spirit of revelation and also many gifts the gift of speaking with tongues and the gift of preaching and the gift of the holy ghost and the gift of translation yea and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem by the hand of the Lord having been saved from famine and from sicknesses and all manner of diseases of every kind and they having been waxed strong in battle that they might not be destroyed having been brought out of bondage time after time and having been kept and preserved until now and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things, and now behold I say unto you that if this people who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have I say unto you that if this be the case that if they should fall into transgressions that it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them, for behold the promise

of the Lord are understood in the Lamanites but they are not unto you if ye transgress for
the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed that if ye will rebel against
him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth and now for this
cause that ye may not be destroyed the Lord hath sent his angel to visit many
of his people declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto
this people saying repent ye repent ye for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand
and not many days hence the son of God shall come in his glory and his gl-
-ory shall be the glory of the only begotten of the Father full of grace equity
and truth full of patience meek and long suffering quick to hear the
cries of his people and to answer their prayers and behold he cometh
to redeem those who will be baptised unto repentance through faith on
his name. Therefore prepare ye the way of the Lord for the time is at hand
that every man shall reap a reward ^{for} ~~of~~ ^{his} works according to that which they
have been if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their
souls according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ and if they have been
evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls according to the power and
captivation of the Devil now Behold this is the voice of the Angel crying unto the
people and now my beloved Brethren for ye are my Brethren and yet ha-
-ve ought to be beloved and ye had ought to bring forth works which is much
for repentance seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against
the word of God and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people, now it
came to pass that is when Nehor had spoken these words Behold the peo-
-ple were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard
hearted and a stiff necked People and also because I said unto them that they
were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me and sought to lay
their hands upon ^{me} that they might cast me into prison but it came to pass that
the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time or
cast me into prison and it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth
and began to preach unto them also and now the words of Amulek are not all
written nevertheless a part of his words are written in this Book — [A. T.]

Chapter 8. Now these are the words which Amulek
preached unto the people ⁱⁿ ~~in~~ ^{the} land of Ammonihah saying I am Am-
ulek I am the son of Gidamnah who was the son of Ishmael who was a
descendant of Aminadi and it was that same Aminadi ^{which} ~~which~~ ^{who} inter-
-preted the writing which was upon the wall of the Temple which was written
by the finger of God and Aminadi was a descendant of Kipli who was the son of Lihy
who came out of the land of Jerusalem who was a descendant of Manassah who was the son

'I of you, in, ~~which~~ ^{which} was sold into Egypt by the hands of his Brethren, and behold I am
 also among you small ~~reputation~~ ^{reputation} among all those who know me, yea, and behold I
 have many kindred and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the
 hand of my industry; nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of
 the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power, I said I never had
 known much of these things, but behold I mistake for I have seen much of his mys-
 -teries and his miraculous power, yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this
 people, nevertheless I will harden my heart, for I was called many times, and
 I would not hear, therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know
 therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until
 the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the Reign of
 our Judges, and I was ~~on~~ ^{on} journeying to see a very near kindred, Behold an Angel
 of the Lord appeared unto me, and said, ~~of me~~ ^{of me} return to thine own house,
 for thou shalt find a Prophet of the Lord, yea, a holy man, ~~and a chosen~~ ^{who} ~~man~~ ^{man}
 of God, for he hath fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an
 hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him and he shall bless
 thee and thy house, ~~and he shall~~ ^{and he shall} ~~and he shall~~ ^{and he shall} ~~and he shall~~ ^{and he shall} ~~and he shall~~ ^{and he shall}
 returned towards my house, and as I was a going thither, I found the man ~~which~~ ^{who}
 the Angel said unto me thou shalt receive into thy house, and behold it was the
 same man ~~which~~ ^{who} hath been speaking unto you concerning the things of God,
 the Angel said unto me, he is a holy man, wherefore I know he is a holy man,
 because it was said by an Angel of God, and again I know that the things which
 he hath testified are true, for I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so he
 hath sent his Angel to make these things manifest unto me, and this he hath
 done while this woman hath dwelt at my house; for behold, he hath blessed
 mine house, he hath blessed me, & my women, and my children, and my fa-
 -ther, and my kindred, yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the bless-
 -ing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake,
 now when Amulek had spoken these words, the people began to be astonished
 seeing there was more than one witness ~~which~~ ^{who} testified of the things whereof they
 were accused, and also of the things which ~~were~~ ^{were} come, according to the spirit of pro-
 -phesy which was in them, nevertheless there were some among them which thou-
 -ght to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in
 their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deli-
 -ver them to the judges, that they might be judged according to the Law, and
 that they might be slain or cast into prison according to the crime which they
 could make appear, ~~on~~ ^{on} witness against them, and it was these men ~~which~~ ^{who}

19th you men to blind your eyes, therefore will not understand words which are spoken
according to this truth, for he who have testified against your law, ye do not understand
ye say that I have spoken against your law, but I have not, but I have spoken in fa-
vor of your law, to your condemnation and now Behold I say unto you that the
foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by this un-
- righteousness of your lawyers and your judges and now it came to pass that
when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him
now we know that this man is a child of the devil for he hath testified un-
to us for he hath spoken against our law and now it is written that he hath not ap-
- peared, and again he hath testified against our lawyers and our judges, and it came
to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these
things against him, and it came to pass that there was one among them whose name
was Lezzerus, now he ~~was the president of the court~~ ^{was the president of the court} Amulek and thus he being one
of the most expert among them having much business to do among the people now
the object of these lawyers ^{was} to get gain, and they get gain according to their
employment, now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man ^{who} was a judge of the
law, or ^{was} appointed to be a judge, should receive wages according to the time
which they labored to judge those ^{who} were brought before them to be judged, and
if a man swears another, he would not say that which he did not, for as com-
- plained of to the judge and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the
man should be brought before him, and ^{he} judged the man according to the law,
and the ^{judges} which ^{was} brought against him, and thus the man is compelled to pay
that which he owes, and he is cast out from among the people as a th-
ief and a robber, and he pays according to his wages according to his time, a ^{semine} of
gold for a day, or a semine of silver, which is equal to a semine of gold, and this is
according to the law which was given, now these are the names of the different pieces
of their gold, and of their silver according to their value, and the names are given
by the Septuagint, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews, ^{who} were
at Jerusalem, neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews, but they at-
- tended their reckoning and their measure according to the minds and the circumsta-
- nces of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been
established by King Mosiah, now the reckoning is thus, a semine of gold, a denar of gold,
a semine of gold, and a denar of gold, a semine of silver, and a denar of silver, and a
- semine of silver, and a denar of silver, a semine of silver was equal to a semine of gold,
it was either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain,
now the amount of a semine of gold, was twice the value of a semine, and a denar of gold was

10. Now the value of ~~the~~ ^{gold} ~~was~~ ^{was} the value of them all, for an
~~ounce~~ ^{ounce} of silver was as great as a ~~denarius~~ ^{denarius} and an oxrum of silver was as great
 as an ~~ounce~~ ^{ounce} of silver and ~~it~~ ^{it} was as great as ~~the~~ ^{all of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~value~~ ^{value} of the
 silver in value of their work, now a shilling is half of a denarius, now give
 a shilling for half a measure of barley and a shilling is a half of a shilling, now a shilling
 is the half of a shilling, now an ounce of gold is equal to three shillings, now this is their
 number according to their reckoning, now it was for the sole purpose to get gain
 because they received their wages according to their employment, for they did
 stir up the people to riotings and all manner of disturbances and we had most that
 they might have more employment that they might get money according to the outgo
 which ~~was~~ ^{was} brought before them, therefore they did stir up the people against
 them and Amulek, and this Luzron began to question Amulek saying will ye
 answer me a few questions which I shall ask you, now Luzron was a man ~~and~~
 was a host in the service of the devil, that he might destroy that which was ~~good~~
 good, therefore he said ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} Amulek, will ye answer the questions which
 I shall put unto you and Amulek said unto him, yea, I will, if it be ac-
 cording to the spirit of the Lord, which is in me, for I shall say nothing which
 is contrary to the spirit of the Lord, and Luzron said unto him, Behold, here is six
 cartons of silver and all these will I give unto thee if thou wilt deny the exist-
 ence of a supreme being, now Amulek said ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} Luzron, Child of Hell, why tem-
 -pt ye me, knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations,
 believest thou that there is no God, I say unto you, nay, thou knowest that
 there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him, and now thou hast
 lied to God unto me, for thou saidst unto me, behold, these six cartons, which
 are of great worth, I will give unto thee, when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain
 them from me, and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living
 God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me, and behold, for this great evil
 thou shalt have thy reward, and Luzron said unto him, thou sayest there is a
 true and a living God, and Amulek said unto him, yea, there is a true and a living God, now
 Luzron said, is there more than one God, and he answered him no, now Luzron said
 unto him again, how knowest thou these things, and he said, an angel hath
 made them known unto me, and Luzron said again, who is he that shall come
 is it the son of God, and he said unto him, yea, and Luzron said, gain'st shall
 he save his people in their iniquity, and Amulek answered and said unto him, I say
 unto you, he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word, now Luzron said
 unto him, jealously as that ye remember these things, for he said, there is but one God,
 yet is it said that the son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people, as tho-
 -ugh he had authority to command God, now Amulek said again unto him, be-
 -hold, thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I shall ~~as though~~ ^{as though} I had authority to com-

18. And he said because I said he shall not save his people in their sins, and say unto you again, that he cannot save them in their sins, and cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the Kingdom of Heaven, therefore how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the Kingdom of Heaven? therefore ye cannot be saved in your sins. Now I say unto you again, unto him is the ~~the~~ ^{the} God the very eternal Father, and Amulek said unto him, yea, in is the very Eternal Father of Heaven and earth and all things which in them is, in is the beginning and the end, the first and the last, and he shall come into the world to redeem his people, and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name, and then are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else, therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death. For behold, the day cometh, that all shall rise from the dead, and stand before God, and be judged according to ^{their} works. Now there is a death which is called a temporal death, and the death of this life shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death, the spirit and the body shall be reunited again, in its perfect form, both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, and as now are at this time, and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt, now this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous, and there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost, but all things shall be restored to its perfect form, in its nature, ~~and~~ ^{and} in the body, and shall be brought ^{to} ~~in~~ ^{before} the bar of Christ, the son, and God, the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which ^{are} ~~one~~ ^{one} Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil. Now behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you, that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death, unto life, that they can die no more, their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided, thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption. Now when Amulek had finished these words, the people began again to be astonished, and also Lezrom began to tremble, and thus ended the words of Amulek, and this is all that I have written.

Chapter 9. Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Lezrom, for he beheld that Amulek shall caught him in his lying and deceiving, to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble, and a consciousness of his guilt he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, and to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done, now the words that Alma spoke unto Lezrom ^{were} heard by the people round about, for the

14) multitude was great and he spake on this wise now I began saying that there must be a
 taken in thy living and I say unto thee thou must not live unto men only but thou hast
 lived unto God for ye shall be accounted all thy thoughts and thou must that thy thoughts are
 made known unto us by his spirit and thou must that we know that thy plan was
 a very subtle plan as is the subtilty of the Devil for to lead us to deceive this people
 that thou mightest set them against us to revile us and to cast us out now this was
 a plan of thine adversary and he hath exercised his power in thee now should
 that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all and behold I say
 unto you all that this was a name of the adversary which he had laid to catch
 this people that he might bring you into subjection unto him that he might
 encircle you about with his chains that he might chain you down to everlasting
 destruction according to the power of his captivity Now when Alma had
 spoken these words I began to tremble more exceedingly for he was convinc-
 ed more and more of the power of God and he was also convinced that Alma and
 Amulek had a knowledge of him for he was convinced that they knew the throne
 of God and in turn of his nearness for power was given unto them that they might
 know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy I began to inquire
 of them diligently that he might know more concerning the Kingdom of God and
 he said unto Alma what dost thou mean when thou hast spoken concerning the
 resurrection of the dead that all shall rise from the dead both the just and the
 unjust and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works and now
 Alma began to explain these things unto him saying it is given unto many to
 know the mysteries of God nevertheless they are laid under a strict command
 that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he
 hath vouchsafed unto the children of men according to the heed and diligence which
 they give unto him therefore he that will harden his heart the same receiveth the less
 portion of the word and he that will not harden his heart to him is given the greater
 portion of the word until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until they know
 them in full and he that will harden his heart to them is given the lesser por-
 tion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries and then they are
 taken captive by the Devil and led by the chains of Hell and cast down to destruction now this is what is meant by the chains of Hell and it is
 what hath spoken plainly concerning death and being raised from this mo-
 rality to a state of immortality and being brought before the bar of God to
 be judged according to our works then if our hearts have been hardened ye if
 we have hardened our hearts against the word in so much that it hath not
 been found in us then will our state be awful for then we shall be condemned
 for our words will condemn us yea all our work will condemn us we shall
 not be found spotless and our thoughts will also condemn us and in this awful
 state we shall not ~~be able~~ look up to our God and would faine be glad if we could
 command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his pres-
 ence but this cannot be we must come forth and stand before him in his glory

As he is in his power and in his might, majesty and dominion and acknowledged himself
everlasting, saying that all his judgments are just that he is just in all his works
and that he is merciful unto the children of men and that he hath all power to
save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for
repentance, and now behold I say unto you, then cometh a death, even a second
death which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in
his sins, as to the temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea,
he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness; then is the time
when their tormentors shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames
ascendeth up forever and ever, and then is the time that they shall be chained
down for an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of
Satan having subjected him according to his will; then I say unto you, they
shall be as though there had been no redemption made for they cannot be re-
deemed according to God's justice; and they cannot see, seeing there is no more
corruption; and it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking
these words the people began to be more astonished; but there was one individual
who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him, What is
this that thou hast said that man should rise from the dead and be changed from
this mortal to an immortal state; that the soul can never die? What doth this scriptu-
re mean which saith that God placed there him and a flaming sword on the
East of the Garden of Eden, lest our first Parents should enter into partake of the
fruit of the tree of life and live forever; and thus we see that there was no possi-
ble chance that they should live forever; now Alma saith unto him, this
is the thing which I was about to say, I claim now we see that Adam did fall
by partaking of the forbidden fruit according to the word of God; and thus we
see that by his fall ~~that~~ all mankind became a lost and a fallen people
and now behold I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to
have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life, at that time that there would
have been no death and the word would have been void making God
a liar for he said if thou eat ~~the~~ of those shalt surely die and we see that
death comes upon mankind yea the death which has been spoken of by
Adam which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space
granted unto man in which he might repent therefore this life became
a probationary state, a time to prepare to meet God, a time to prepare
for that endless state which has been spoken of by us which is after the
resurrection of the dead; now if it had not been for the plan of redemption
which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been
no resurrection of the dead, but there was a plan of redemption laid whi-
ch shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead of which has been
spoken, and now behold if it were possible that our first Parents could
have entered into partake of the tree of life they would have been forever mi-
serable having no preparatory state and thus the plan of redemption would

Let have been thus ^{but} ~~but~~ ^{the} word of God would have been void taking more
effect had hehold be hold it was not so but it was appointed unto man that they
must die and after death they must come to judgment even that same judgment
of which we have spoken which is the end and after God had appointed that these
^{should} come unto man behold thus we saw that it was expedient that man sh-
ould know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them therefore he sent
angels to converse with them ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{who} caused men to behold ^{his} ~~his~~ ^{his} glory and then began
from that time forth to call on his name therefore God conversed with the men and
made known unto them the plan of redemption which had been prepared
from the foundation of the world and thus he made known unto them acco-
rding to their faith and repentance and their holy works wherefore he gave com-
mandments unto men they having first transgressed the first commandments
as to things which were temporal and becoming as Gods knowing good from evil
placing themselves in a state to act or being placed in a state to act accord-
ing to their wills and pleasures whether to do ~~good~~ ^{evil} or to do good therefore
God gave unto them commandments after having made known unto them the plan
of redemption that they should not do evil the penalty thereof being a second dea-
th which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness
for on such the plan of redemption could have no power for the works of justice could
not be destroyed according to the supreme goodness of God but God did call on men in the
name of his son this being the plan of redemption which was laid saying if ye will
repent and harden not your hearts then will I have mercy upon you through mine
only begotten son therefore whosoever repenteth and hardeneth not his heart
he shall have a claim on my name through mine only begotten son unto a remission of
~~his~~ ^{his} ~~iniquities~~ ^{iniquities} shall enter into my rest and ~~if~~ ^{if} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~hardens~~ ^{hardens} his heart and
will do iniquity behold I swear in my wrath that ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~shall~~ ^{shall} ~~not~~ ^{not} ~~enter~~ ^{enter} ~~into~~ ^{into} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~rest~~ ^{rest}
and a new world shall behold I say unto you that if ye will harden your hearts
ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord therefore your iniquity provoketh him
that he sends the arrow his wrath upon you as in the first provocation ye according
to his word in the last provocation as well as in the first to the everlasting destruc-
tion of your souls therefore according to his word ^{with} ~~with~~ ^{with} the last death as well as the
first and now my brethren giving we know these things and they are true let us re-
pent and ~~not~~ ^{not} ~~harden~~ ^{harden} our hearts that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull
down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he hath given
unto us but let us enter into the rest of God which is prepared according to his wo-
rd and again my Brethren would I cite your minds forward to the time which the
Lord God gave these commandments unto his Children and I would that ye shou-
ld remember that the Lord God ordained Priests after his holy order ^{which} ~~which~~ ^{which} was
after the order of his Son to teach these things unto the people and those Priests

It is usually yourselves seen as the people in the days of Melchizedek who was
also a mighty priest after this same order which I have spoken of also
took upon him the high Priesthood, and it was this same Mel-
chizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes you even saw that this Abraham
had tithes of one tenth, but of all he possessed, notwithstanding these ordinances were
given after this manner that thereby the people might look forward on
the Son of God it being a type of his order or it being his order and this that
they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins that they might
enter into the rest of the words, Now this Melchizedek was a King
over the land of Salem and his people had waxed strong in iniquity
and abominations, yea they had all gone astray they were full of all
manner of wickedness but Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith
and received the office of the high Priesthood according to the holy order
of God, did preach repentance unto his people, and behold they did repent
and Melchizedek did establish peace in the Land in his days, therefore
he was called the Prince of Peace, for he was the King of Salem and
he did reign under his Father, now there were many before him and
also there were many afterwards but none were greater therefore of him
they have more particularly made mention, now I need not rehearse the
matter what I have said may suffice, behold the scriptures are before
you if ye will ^{read} them it shall be to your own destruction, Now
it came to pass that when I had said these words unto them
he stretched forth his hand unto them & said within myself, will
saying now is the time to repent for the day of salvation draweth nigh
and the voice of the Lord by the mouth of angels hath declared it
unto all nations and hath declared it that they may have glad tidings
of great joy, he hath said these glad tidings unto all his people yea
even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, therefore
they have come unto us & they are made known unto us in plain terms that
we may understand that we can not escape this because of our being
under a change, and therefore we are thus highly favoured, for we
have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard, for
behold angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land, & this
is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men for to re-
ceive him and at the time of his coming in his glory, now we only wait
to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels of his com-
ing, for the time cometh we know not how soon we would to God that
it might be in my day, but let it be sooner or later in it shall be for
us.

... it shall be ^{made} known unto just & holy men by the mouth of angels ²⁸
at the time of his coming that the words of our fathers ~~which~~ ^{which} he fulfilled
according to that which they have spoken concerning him which was
according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them & now my brethren
I wish from the inmost part of my heart yea with great anxiety
earnest pain that ye would hearken unto my words & cast off your
sins & not procrastinate the day of your repentance but that ye would
humble yourselves before the Lord & call on his holy name & watch
& keep continually that ye may not be tempted above that which ye
can bear & thus be led by the holy spirit becoming humble meek
submissive patient full of love & all long suffering having faith
in the Lord having a hope that ye shall receive it in life having the
love of God always in your hearts that ye may be lifted up at the last
day & enter in to his rest & may the Lord grant unto you repentance that
ye may not bring down his wrath upon you that ye may not be bound
down by the chains of hell that ye may not suffer the second death
& it came to pass that Alma spake many more words unto the people
which are not written in this book & ~~came to pass that~~ ^{there} he had made an
end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words & began
to repent & to search the scriptures but the more part of them were desirous
that they might destroy Alma & Amulek for they were angry with Alma
because of the plainness of his words unto Gezraam & they also said that Alma
which had lied unto them & had reviled against them law & also against
their campers & judges & they were also angry with Alma & Amulek
because they had testified plainly against their iniquities they
sought to take them away secretly but it came to pass that they did not
but they took them & bound them with strong cords & took them before
the chief judge of the land & the chief men of the land to witness against them with
testifying that they had reviled against the law & their campers & judges of
the land & also all the people that were in the land & also testified that
there was but one God & that he should send his Son among the people
but he should not save them & many such things did the people testify
against Alma & Amulek & ~~it came to pass that~~ ^{now they} it was done before the chief

And he said that ~~he~~ ^{he} came to know that his name was written
at the words which had been spoken & he also knew concerning the blin-
ness of the minds which he had caused among the people by his being wroth
to his soul began to be harrowed up and a consciousness of his own guilt
upon he began ~~to~~ ^{to} be distressed about by the pains of hell & it came to pass
that he began to cry unto the people saying behold I am guilty & therefore
wretched but he said ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~he~~ ^{he} began to bleed for the people
from that time forth but they reviled him saying art thou also sold
unto the devil & it came to pass that they spit upon him & cast him out
from among them & also all those who believed in the words which had
been spoken by Samuel & Samuel & they cast them out & sent men to cast
stones at them & they brought their wives & children together & whosoever
had believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they
cursed that they should be cast into the fire & they also brought forth
the records which contained the holy scriptures & cast them into the fire also
that they might be burned & destroyed by fire & it came to pass that they took the
records & carried them forth to the place of martyrdom that they might witness
the destruction of those ^{who} were consumed by fire & it came to pass that when
Samuel saw the pains of the women & children ^{who} were consuming in
the fire he was also pained & he with unfeeling manner said unto them
I have seen therefore let us stretch forth our hands & embrace the power of
God which is in us & save them from the flames but Alma said unto him the
spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand for he
hold the Lord as in the strength of himself in glory & he doth suffer that
they may do this thing in that the people may do this thing unto their accord-
ing to the hardness of their hearts that the judgments which he shall en-
send upon them in his wrath may be just & the blood of the innocent shall
stand as a witness against them yea & may mightily against them at the last day
now I mean in earth unto Alma behold thy wife & thy children will burn as also
Alma said he it according to the will of God Lord but behold our word
is not finished therefore they burn us not now it came to pass that when
the bodies of those ^{who} had been cast into the fire were consumed &
also the records which were cast in with them the chief judge of the land
came & stood before Alma & Samuel as they were bound & he smote
them with his hand upon their cheeks & said unto them after

what ye have seen with ye. smite again unto this people that they shall
be cast into a lake of fire & brimstone & hold ye fast that ye have not
power to save these ^{with} ~~which~~ had been cast into the fire. when he had
said these things he came of the hall & the judge smote them again
upon their cheeks & asked what say ye for yourselves now this judge
was after the order & faith of the law ^{who} ~~which~~ the Golden rule came to pass
that if thou & I should be answered him nothing & he smote them again & he
brought them to the officers to be cast into prison & it came to pass that when
they had been cast into prison three days there came many lawyers & judges
& priests & teachers ^{who} ~~which~~ were of the congregation of the law & they came in
to the prison to see them & they questioned them about many words ^{but} they
answered them nothing & it came to pass that the judge stood before them
& asked why do ye not answer the words of this people know ye not that if
I have power to deliver ye up unto the law I can also command them to
smite but they answered nothing & it came to pass that they departed & went their
ways but came again on the morrow & the judge also smote them again on their
cheeks & many came forth also & smote them saying will ye stand again
& judge this & of the law & condemn in our law if ye have not great power why do
ye not deliver yourselves & many such things did they say unto them gnash-
ing their teeth upon them & chattering upon them & saying how shall we look when
we are damned & many such things & in all manner of such things did they
say upon them & thus they did smite them for many days & they did with-
hold from them that they might hunger & make that they might thirst
& it also did take from them their clothes that they were naked & thus
they were bound with strong cords & confined in prison & it came to pass
after they had thus suffered for many days & it was on the twentieth day
in the tenth month in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the
people of the law that the chief judge over the land of Samaria & many of
their teachers & their lawyers went in unto the prison where Abimelech
was bound with cords & the chief judge stood before them & smote
them again & said unto them if ye have the power of God deliver yourself
from these bonds & then we will believe that the Lord will deliver
this people according to your words & it came to pass that they all went
forth & smote them saying the same words even until the last when

And the Lord had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma & Amulek
& they arose & stood upon this spot & Alma cried saying how long
shall we suffer these great afflictions O Lord O Lord give us strength, we
sitting to our faith which is in Christ & we will deliverance to they
break the cords with which they were bound & when the people saw
this they began to flee for the fear of destruction had come upon them
& it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth
& did not obtain the entrance of the prison & the earth shook mightily
& the walls of the prison were rent in twain so that they fell to
the earth & the chief judge & the lawyers & the teachers ^{who} were to go
& Alma & Amulek were slain by the fall thereof & Alma & Amulek
came forth out of the prison & they were not hurt for the Lord
had directed unto them power according to their faith which was
in Christ & they starting came forth out of the prison & they were loosed
from their hands & the prison had fallen to the earth & they saw ^{who} which was
with them the walls thereof & were Alma & Amulek were slain & they came
forth into the city where the people having heard a great noise came running to
gather by multitudes to know the cause of it & when they saw Alma & Amulek
coming forth out of the prison & the walls thereof had fallen to the earth the
quiere church with great fear & fled from the presence of Alma & Amulek
as a soul flee from his young men & his sons & his daughters from the
presence of Alma & Amulek & it came to pass that Alma & Amulek were com-
mended to be sent out of the city & they departed & came on a journey to the
land of Zarahemla he held them they bound all the people ^{who} had dep-
arted out of the land & Amulek who had been cast out & stored be-
cause they believed in the words of Alma & they related unto them
that had related unto their wives & children & also concerning them-
selves & their families & their names & also how they were sick at Zarahemla
in a burning place which was caused by the great tribulations of
his mind on account of his iniquities for he supposed that Alma &
Amulek ^{were} no more & he supposed that they had been slain by the
cause of his iniquity & this great sin & his many other sins did know

of his mind until it did become exceeding sore having no deliverance
therefore he began to be tormented with a burning heat now when he
heard that Alma & Amulek ^{were} in the land of Sidom his heart began
to take courage & he sent a message immediately unto them desiring
them to come unto him & it came to pass that they went immediately
obeying the message which he had sent unto them & they went in unto
the house unto Geyzoni & they found him upon his bed sick being
very low with a burning fever & his mind also was exceeding sore be-
cause of his iniquities & when he saw them he stretched forth his hand
& besought them that they would heal him & it came to pass that the
one said unto him taking him by the hand believest thou in the Son
of Christ unto salvation & he answered & said yea I believe all the won-
ds that thou hast taught & Alma said if thou believest in the re-
demption of Christ thou canst be ^{healed} & he said yea I believe according
to thy words & then Alma said unto the Lord saying O Lord our God have merc-
y on this man & heal him according to his faith ^{which is in Christ} & it came
to pass when Alma had said these words ^{that} Geyzoni leaped upon his
bed & began to walk & this was done to the great astonishment of all
the people & the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Si-
dom & Alma baptised Geyzoni into the pond & he began from that
time on to preach unto the people & Alma established a church in
the land of Sidom & consecrated Priests & teachers in the land to baptise
unto the Lord ^{whosoever were desirous to be baptised} & it came to pass
that there were many for they did flock in from all the region round
about Sidom & were baptised but as to the people that were in the
land of Ammonihah they yet remained a hard hearted & a stiff necked
people & they repented not of their sins ascribing all the power of God
unto Amulek to the Lord for they were of the profession of the Lord
did not believe in the repentance of their sins & it came to pass that Alma
and Amulek having taken all his gold & his silver & his
precious things which ^{were} in the land of Ammonihah for the word of God

Let him being rejected by those which were over his friends & also by
his father & his kindred therefore after Alma having established the Church
at Sidon seeing a great Chastity among the people were checked as to
the pride of their hearts & began to humble themselves before God & began to
assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the
altar - watching & praying continually that they might be delivered from
Satan & from that fiery destruction now as I said Alma having seen
all these things therefore he took Amulek & came over to the land of Zarahemla
& took him to his own house & did administer unto him in his tribula-
tions & strengthened him in the Lord & thus ended the Tenth year of the re-
ign of the judges over the people of Nephthi. Chapter 11.

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over
the people of Nephthi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been
much peace in the land of Zarahemla ^{that} having been no wars nor contention
for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month
in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard ^{out} through the land, for
behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in on the wilderness side
into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah & began to
slay the people & to destroy the city, & now it came to pass before the Lord
that he could raise a sufficient army to drive the rest of the land, they
had destroyed the people ^{who} were in the city of Ammonihah, & also
some around the borders of the land, & taking others captive into the wild-
erness, now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain
those ^{who} had been carried away captive into the wilderness, therefore he
that had been appointed Chief Captain over the armies of the Nephites,
& his name was Gurmah, he had two sons, Lehi & Pahoran, Gurmah
in his two sons, knowing that there was high priest over the Church, &
having heard that he had the spirit of Prophecy, therefore they went
to him & desired of him to know whether ^{the} the Lord would that
they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had
been taken captive by the Lamanites, & it came to pass that Alma, con-
sidering of the Lord concerning the matter, & he would to send unto the
people, behold the Lamanites will cross the River Sidon in the South.

...and beyond the borders of the land of ^{the} Nephites, & he ^{came} ^{to} the great river Sidon, & there the Lord ^{came} ^{unto} them, & he said unto them, My brethren, ^{who} have been taken captive by the Lamanites, & it came to pass that ye again to his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, & marched away beyond the borders of Nephites into the ^{wide} wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon, & they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, & the Lamanites were scattered & driven into the wilderness, & they took their brethren ^{who} had been taken captive by the Lamanites, & there was not one soul of them ^{who} had been taken captive, & they were brought by their brethren to pass the river Sidon, & thus ended the eleventh year of the Judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, & the people of ^{the} Nephites were destroyed every living soul of the ^{the} Nephites, & also their great city ^{which} ^{was} said, I could not destroy because of its greatness, but behold, in one day it was ^{made} desolate, & their bones were ^{scattered} ^{by} dogs & by wild beasts of the wilderness, & nevertheless after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, & they were covered with a shallow covering, & now so great was the scent thereof, that the people did not go in to pass the land of ^{the} Nephites, for many ^{years}, & it was called desolation of ^{the} Nephites, for they were of the ^{the} Nephites, & their lands remained desolate, & it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites, and in the fourteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of ^{the} Nephites, thus for three years did the people of ^{the} Nephites have continual peace in all the land, & Alma & Amulek went forth preaching repentance unto the ^{the} Nephites, & in their sanctuaries, & also in their Synagogues, which were ^{built} after the manner of the Jews, & as many as would hear their word, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any acceptance of persons continually, & thus did Alma & Amulek go forth, & also many more, who had been chosen for the work to preach the word throughout all the land, & the establishment of the Church became general throughout the land, in all the regions round about, among all the people of the Nephites, & there was no inequality among them, for the Lord did pour out his spirit on all the face of the land, to purify the minds of the children of men.

to purport their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among
them at the time of his coming, that they might not be hardened against the
word, that they might not be unbelieving, & go on to destruction, but that they
might receive the word with joy, & as a branch be grafted into the true
vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God, now that
spirits ^{of the} ~~did~~ go forth among the people, did preach against all lie-
ings, & deceivings, & forgings, & thievery, & malice & revilings, & stealing, & robbery,
flouting, murdering, & committing adultery, & all manner of lasciviousness,
saying that these things ought not to be, holding forth things which must
shortly come, & holding forth the coming of the Son of God, & saying that
death, & the resurrection of the dead, & many of the people did inquire con-
cerning the place where the Son of God should come, & they were taught that
he would appear unto them after his resurrection, & that the people did
hear with great joy & gladness, & now after the Church having been estab-
lished throughout all the land, having got the victory over the Devil, &
the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, & the Lord
pouring out his blessings upon the people, & thus ended the fourteenth year
of the reign of the judges over the people of Zephaniah. Chapter 11
2 In the name of the Son of Man, ~~there~~ reported their riches to the King-
dom, for the word of God, & went up to the land of Zephaniah, to preach to the
Lamanites their sufferings & deliverance, according to the word of Alma.
And now it came to pass, that as Alma was journeying from the land
of Judaea, southward, in way to the land of Zarahemla, to his astonishment
he met the sons of Zarahemla, & journeying down to the land of Zarahemla,
now these sons of Zarahemla were with Alma ^{at the time} when he first appeared unto
him, & when Alma did again, & accordingly, to see his brethren, & what added
more to his joy, & rejoicing, still his brethren in the Land of Zarahemla, they had moved
strong in the knowledge of the truth, for they were men of a sound mind, & under-
standing, & they had observed the witnesses diligently, that they might know
the word of God, but this was not all, they had given their hearts to much prayer,
so that fasting, therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, & the spirit of revelation,
whereby they taught, they taught with power & authority, even as with the

from the multitude of his, & they had been teaching the word of God & it
in the space of fourteen years, among the Lamanites, having had much
success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, by the power
of their words, many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name,
one, even as their sins before him, now these are the circumstances
which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions,
they did suffer much, in body & in mind, such as hunger, thirst & a
disease, & also much labour in the desert, now these were their journeyings,
having taken leave of their father Moriah, in the first year of the
reign of the judges, having inherited the Kingdom which their father was
desirous to confer upon them, & also their was the minds of the people,
nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, & took their
wreaths, & their silver, & their bows, & their arrows, & their slings, & said
they desired that they might provide food for the multitude, while in the wild-
erness, & thus they departed into the wilderness, with their numerous
riches, & they had received, to go up to the land of Ephraim, to speak the word
unto the Lamanites, & it came to pass that they journeyed many days in
the wilderness, & they failed much, & prayed much, that the Lord would
grant unto them a portion of his spirit to govern them, & to abide with
them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God, to bring
if it were possible, their brethren the Lamanites to the knowledge of the
truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers,
which were not correct, & it came to pass that the Lord did visit them
with his spirit, & said unto them, be comforted, & they were comforted,
& the Lord said unto them also, go for ye among the Lamanites, my brethren,
& establish my word, yet ye shall be patient in long suffering,
& afflictions, that ye may cheer the good & comfort the meek, & shall
make an instrument of thee in my hands, unto the salvation of many
souls, & it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Moriah, & also
those ~~which~~ ^{who} were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites,
& to declare unto them the word, & it came to pass when they
had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they repen-
ted them, & departed one from another, trusting in the Lord,
that they should meet again at the close of their journey, for they
understood that great was the work which they had undertaken,
& assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the

2nd hand of God to a wild, & a hardened, & a sensuous people, who
were delighted in ~~the~~ ^{the} murdering, the fighting, & robbing, &
plundering things; their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold, or
silver, or precious stones; & they sought to obtain these things by
murdering & plundering, that they might not labour for them with their
own hands; thus they were a very idolatrous & heathen people, of whom did
worship idols, & the cause of God had fallen upon them because of the
traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding, the promises of the Lord
were intended unto them, on the conditions of repentance; therefore
that was the cause for which the voice of the Lord was undertaken the work
that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might
bring them to know of the place of redemption; therefore they separated
themselves one from another, & went forth among them, every man along
according to the mind & power of God, which was given unto him; now
Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did minister unto the
people, he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their
several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, & administered
unto them; he felt his departure; & thus they look upon him in general for
many days; & Ammon went to the land of Shem, the land of his small
the land being called after the sons of Shem, ^{who} ~~which~~ also became the
Lamanites; & as Ammon entered the land of Shem, the Lamanites took
him & bound him, as was their custom, to bind all the captives ~~which~~ ^{which} fell
into their hands, & carry them before the King; thus it was left to the pleasure
of the King to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into
prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will & pleasure; & the
as Ammon was carried before the King, ^{which} ~~which~~ was over the land of Shem
& his name was Samon; & he was a descendant of Shem; & the King enquired
of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the
Lamanites, or among his people; & Ammon said unto him, Ye desire to do
all among this people for a time, ye say, & perhaps until the day of death, & it
were to pass that King Samon was much pleased with Ammon, & caused that
his hands should be loosed; & he would that Ammon should take one of
his daughters to wife, but Ammon said unto him, Nay, but I will be
thy servant; therefore Ammon became a servant to King Samon; & it came
to pass that he was set among other servants, to watch the flocks
of Samon, according to the custom of the Lamanites; & it came to pass
that after he had been in the service of the King three days, ~~that~~
he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks,

to the place of meeting which was called the waters of Gihon. & all the Lamanites drove their flocks hither, that they ^{may} ~~might~~ have water; therefore when
mon & the servants of the king were driving forth these flocks to this place
if water be had, a certain number of the Lamanites who had been with
their flocks to water, stood & scattered the flock of Ammon, & the servants
of the king, & they scattered them inasmuch that they fled many ways, now
the servants of the king began to murmur, saying now the king will slay us,
as he has our brethren, because their flocks were scattered by the wicked
men of these men, & they began to murmur exceedingly, saying behold our flocks
are scattered & we also are scattered because of the fear of being slain, now
when Ammon saw this, his heart was swollen within him, with joy, for
said, he will show forth my power unto these my fellow servants, & on
the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may
win the hearts of these my fellow servants, that I may lead them to
believe in my words, now I have more the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw
in the affliction of those ^{latter} ~~which~~ he intended to be his brethren, & it came to
pass that he scattered them by his words, saying my brethren, be of good
cheer & let us go in search of the flocks, & we will gather them together
& bring them back unto the place of meeting & thus we will rescue the
flocks unto the king, & he will not slay us, & it came to pass that they went
in search of the flocks, & they did follow Ammon, & they marched forth with
much swiftness, & did lead the flocks of the king, & did gather them toge-
ther again, to the place of meeting, & these men again stood to scatter their flocks,
but Ammon said unto his brethren, on seeing the flocks round about
us that they flee not, & do not contend with these men ^{the} ~~men~~ ^{do} ~~do~~ ^{scatter} ~~scatter~~ ^{our} ~~our~~ ^{flocks} ~~flocks~~ ^{that} ~~that~~ ^{we} ~~we~~ ^{did} ~~did~~ ^{as} ~~as~~ ^{Ammon} ~~Ammon ^{had} ~~had~~ ^{commanded} ~~commanded~~ ^{them} ~~them ^{to} ~~to ^{be} ~~be~~ ^{wise} ~~wise~~ ^{sons} ~~sons~~
& stood to contend with those ^{where} ~~rough~~ ^{stood} ~~by~~ ^{the} ~~waters~~ ^{of} ~~Gihon~~ ^{and}
they were not in number ^{not} ~~a~~ ^{few} ~~anything~~ ^{for} ~~they~~ ^{did} ~~not~~ ^{find} ~~Ammon~~ ^{for}
they supposed that one of their men could slay him, according
to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised which~~~~~~

But we would deliver him out of their hands, within did they know
any thing concerning the Lord, they were they delighted in the destruction of their
brethren, for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the King, but when
he stood forth & began to cast stones at them with his sling, they with mighty
power he did sling stones amongst them, & thus he slew a certain number
of them, inasmuch that they began to be astonished at his power, nevertheless
saw they ^{were} ~~some~~ angry because of the slain of their brethren, & they were
determined that he should fall, then, one, seeing that they could not hit
him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him, but behold,
every man that lifted his club to smite him, he smote off their arms
with his sword, for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms
with the edge of his sword, inasmuch that they began to be astonished, &
began to flee before him, for they were not few in number, & he caused them
to flee by the strength of his arm, now some of them had fallen by the sling
but he showed none ease it were their leaders, ^{with this sword} he smote off as many of
their arms as ^{were} ~~lifted~~ ^{lifted} against him, & they were not a few, & when they
had driven them off, he returned, & they waited their backs, & clea-
rined them to the forehead of the King, & then went in unto the King, bearing the arms
which had been smote off by the sword of Chumoni, & those who sought
to slay him, & they were carried in unto the King, for a testimony of the things
which they had done, & it came to pass that King Lamoni caused that his
servants should stand forth & testify to all the things which they had seen
concerning the matter, & when they had all testified to the things which
they had seen & had learned of the faithfulness of Chumoni in preserving
his flocks & also of his great power in contending against those who sought
to slay him he was astonished exceedingly & said surely this is more
than a man he hold is not this the great spirit ^{who} ~~which~~ doth send such
great punishments upon this people because of their iniquities, & they answer-
ed the King & said whether he be the great spirit or a man we know
not, but this ^{much} ~~we~~ we do know that he cannot be slain by the ene-
mies of the King, neither can they scatter the King's flocks when he is
with us because of his uprightness & great strength, therefore we know

[illegible]

And he was still crying to the king, and urged him not, for the space of an hour
according to their time for he knew not what he should say unto him but came
to pass that Ammon said unto him again what desired those of me but the
king answered him not & it came to pass that Ammon being filled with the
spirit of God therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king & he said unto him
not because ~~that~~ thou hast heard that I defended thy servants & thy flock
& slew seven of their brethren with the sword it is with the sword & with the
the arms of others in order to defend thy flock & thy servants he hold it is
this that causeth thy marvelings & say once again what is it that thy man
things are so great to hold & and may I am thy servant therefore what saith
thou desirest which is right that I do now when the king had heard these
words he marvelled again for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts
but not with this landing, this king Lamoni did open his mouth & said unto him
who art thou art thou that great spirit ^{which} knows all things? Ammon
answered & said unto him I am not & the king said how knowest thou the
thoughts of my heart thou mayest speak boldly & tell me concerning these
things & also tell me by what power ye slew to smite off the heads of my
brethren that scattered my flocks & now if thou wilt tell me concerning
these things what saith thou desirest I will give unto thee & if it were needed
I would guard thee with my arm but I know that thou art more power-
ful than all these nevertheless what saith thou desirest if need I will grant
it unto thee now Ammon being wile yet humble he said unto Lamoni not
I have heard thee utter my words if I tell thee by what power I do these th-
ings & this is the thing that I desire of thee & the king answered him & said
yea I will believe all thy words & thus he was caught with guile & Ammon
began to speak unto him with boldness & said unto him he believeth that
that there is a God & he answered unto him I do not know what that mean-
eth & the king said he believeth that there is a great spirit & he sa-
id ye & Ammon said that is God & Ammon said unto him again he be-
lieveth that that great spirit ^{which} is God created all things which are in
heaven & in the earth & he said ye believe that he created all things wh-
ich ^{are} in the earth but I do not know the heavens & Ammon said unto him
the heavens ^{are} a place where God dwelleth & all his holy angels & King Lamoni
said is it above the earth & Ammon said yea & he looked down upon all the
children of men & he knows all the thoughts & in the heart of the heart for by his hand

men ¹²¹⁷ were ¹²¹⁸ all created from the beginning & King Lamoni saith believe
all these things which thou hast spoken are true sent from God & Ammon sa
ith unto him I am a man & man in the beginning was created after the image of
God & I am called by his holy spirit to teach these things unto this people that
they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just & true & a por
tion of that spirit dwelleth in me which giveth me knowledge & also power
according to my faith & desires which ¹²¹⁹ are in God now when Ammon had
said these words he began to the creation of the world & also to the creation of
Adam & told him all the things concerning the fall of man & he heaved & b
laid before him the records ¹²²⁰ of the holy scriptures of the people & which had
been spoken by the prophets even down to the time that ¹²²¹ Lehi left Jerusalem
and he also rehearsed unto them for it was unto the king & to his servants
all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness & all their sufferings
with hunger & thirst & their travel & c & he also rehearsed unto them con
cerning the rebellions of Samson & Lemuel & the sons of Ishmael & all their
rebellions & it came to pass that he expounded unto them all the records
& scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present
time but this is not all for he expounded unto them the plan of redem
ption which was prepared from the foundation of the ¹²²² world & he also made
known unto them concerning the coming of Christ & all the words of the Lord
did he make known unto them & it came to pass that after he had said all these
things & expounded them to the king that the king believed all his words & he
began to cry unto the Lord saying O Lord have mercy according to thy abundant
mercy which thou hast had upon the people of ¹²²³ thy people & now when he had said this he fell unto the earth as if he
were dead & it came to pass that his servants & took him & carried him in unto
to his wife & laid him upon a bed & he lay as if he were dead for the space
of two days & two nights & his wife & his sons & his daughters mourned
over him after the manner of the Samaritans greatly lamenting his death
& it came to pass that after two days & two nights they were about to

Let take his body to lay it in a sepulcher which they had made for the purpose
of burying him. And now the Queen having heard of the same of Am-
mon therefore he sent & desired that he should come in unto her. & it
came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded & went in unto the
Queen & desired to know what she would that he should do & she said un-
to him the servants of my ^{husband} have made it known unto me that thou art a
prophet of a holy God & that thou hast power to do many mighty works in
his name therefore if this is the case it would that ye should go in & see
my husband for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of three days
& two nights & some say that he is not dead but others say that he is dead &
that he stinketh & that he ought to be placed in the sepulcher but as
soon myself to me he doth not stink now this was what Ammon desired
for he knew that King Lamoni was under the power of God he knew that the
dark veil of unbelief being cast away from his mind & the light which
did light up his mind which was the light of the glory of God which
was a marvelous light of his goodness & this light had infused such
joy into his soul the cloud of darkness having been dispelled & the light of
everlasting light was lit up in his soul & he knew that this had over-
come his natural frame & he was carried away in God & therefore what the
Queen desired of him was his only desire & therefore he went in to see the King
according as the Queen had desired him & he saw the King & he knew that he
was not dead & he saith unto the Queen ^{he} is not dead but he sleepeth
God & on the morrow he shall rise again therefore have him not & Ammon
saith unto her believe that thou shalt & she said I have had no witness save
by word & the word of our servants & ministers & she believeth that it shall be
according as those have said & Ammon said unto her blessed art thou be-
cause of thy believing & he saith unto the woman that has not been such great fa-
ith among all the people of the isabites & it came to pass that she watched over
the bed of her husband from that time even until that time on the mor-
row which Ammon had appointed that he should rise & it came to pass
that he arose according to the words of Ammon & as he arose he stretched forth
his hand unto the woman & said blessed be the name of God for as much as
thou believest behold I have ^{been} thy redeemer & he shall come forth to believ-
en of a woman & he shall ^{redeem} ~~redeem~~ all mankind who will live on his name
now when he had said these words his heart was swollen with joy &

because of the number which he had slain of them brethren at the
waters of Sebus while defending the flock of the king, now one of them
whose brother had been slain with the sword of Lamoni being exceedingly
angry with Lamoni drew his sword & went forth that he might ^{kill}
fall upon him to slay him & as he lifted the sword to smite him he
held he fell dead now we see that Lamoni could not be slain for the
Lord had said unto Mosiah his father & I will spare him & it shall be
unto him according to the faith therefore Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord
& it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen
and who lifted the sword to slay Lamoni fear came upon them all & they
durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those ^{who} which had
fallen & they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the ca-
use of this great power or what all these things could mean & it came to pass
that there ^{were} many among them who said that Lamoni was the great ^{spirit}
& others said he was sent by the great ^{spirit} ^{who} ^{they} ^{per-}
fect others & had told them all saying that he was a monster ^{which} ^{had} ^{been}
sent from the Nephites to torment us & there were some ^{which} ^{said} ^{that}
Lamoni was sent by the great spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities
& that it was the great spirit that had always attended the Nephites ^{which} ^{had} ^{not}
had even delivered them out of their hands & they said that it was this great
spirit ^{which} ^{had} ^{destroyed} so many of their brethren the Lamanites & thus the
contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them & while they were thus con-
tending the woman whom ^{we} had caused the multitude to be gathered together
then came & when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she
was exceedingly sorrowful even unto tears & it came to pass that she went & took
the Queen by the hand that perhaps she might raise her from the ground & as soon
as she touched her hand she arose & stood upon her feet & cried with a loud
voice saying O blessed Jesus who has saved me from an awful hell O Jesus
God have mercy on this people & when she had said this she clasped her hands
being filled with joy & breaking many words which were not understood
& when she had done this she took the King Lamoni by the hand & behold
he arose & stood upon his feet & he immediately seeing the contention ^{among}

his people were forth & began to rebuke them & to teach them the words ^{of God} which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon & as many as heard his words believed & were commended unto the Lord but there was many among them who would not believe his words therefore they went their way & it came to pass that when Ammon was ^{advised} to leave them he did all the remnants of Lamoni & they did all declare unto the people the ^{rejoicing} thing that their hearts had been changed that they had no more desire to do evil & he held many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels & had conversed with them & thus they had told their things of God & of his righteousness & it came to pass that there ~~were~~ ^{were} many that did believe in their words & as many as believed were lightened & they became a righteous people & they did establish a church among them & thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamonites but the Lord did begin to pour out his spirit upon them & as the Lord his name is extended to all people who will repent & believe on his name & it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land that King Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi that he might show him unto his father & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi for he that the king will seek thy life but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni for he hold thy brethren & also Mulaki & Eumamah in prison now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this he ^{said} ~~said~~ unto Lamoni behold my brethren & brethren are in prison at Middoni & I go that I may deliver them as Lamoni ~~said~~ ^{said} unto Ammon I know in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things but he hold I will go with thee to the land of Middoni for the king of the land of Middoni whose name is Antionus is a friend unto me therefore I go to the land of Middoni that I may ^{hear} ~~hear~~ the king of the land & he will cast thy brethren out of prison now Lamoni ^{said} ~~said~~ unto him what ^{thou} ~~thou~~ saidst that thy brethren were in prison & Ammon ^{said} ~~said~~ unto him no one hath told me save it be God & he said unto me go & deliver thy brethren for they are in prison in the land of Middoni now when Lamoni ^{heard} ~~heard~~ this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses & his chariots & he ^{said} ~~said~~ unto Ammon come I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni

but Mormon withstood his blows & also raised his arm that
he could not use it now when the king saw that Mormon could
slay him he began to plead with Mormon that he would spare his
life & Mormon raised his sword & said unto him he held
I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my bre-
thers may be cast out of prison now the king fearing that he should
lose his life said if thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee what
soever thou wilt ask even to the half of the kingdom now when Mor-
mon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his des-
ire, he ^{said} ~~said~~ unto him if thou wilt grant that my brethren may be
cast out of prison & also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom & that
if he be disabled with him, but grant that he may do according to
his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee
otherwise I will smite thee to the earth now when Mormon had said
these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life & when he saw
that Mormon had declined to destroy him, & when he saw the great
love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly & say-
eth because this is all that thou hast desired, that I should release
thy brethren & suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his king-
dom, he hold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his king-
dom from this time & on, & I will govern him no more & I
will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of pri-
son & that if the brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom, I
shall greatly desire to see them, for the king was greatly astonished at
the words which he had spoken, & also at the words which had be-
en spoken by his son Lamoni; therefore he was desirous to learn the
And it came to pass that Mormon & Lamoni proceeded on their journey
towards the land of Middoni, & it came to pass that Lamoni found favor
in the eyes of the king of the land, therefore the brethren of Mormon ^{were} ~~was~~ ^{cast} ~~out~~
out of prison, & when Mormon did meet them, he was exulting.

2. 1. I saw of old, from before they were naked, & their skins were
now made of hide, because of being bound with strong cords, & they also
had suffered hunger, thirst, & all kind of affliction, nevertheless
they were patient in all their sufferings, & as it happened it was
their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened & a
more stiffnecked people, therefore they would not hearken unto
their words, & they had cast them out, & had ~~smitten~~ ^{smitten} them, & had
driven them from house to house, & from place to place, even until
they had come to the land of Middonia. & then they were taken
& cast into prison, & bound with strong cords, & kept in prison for
many days, & were delivered by Ammon & his brethren.

Chapter XIII An account of the preaching of
Ammon & his brethren to the Nephites.
Now when Ammon & his brethren separated themselves ^{borders of the} ^{land of the} from the Nephites, he held, Ammon took his journey towards the land which
was called by the Nephites Jerusalem, & being a place of the land of
the Nephites, & it was away joining the borders of Middonia, where
the Nephites, & the Amalekites, & the people of Amulon, had built a
great city, which was called Jerusalem, now the Nephites, of them-
selves, were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites & the Amulonites,
were still harder-hearted, & did cause the Nephites that they should
harder their hearts, that they should wear themselves in iniquities, & their
abominations, & it came to pass that Ammon came to the city of Jerusalem, &
began to preach to the Amalekites, & began to preach to them in their synagogues,
for they had built synagogues, & the order of the Nephites, many of
the Amalekites & the Amulonites were of the order of the Nephites, & then
Ammon entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the peo-
ple, & as he was speaking unto them, he held there was an Amalekite,
& began to speak, & said, Ammon, who is that that thou hast
said? I have said that I am a Nephite, & do not say as the Nephites
do, & hold, are not the people as good as the people? then also saying, except
we repent, we shall perish, how knowest thou the thought & intent
of our heart? how knowest thou that we have cause to repent? how
knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? he held, we have
not seen him, & we do assemble ourselves together to worship God, &
do his will, that God will save all men, now Ammon said unto him
believe that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind

Now when these things were said unto him, we do not believe
 that these ancient and wise things, we do not believe in these
 Jewish traditions, we do not believe that these ancient things
 to come, neither do we believe that the things which are to come
 did come concerning the things which the people of that which is to come.
 Now when he began to read the scripture unto them, concerning the coming of
 Christ, & also concerning the resurrection of the dead, & that there could
 be no redemption for mankind, save it were through the death &
 sufferings of Christ, & the atonement of his blood. & it came to pass that
 as he began to read these things unto them, they were angry with
 him, & began to mock him, & they would not hear the words which
 he spake, & they said that they would not hear his words,
 he departed out of the Synagogue, & came over to a village, which
 was called ~~Abraham~~ ^{Abraham} ~~Abraham~~ ^{Abraham}, & there he found a
 preaching the word unto them, & also to the Jews, & his brethren, &
 they contended with many about the word, & it came to pass that they
 saw that the people would not abandon their hearts, therefore they departed, &
 came over into the land of Middoni, & they did preach the word unto
 a few, but few believed on the words which they taught, nevertheless, a cer-
 tain number of his brethren were taken & cast into prison, & the remain-
 der of them fled out of the land of Middoni, unto the regions round-
 about, & those which were cast into prison suffered many things, &
 they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni, & Chormon, & they were
 fed & clothed, & they went forth again to do plant the word, & thus
 they were delivered for the first time out of prison, & thus they had
 suffered, & they went forth with the sword, they were left by the spirit
 of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every Synagogue of the
 Abolition, in every assembly of the Lamoni, where they could be admi-
 nistered, & it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them in ^{some} that
 they brought many to the knowledge of the truth, & they did convince
 many of their sins, & of the traditions of their fathers, which were not
 correct, & it came to pass that Chormon & Lamoni returned ^{from} the land of
 Middoni, to the land of Abolition, which was the land of their in-
 heritance, & King Lamoni would not suffer that Chormon should travel
 on his servant, but he caused that there should be Synagogues built in
 the land of Abolition, & he caused that his people, on the ^{very} ^{land} ^{which}
 under his reign, should assemble themselves together, & he did rejoice

the spirit of the Lord he held there is the thing which doth trouble
me, & also, what is this that Shammur said, if ye will repent ye shall
be saved, & if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last
day? & Shammur answered him & said unto him, believe that there
is a God, & the king sayeth, I know that the Annabekites say that
there is a God, & I have granted unto them that they should build
sanctuaries, that they might assemble themselves together, to wor-
ship him, & if now they say that there is a God, behold, I will believe
to now when Shammur heard this, his heart began to rejoice, & he said,
behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God, & the king
sayeth, is that great spirit that brought our fathers out of the
land of Mesopotamia? & Shammur said unto him yea, he is that great
spirit, & he created all things, both in heaven & in earth: because
Shammur said to say the king, I believe that the great spirit created
all things, & I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things
& I will believe his words, & it came to pass that when Shammur saw
that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of
Adam, teaching the scriptures unto the king, how God created man
after his own image, & that God gave commandments, & that because
of transgression man had fallen, & Shammur did expound unto him the
Gospel, from the creation of Adam, saying, the fall of man before
him, & his various state, & also the law of redemption which was
promised, how the redemption of the world, through Christ, in all
whom we must believe in his name, & that man had fallen
he could not merit any thing, & that the sufferings & death
of Christ were for the world, through faith & obedience, & C.
& that it becometh to him, death, that the pains shall have no
violence, & that the living & the dead shall be swallowed up in the
bosom of glory, & Shammur did impart all these things unto the king,
& it came to pass that when Shammur had expounded these things unto
him, the king said, What shall I do, that I may have that eternal
life of which thou hast spoken, what shall I do, that I may
the heavenly God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my heart,

2^d D. receive his charity that I may be filled with joy that I may not be cast off at the last day, he hold, ~~saying~~ he will give up all that I desire, & I will forsake my kingdom & all may receive this great joy, but Aaron sayeth unto him, if thou desirest this thing, I will bow down before God, & thou shalt report of all thy sins, & bow down before God, & call on his name, in faith believing, that he shall receive thee, thou shalt then receive the hope which thou desirest. It came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees, & when he did so, he said mightily, saying, O God, I have said, & I will make known to me, & I will give away all my sins to know thee, & that I may be saved from the day, & be saved at the last day, & now when the king had said these words, he was chidden, & he was chidden, & it came to pass that his servants to him & told the king all that happened unto the king, & he came in unto the king, when he saw him lay as if he were dead, & also Aaron & his brethren standing, as they had been the cause of his fall, he commanded with them, & commanded that his servants, on the servants of the king, should take them, & was them, now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they did not lay their hands on Aaron & his brethren, & they did with the Queen, saying, we command thee, that we should slay these men, as he hath told one of them, & might slay them, now we shall fall before them, now when the Queen saw the face of the servants, she also began to weep exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her, & she commanded her servants that they should go & call the people, that they might slay Aaron & his brethren, now when Aaron saw the determination of the Queen, & he did know the hardness of the hearts of the people, he feared, lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, & there should be a great contention, & a disturbance among them, therefore he put in his hand & raised the king, from

the words & said unto him, stand: & he stood upon his feet,
restoring his strength, now this was done in the presence of the Queen,
& many of her servants: & when they saw it, they greatly marvelled &
began to fear: & the King stood forth & began to minister unto them,
& he did minister unto them inasmuch that his whole household
were converted unto the Lord, now there was a multitude gathered
together because of the commandment of the Queen & there began to
be great murmurings among them, because of Hanon & his brethren, but the
King stood forth among them, & administered unto them, & it came to pass
that they were pacified towards Hanon & his ~~brothers~~ ^{those} which were with
him. It came to pass that when the King saw that the people were paci-
fied, he caused that Hanon's six brethren should stand forth in the midst
of the multitude, & that they should preach the word unto them, & it
came to pass that the King sent a proclamation throughout all the land,
amongst all his people ~~that were~~ ^{that were} in all his land, which was in all these
regions round about, which was bordering even to the Sea on the east, & on
the west, & which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow
strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east, & unto the sea west, &
round about on the borders of the Sea shore, & the borders of the wilder-
ness, which was on the north, by the land of Zarahemla, through the bo-
rders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east
towards the west, & thus were the Lamanites & the Nephites divided, now
the ^{whole} majority of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, & ~~lived~~ ^{dwelt} in tents, &
they were spread through the wilderness, on the west, in the land of Nephis,
& also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the Sea
shore, & on the east, in the land of Nephis, in the place of their latter day
inheritance, & thus bordering along by the Sea shore, & also there ~~were~~ ^{were} many
Lamanites on the east by the Sea shore, whither the Nephites had driven them, &
thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites, nevertheless
the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering
on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west,

231
as to cast them into prison neither should they spit upon them nor
smite them nor cast the name of their synagogues nor scourge them
nor this should they cast stones at them but that they should have free
access to their houses & also their temples & their sanctuaries & that
they might go forth & preach the word according to their desires for the
king had been converted unto the Lord & all his heart held this for he sent
their proclamation throughout the land unto his people that the word
of God might have no abridgement but that it might go forth thro-
ughout all ~~the~~ land that his people might be convinced concerning
the wicked traditions of their fathers & that they might be convinced
that they were all brethren & that they ~~should~~ ^{not} ought to murder nor
to plunder nor to steal nor to commit adultery nor to commit any man-
ner of wickedness And now it came to pass that when the king had sent for
him this proclamation that he sent his brethren went forth from city to city
& from one house of worship to another establishing churches & consecrating
priests & teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites to preach & to
teach the word of God among them & thus they began to have great success &
thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord & also thousands were
brought to believe in the traditions of the prophets & thus were taught the
wonders & the prophecies ~~which were~~ handed down even to the present
time and some of the Lord's servants were as many as believed or as many
as were brought to the knowledge of the truth through the preaching of Abinadi
& his brethren according to the spirit of revelation & of prophecy & the power of
God working miracles in their year & say unto you as the Lord liveth as ma-
ny of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching & were converted unto the
Lord never did ~~any~~ ^{any} ~~man~~ ^{man} ~~for~~ ^{for} ~~they~~ ^{they} became a righteous people they did lay
down their weapons of their rebellion that they did not fight against God
~~any more~~ ^{any more} neither against any of their brethren now there are ~~they~~ ^{they} which were
converted unto the Lord the people of the Lamanites which were in the land
of Shemall & also of the people of the Lamanites ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the land of
Hidduan & also of the people of the Lamanites ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the city of
Hohab & also of the people of the Lamanites ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the land of
Ethiopia & ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the land of Shemall & in the city of Enmus
& in the city of Shemall & these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites
which were converted unto the Lord & these are they that

13th laid down the weapons of their rebellion & all their weapons
of war & they were all Saminites & the Amalekites were not converted save
only one neither was any of the Amulonites but they did harden their hearts
& also the hearts of the Saminites in that part of the land ^{where} ~~where~~ ^{they} ~~they~~
they dwelt & so all their villages & all their Cities therefore we have named
all the Cities of the Saminites in which they did repent & come to the know-
ledge of the truth & were converted & now it came to pass that the King &
those people which were converted were desirous that they might have
a name that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren
therefore the King consulted with Aaron & many of the priests concerning
the name that they should take upon them that they might be distinguished
& it came to pass that they called their name Antiochites & they
were called by this name & were no more called Saminites & they be-
gan to be among industrious people & they were friendly with the High
Priests therefore they did have a commandment with them to the cause of God
did no more follow them & it came to pass that the Amalekites & the Amulon-
ites & the Saminites ^{who} ~~which~~ were in the land of Amulon & also in the land
of Helam & ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{was} in the land of Jerusalem & in fine in all the land
round about ^{who} ~~which~~ had not been converted & had not taken upon them
the name of Antiochites were stirred up by the Amalekites & the
Amulonites to anger against their brethren & their hatred became exceeding
sore against them even inasmuch that they began to rebel against their
King inasmuch that they would not that he should be their King therefore
they took up arms against the people of Antiochites now the King con-
fused the kingdom upon his son he called his name Antiochites
& the King died in that self same year that the Saminites began to make
preparations for war against the people of God now when Ammon &
his brethren & all those ^{who} ~~which~~ had come up with him saw the prepara-
tions of the Saminites to destroy their brethren they came forth to the land
of Helam & the Ammon met all his brethren & from thence they


234
As we could do to get our claims taken away from us to our swords
and made bright but as had been away that they may be kept bright
as a testimony to our God at the last day or at the day that we shall be
ought to stand before him to be judged that we have not stained our
swords in the blood of man. brethren since he imparted his word unto us as to
has made us clean things to new my brethren if our brethren seek to destroy us
behold we will with our own swords ye even we will bring them
down in the earth that they may be kept bright as a testimony that we
have never used them at the last day & if our brethren destroy us behold
we shall go to our God & shall be raised to new life & shall say that even
the King had made an end of these sayings & all the people were assembled
and together they took their swords & all the weapons which were used
for the shedding of blood & they did bury them up deep in the earth &
thus they did it being in their view a testimony to God & also to men that
they never ^{should} use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood & thus they
did vanishing & covenanting with God that rather than shed the blood
of their brethren they would give up their own lives & rather than take
away from a brother they would give unto him & rather than spend their
days in idleness they would labour a husband for with their hands
& thus we see that when these Lamanites were brought to believe &
to know the truth ~~that~~ they were ^{lovers} to murder & to commit
death rather than to commit sin thus we see that they changed
the weapons of peace on they changed the weapons of war for peace
& it came to pass that their brethren the Lamanites made preparations
for war & came to the land of Ephraim for the purpose of destroying the
king & to place another in his stead & also of destroying the people of
O Anti Ephraim is one of the land ^{where} ~~to~~ ^{they} ~~came~~ ^{that} when the people
saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them
& prostrated themselves before them to the earth & began to call on the
name of the Lord & thus they were in their attitude when the Lamanites
began to fall upon them & began to slay them with the sword & that with-
out meeting any resistance they did slay a thousand & five of them
& we know that they are blessed for they have gone to dwell with them

[illegible]

And when the Lamanites saw that they could not overcome them ~~with~~ ^{by} their
 they returned again to their own land & many of them came over to dwell
 in the land of Shamar & the land of ~~Shamar~~ ^{Shamar} did join themselves to the
 people of God ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~was~~ ^{was} the people of 2 that ~~people~~ ^{people} & they did also have
 their weapons of war according as their brethren had & they began to hear
 of the people of God & they did walk in the ways of the Lord & did observe to
 keep his commandments & his statutes & they did keep the law of God
 for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet
 for it was not all fulfilled but notwithstanding the law of Moses
 they did look forward to the coming of Christ considering that the law
 of Moses was a ~~type~~ ^{type} of his coming & believing that they might keep the
 law of Moses until the time that he should be re-
 vealed unto them now they did not suppose that salvation came by the
 law of Moses but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in
 Christ & thus they did obtain a hope through faith unto eternal salva-
 tion relying upon the spirit of prophecy which spake of those things
 to come & now he held them men & women & children & their
 brethren did rejoice exceedingly for the species which they had had
 among the Lamanites seeing that the Lord had granted unto them
 according to their prayers & that he had also multiplied his word unto
 them in every generation & that now there was the words of Shamar to
 his brethren ~~and~~ ^{which} ~~say~~ ^{say} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~brothers~~ ^{brothers} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~their~~ ^{their} ~~brethren~~ ^{brethren} ~~behold~~ ^{behold}
 say unto you how great reason have we to rejoice now could we have
 hoped when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have
 granted unto us such great blessings & now ask what great blessings he
 has bestowed upon us as we will be held answer for you for you
 brethren the Lamanites were in darkness & even in the darkest of days
 but he held them many of them are brought to be held the marvelous
 light of God & this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us
 that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring out
 out this great work he held thousands of them do rejoice & have been
 brought into the fold of God he held the field ~~is~~ ^{was} ripe & blessed are
 ye for ye did trust in the night & did wrap with your might ye
 all the day long did ye labor & he held the number of your names
 & they shall be gathered into the garner that they are not wasted
 they shall not be beaten down ~~at~~ ^{at} the storm at the last day ye
 neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds that

And I say, the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their abla-
ce that the storm cannot penetrate to them yea neither shall they be tri-
umphant with fierce winds with those who the enemy loveth to carry them but
behold they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest & they are his & he
will raise them up at the last day blessed be the name of our God let
us sing & let praise ye let us give thanks to his holy name for he doth
work mighty & marvellous signs in us for if we had not come up out of the land
of Zarahemla these our dearly beloved brethren ~~which~~ have so dearly
cherished us would still have been racked with hatred against
us yea & they would also have been strangers to God & it came to pass
that when ~~the~~ ^{the} men had said these words his brother Aaron rebuked
him saying Ammon I see that thy joy doth carry thee away unto hea-
ven but Ammon sayeth unto him I do not boast in my own strength
nor in my own wisdom but he hold my joy is full yea my heart
is brim with joy & I will rejoice in my God yea I know that I am
nothing as to my strength I am weak therefore will not boast of myself
but I will boast of my God for in his strength I can do all things yea
he hold many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land for which
we will praise his name forever he hold how many thousands of our
brethren ~~that~~ ^{that} he has saved from the pains of hell & that he brought to sing and
rejoice here & this because of the power of his word which is in us therefore
have we not great reason to praise him yea we have reason to praise him for
ever for he is the most high God & has saved our brethren from the chains of
hell yea they were encircled about with everlasting darkness & destruc-
tion but behold he hath brought them into his everlasting light
yea into everlasting salvation & they are encircled about with the ma-
teless haunts of his love yea & we have been instruments in his ha-
nds of doing this great & marvellous work therefore let us glory yea we will
glory in the Lord yea we will rejoice for our joy is full yea we will praise
our God forever he hold who can glory to much in the Lord yea who can say to man-
ok of his great goodness of his mercy & of his long suffering towards the children
of men behold I say unto you I cannot say he is small but which I feel
who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to
have snatched us from our awful sinful & polluted state he hold we
deserted with even in our state with mighty threatenings to destroy his Church
O then why did he not consign us to an awful destruction yea why did he
not let the sword of his justice fall upon us & damn us to eternal destruc-
tion O my soul almost as it were fleeth at the thought behold he

did not exercise his justice upon us but in his great mercy hath I
brought us over that everlasting yolk of death & misery even to the
salvation of our souls & now he hold my brethren what natural man is
there that knoweth these things? say unto our Father none that knoweth
these things save it be the Son whom you be that are planted in the earth
faith & bringeth forth good fruit & he bringeth forth continually without ceasing
unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God yea unto such it shall
be given to reveal things which have never have been revealed yea it
shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance even as
it hath been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance now
do ye remember my brethren that our said unto our brethren in the land of
Jaredhema our go up to the land of Ephraim to preach unto our brethren the Lamanites
they laughed us to scorn for they said unto us do ye suppose that ye can
bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth do ye suppose that ye can convince the
Lamanites of the iniquity of the traditions of their fathers as it is written a people
as they are whose hearts delighteth in the shedding of blood whose days have been
spent in the greatest iniquity whose ways have been the ways of a transgression
from the beginning now my brethren remember that this was their language
somewhere they did say let us take up arms against them that we destroy the
sons of their iniquity out of the land lest they overcome us & destroy us but he be
ld. our brethren that we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our
brethren but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of them ^{that}
now when our hearts were depressed & we were about to turn back behold
they did comfort us & said go amongst thy brethren the Lamanites & bear
with patience their afflictions & thou wilt find in ^{you} ~~the~~ success & now behold
old we have come & been forth amongst them & we have been patient in our
offerings & we have suffered every affliction yea we have travelled from house
to house relying upon the mercies of the world not upon the mercies of the world
alone but upon the mercies of God & we have entered into their houses & have
gladly them & we have taught them in their houses yea & we have taught them
upon their hills & we have also entered into their temples & their Synagogues &
taught them & we have been persecuted & mocked & spit upon & smitten upon our
cheeks & we have been stoned & taken & bound with strong cords & cast into pri
son & through the power & wisdom of God we have been delivered again & we have
suffered all manner of afflictions & all this that perhaps we might be the means
of saving some soul & we supposed that our day would be full if perhaps we could
be the means of saving some now behold we can look forth & see the fruits
of our labours & our they few I say unto you may they are many yea & we can

2nd instance of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren & also for
 as for what they had rather sacrifice themselves than even to take the life of
 their enemies & they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth because
 of their love towards their brethren & now we hold it up unto you for their ^{been} great
 love in all the land who is it say unto you may there be not even among
 the Nephites who would take up arms against their brethren they would
 not suffer themselves to be slain but would save many of them and laid down
 their lives for them ^{for} they have gone to their God because of their love & their ha-
 tred to sin now have we not reason to rejoice ^{we} say unto you that men
 men that had so great reason to rejoice as we since the world began & saying
 say is carried away even unto praising in my God for he has all power all wisdom
 full understanding & can do all things & he is a merciful being & even unto
 salvation to those who will repent & believe on his name now if this is praising
 even so will I praise for this is my life & my light & my joy & my redemption
 redemption from everlasting night & this is the name of my God who has
 been mindful of this people ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{is} a branch of the tree of ^{life} ~~the~~ ^{which}
 been lost from the land & a strange land & now I praise the name of my
 God who has been mindful of us wandering in a strange land now my brethren
 we see that God is mindful of every people in whatever land they may be in
 we see he numbers the hairs of their heads & he knows all the hearts now this
 is my joy & my great thanks in my God & I will give thanks unto my God forever
 Amen ^{Chapter XV}  ¹ ~~1~~ ² ~~2~~ ³ ~~3~~ ⁴ ~~4~~ ⁵ ~~5~~ ⁶ ~~6~~ ⁷ ~~7~~ ⁸ ~~8~~ ⁹ ~~9~~ ¹⁰ ~~10~~ ¹¹ ~~11~~ ¹² ~~12~~ ¹³ ~~13~~ ¹⁴ ~~14~~ ¹⁵ ~~15~~ ¹⁶ ~~16~~ ¹⁷ ~~17~~ ¹⁸ ~~18~~ ¹⁹ ~~19~~ ²⁰ ~~20~~ ²¹ ~~21~~ ²² ~~22~~ ²³ ~~23~~ ²⁴ ~~24~~ ²⁵ ~~25~~ ²⁶ ~~26~~ ²⁷ ~~27~~ ²⁸ ~~28~~ ²⁹ ~~29~~ ³⁰ ~~30~~ ³¹ ~~31~~ ³² ~~32~~ ³³ ~~33~~ ³⁴ ~~34~~ ³⁵ ~~35~~ ³⁶ ~~36~~ ³⁷ ~~37~~ ³⁸ ~~38~~ ³⁹ ~~39~~ ⁴⁰ ~~40~~ ⁴¹ ~~41~~ ⁴² ~~42~~ ⁴³ ~~43~~ ⁴⁴ ~~44~~ ⁴⁵ ~~45~~ ⁴⁶ ~~46~~ ⁴⁷ ~~47~~ ⁴⁸ ~~48~~ ⁴⁹ ~~49~~ ⁵⁰ ~~50~~ ⁵¹ ~~51~~ ⁵² ~~52~~ ⁵³ ~~53~~ ⁵⁴ ~~54~~ ⁵⁵ ~~55~~ ⁵⁶ ~~56~~ ⁵⁷ ~~57~~ ⁵⁸ ~~58~~ ⁵⁹ ~~59~~ ⁶⁰ ~~60~~ ⁶¹ ~~61~~ ⁶² ~~62~~ ⁶³ ~~63~~ ⁶⁴ ~~64~~ ⁶⁵ ~~65~~ ⁶⁶ ~~66~~ ⁶⁷ ~~67~~ ⁶⁸ ~~68~~ ⁶⁹ ~~69~~ ⁷⁰ ~~70~~ ⁷¹ ~~71~~ ⁷² ~~72~~ ⁷³ ~~73~~ ⁷⁴ ~~74~~ ⁷⁵ ~~75~~ ⁷⁶ ~~76~~ ⁷⁷ ~~77~~ ⁷⁸ ~~78~~ ⁷⁹ ~~79~~ ⁸⁰ ~~80~~ ⁸¹ ~~81~~ ⁸² ~~82~~ ⁸³ ~~83~~ ⁸⁴ ~~84~~ ⁸⁵ ~~85~~ ⁸⁶ ~~86~~ ⁸⁷ ~~87~~ ⁸⁸ ~~88~~ ⁸⁹ ~~89~~ ⁹⁰ ~~90~~ ⁹¹ ~~91~~ ⁹² ~~92~~ ⁹³ ~~93~~ ⁹⁴ ~~94~~ ⁹⁵ ~~95~~ ⁹⁶ ~~96~~ ⁹⁷ ~~97~~ ⁹⁸ ~~98~~ ⁹⁹ ~~99~~ ¹⁰⁰ ~~100~~ ¹⁰¹ ~~101~~ ¹⁰² ~~102~~ ¹⁰³ ~~103~~ ¹⁰⁴ ~~104~~ ¹⁰⁵ ~~105~~ ¹⁰⁶ ~~106~~ ¹⁰⁷ ~~107~~ ¹⁰⁸ ~~108~~ ¹⁰⁹ ~~109~~ ¹¹⁰ ~~110~~ ¹¹¹ ~~111~~ ¹¹² ~~112~~ ¹¹³ ~~113~~ ¹¹⁴ ~~114~~ ¹¹⁵ ~~115~~ ¹¹⁶ ~~116~~ ¹¹⁷ ~~117~~ ¹¹⁸ ~~118~~ ¹¹⁹ ~~119~~ ¹²⁰ ~~120~~ ¹²¹ ~~121~~ ¹²² ~~122~~ ¹²³ ~~123~~ ¹²⁴ ~~124~~ ¹²⁵ ~~125~~ ¹²⁶ ~~126~~ ¹²⁷ ~~127~~ ¹²⁸ ~~128~~ ¹²⁹ ~~129~~ ¹³⁰ ~~130~~ ¹³¹ ~~131~~ ¹³² ~~132~~ ¹³³ ~~133~~ ¹³⁴ ~~134~~ ¹³⁵ ~~135~~ ¹³⁶ ~~136~~ ¹³⁷ ~~137~~ ¹³⁸ ~~138~~ ¹³⁹ ~~139~~ ¹⁴⁰ ~~140~~ ¹⁴¹ ~~141~~ ¹⁴² ~~142~~ ¹⁴³ ~~143~~ ¹⁴⁴ ~~144~~ ¹⁴⁵ ~~145~~ ¹⁴⁶ ~~146~~ ¹⁴⁷ ~~147~~ ¹⁴⁸ ~~148~~ ¹⁴⁹ ~~149~~ ¹⁵⁰ ~~150~~ ¹⁵¹ ~~151~~ ¹⁵² ~~152~~ ¹⁵³ ~~153~~ ¹⁵⁴ ~~154~~ ¹⁵⁵ ~~155~~ ¹⁵⁶ ~~156~~ ¹⁵⁷ ~~157~~ ¹⁵⁸ ~~158~~ ¹⁵⁹ ~~159~~ ¹⁶⁰ ~~160~~ ¹⁶¹ ~~161~~ ¹⁶² ~~162~~ ¹⁶³ ~~163~~ ¹⁶⁴ ~~164~~ ¹⁶⁵ ~~165~~ ¹⁶⁶ ~~166~~ ¹⁶⁷ ~~167~~ ¹⁶⁸ ~~168~~ ¹⁶⁹ ~~169~~ ¹⁷⁰ ~~170~~ ¹⁷¹ ~~171~~ ¹⁷² ~~172~~ ¹⁷³ ~~173~~ ¹⁷⁴ ~~174~~ ¹⁷⁵ ~~175~~ ¹⁷⁶ ~~176~~ ¹⁷⁷ ~~177~~ ¹⁷⁸ ~~178~~ ¹⁷⁹ ~~179~~ ¹⁸⁰ ~~180~~ ¹⁸¹ ~~181~~ ¹⁸² ~~182~~ ¹⁸³ ~~183~~ ¹⁸⁴ ~~184~~ ¹⁸⁵ ~~185~~ ¹⁸⁶ ~~186~~ ¹⁸⁷ ~~187~~ ¹⁸⁸ ~~188~~ ¹⁸⁹ ~~189~~ ¹⁹⁰ ~~190~~ ¹⁹¹ ~~191~~ ¹⁹² ~~192~~ ¹⁹³ ~~193~~ ¹⁹⁴ ~~194~~ ¹⁹⁵ ~~195~~ ¹⁹⁶ ~~196~~ ¹⁹⁷ ~~197~~ ¹⁹⁸ ~~198~~ ¹⁹⁹ ~~199~~ ²⁰⁰ ~~200~~ ²⁰¹ ~~201~~ ²⁰² ~~202~~ ²⁰³ ~~203~~ ²⁰⁴ ~~204~~ ²⁰⁵ ~~205~~ ²⁰⁶ ~~206~~ ²⁰⁷ ~~207~~ ²⁰⁸ ~~208~~ ²⁰⁹ ~~209~~ ²¹⁰ ~~210~~ ²¹¹ ~~211~~ ²¹² ~~212~~ ²¹³ ~~213~~ ²¹⁴ ~~214~~ ²¹⁵ ~~215~~ ²¹⁶ ~~216~~ ²¹⁷ ~~217~~ ²¹⁸ ~~218~~ ²¹⁹ ~~219~~ ²²⁰ ~~220~~ ²²¹ ~~221~~ ²²² ~~222~~ ²²³ ~~223~~ ²²⁴ ~~224~~ ²²⁵ ~~225~~ ²²⁶ ~~226~~ ²²⁷ ~~227~~ ²²⁸ ~~228~~ ²²⁹ ~~229~~ ²³⁰ ~~230~~ ²³¹ ~~231~~ ²³² ~~232~~ ²³³ ~~233~~ ²³⁴ ~~234~~ ²³⁵ ~~235~~ ²³⁶ ~~236~~ ²³⁷ ~~237~~ ²³⁸ ~~238~~ ²³⁹ ~~239~~ ²⁴⁰ ~~240~~ ²⁴¹ ~~241~~ ²⁴² ~~242~~ ²⁴³ ~~243~~ ²⁴⁴ ~~244~~ ²⁴⁵ ~~245~~ ²⁴⁶ ~~246~~ ²⁴⁷ ~~247~~ ²⁴⁸ ~~248~~ ²⁴⁹ ~~249~~ ²⁵⁰ ~~250~~ ²⁵¹ ~~251~~ ²⁵² ~~252~~ ²⁵³ ~~253~~ ²⁵⁴ ~~254~~ ²⁵⁵ ~~255~~ ²⁵⁶ ~~256~~ ²⁵⁷ ~~257~~ ²⁵⁸ ~~258~~ ²⁵⁹ ~~259~~ ²⁶⁰ ~~260~~ ²⁶¹ ~~261~~ ²⁶² ~~262~~ ²⁶³ ~~263~~ ²⁶⁴ ~~264~~ ²⁶⁵ ~~265~~ ²⁶⁶ ~~266~~ ²⁶⁷ ~~267~~ ²⁶⁸ ~~268~~ ²⁶⁹ ~~269~~ ²⁷⁰ ~~270~~ ²⁷¹ ~~271~~ ²⁷² ~~272~~ ²⁷³ ~~273~~ ²⁷⁴ ~~274~~ ²⁷⁵ ~~275~~ ²⁷⁶ ~~276~~ ²⁷⁷ ~~277~~ ²⁷⁸ ~~278~~ ²⁷⁹ ~~279~~ ²⁸⁰ ~~280~~ ²⁸¹ ~~281~~ ²⁸² ~~282~~ ²⁸³ ~~283~~ ²⁸⁴ ~~284~~ ²⁸⁵ ~~285~~ ²⁸⁶ ~~286~~ ²⁸⁷ ~~287~~ ²⁸⁸ ~~288~~ ²⁸⁹ ~~289~~ ²⁹⁰ ~~290~~ ²⁹¹ ~~291~~ ²⁹² ~~292~~ ²⁹³ ~~293~~ ²⁹⁴ ~~294~~ ²⁹⁵ ~~295~~ ²⁹⁶ ~~296~~ ²⁹⁷ ~~297~~ ²⁹⁸ ~~298~~ ²⁹⁹ ~~299~~ ³⁰⁰ ~~300~~ ³⁰¹ ~~301~~ ³⁰² ~~302~~ ³⁰³ ~~303~~ ³⁰⁴ ~~304~~ ³⁰⁵ ~~305~~ ³⁰⁶ ~~306~~ ³⁰⁷ ~~307~~ ³⁰⁸ ~~308~~ ³⁰⁹ ~~309~~ ³¹⁰ ~~310~~ ³¹¹ ~~311~~ ³¹² ~~312~~ ³¹³ ~~313~~ ³¹⁴ ~~314~~ ³¹⁵ ~~315~~ ³¹⁶ ~~316~~ ³¹⁷ ~~317~~ ³¹⁸ ~~318~~ ³¹⁹ ~~319~~ ³²⁰ ~~320~~ ³²¹ ~~321~~ ³²² ~~322~~ ³²³ ~~323~~ ³²⁴ ~~324~~ ³²⁵ ~~325~~ ³²⁶ ~~326~~ ³²⁷ ~~327~~ ³²⁸ ~~328~~ ³²⁹ ~~329~~ ³³⁰ ~~330~~ ³³¹ ~~331~~ ³³² ~~332~~ ³³³ ~~333~~ ³³⁴ ~~334~~ ³³⁵ ~~335~~ ³³⁶ ~~336~~ ³³⁷ ~~337~~ ³³⁸ ~~338~~ ³³⁹ ~~339~~ ³⁴⁰ ~~340~~ ³⁴¹ ~~341~~ ³⁴² ~~342~~ ³⁴³ ~~343~~ ³⁴⁴ ~~344~~ ³⁴⁵ ~~345~~ ³⁴⁶ ~~346~~ ³⁴⁷ ~~347~~ ³⁴⁸ ~~348~~ ³⁴⁹ ~~349~~ ³⁵⁰ ~~350~~ ³⁵¹ ~~351~~ ³⁵² ~~352~~ ³⁵³ ~~353~~ ³⁵⁴ ~~354~~ ³⁵⁵ ~~355~~ ³⁵⁶ ~~356~~ ³⁵⁷ ~~357~~ ³⁵⁸ ~~358~~ ³⁵⁹ ~~359~~ ³⁶⁰ ~~360~~ ³⁶¹ ~~361~~ ³⁶² ~~362~~ ³⁶³ ~~363~~ ³⁶⁴ ~~364~~ ³⁶⁵ ~~365~~ ³⁶⁶ ~~366~~ ³⁶⁷ ~~367~~ ³⁶⁸ ~~368~~ ³⁶⁹ ~~369~~ ³⁷⁰ ~~370~~ ³⁷¹ ~~371~~ ³⁷² ~~372~~ ³⁷³ ~~373~~ ³⁷⁴ ~~374~~ ³⁷⁵ ~~375~~ ³⁷⁶ ~~376~~ ³⁷⁷ ~~377~~ ³⁷⁸ ~~378~~ ³⁷⁹ ~~379~~ ³⁸⁰ ~~380~~ ³⁸¹ ~~381~~ ³⁸² ~~382~~ ³⁸³ ~~383~~ ³⁸⁴ ~~384~~ ³⁸⁵ ~~385~~ ³⁸⁶ ~~386~~ ³⁸⁷ ~~387~~ ³⁸⁸ ~~388~~ ³⁸⁹ ~~389~~ ³⁹⁰ ~~390~~ ³⁹¹ ~~391~~ ³⁹² ~~392~~ ³⁹³ ~~393~~ ³⁹⁴ ~~394~~ ³⁹⁵ ~~395~~ ³⁹⁶ ~~396~~ ³⁹⁷ ~~397~~ ³⁹⁸ ~~398~~ ³⁹⁹ ~~399~~ ⁴⁰⁰ ~~400~~ ⁴⁰¹ ~~401~~ ⁴⁰² ~~402~~ ⁴⁰³ ~~403~~ ⁴⁰⁴ ~~404~~ ⁴⁰⁵ ~~405~~ ⁴⁰⁶ ~~406~~ ⁴⁰⁷ ~~407~~ ⁴⁰⁸ ~~408~~ ⁴⁰⁹ ~~409~~ ⁴¹⁰ ~~410~~ ⁴¹¹ ~~411~~ ⁴¹² ~~412~~ ⁴¹³ ~~413~~ ⁴¹⁴ ~~414~~ ⁴¹⁵ ~~415~~ ⁴¹⁶ ~~416~~ ⁴¹⁷ ~~417~~ ⁴¹⁸ ~~418~~ ⁴¹⁹ ~~419~~ ⁴²⁰ ~~420~~ ⁴²¹ ~~421~~ ⁴²² ~~422~~ ⁴²³ ~~423~~ ⁴²⁴ ~~424~~ ⁴²⁵ ~~425~~ ⁴²⁶ ~~426~~ ⁴²⁷ ~~427~~ ⁴²⁸ ~~428~~ ⁴²⁹ ~~429~~ ⁴³⁰ ~~430~~ ⁴³¹ ~~431~~ ⁴³² ~~432~~ ⁴³³ ~~433~~ ⁴³⁴ ~~434~~ ⁴³⁵ ~~435~~ ⁴³⁶ ~~436~~ ⁴³⁷ ~~437~~ ⁴³⁸ ~~438~~ ⁴³⁹ ~~439~~ ⁴⁴⁰ ~~440~~ ⁴⁴¹ ~~441~~ ⁴⁴² ~~442~~ ⁴⁴³ ~~443~~ ⁴⁴⁴ ~~444~~ ⁴⁴⁵ ~~445~~ ⁴⁴⁶ ~~446~~ ⁴⁴⁷ ~~447~~ ⁴⁴⁸ ~~448~~ ⁴⁴⁹ ~~449~~ ⁴⁵⁰ ~~450~~ ⁴⁵¹ ~~451~~ ⁴⁵² ~~452~~ ⁴⁵³ ~~453~~ ⁴⁵⁴ ~~454~~ ⁴⁵⁵ ~~455~~ ⁴⁵⁶ ~~456~~ ⁴⁵⁷ ~~457~~ ⁴⁵⁸ ~~458~~ ⁴⁵⁹ ~~459~~ ⁴⁶⁰ ~~460~~ ⁴⁶¹ ~~461~~ ⁴⁶² ~~462~~ ⁴⁶³ ~~463~~ ⁴⁶⁴ ~~464~~ ⁴⁶⁵ ~~465~~ ⁴⁶⁶ ~~466~~ ⁴⁶⁷ ~~467~~ ⁴⁶⁸ ~~468~~ ⁴⁶⁹ ~~469~~ ⁴⁷⁰ ~~470~~ ⁴⁷¹ ~~471~~ ⁴⁷² ~~472~~ ⁴⁷³ ~~473~~ ⁴⁷⁴ ~~474~~ ⁴⁷⁵ ~~475~~ ⁴⁷⁶ ~~476~~ ⁴⁷⁷ ~~477~~ ⁴⁷⁸ ~~478~~ ⁴⁷⁹ ~~479~~ ⁴⁸⁰ ~~480~~ ⁴⁸¹ ~~481~~ ⁴⁸² ~~482~~ ⁴⁸³ ~~483~~ ⁴⁸⁴ ~~484~~ ⁴⁸⁵ ~~485~~ ⁴⁸⁶ ~~486~~ ⁴⁸⁷ ~~487~~ ⁴⁸⁸ ~~488~~ ⁴⁸⁹ ~~489~~ ⁴⁹⁰ ~~490~~ ⁴⁹¹ ~~491~~ ⁴⁹² ~~492~~ ⁴⁹³ ~~493~~ ⁴⁹⁴ ~~494~~ ⁴⁹⁵ ~~495~~ ⁴⁹⁶ ~~496~~ ⁴⁹⁷ ~~497~~ ⁴⁹⁸ ~~498~~ ⁴⁹⁹ ~~499~~ ⁵⁰⁰ ~~500~~ ⁵⁰¹ ~~501~~ ⁵⁰² ~~502~~ ⁵⁰³ ~~503~~ ⁵⁰⁴ ~~504~~ ⁵⁰⁵ ~~505~~ ⁵⁰⁶ ~~506~~ ⁵⁰⁷ ~~507~~ ⁵⁰⁸ ~~508~~ ⁵⁰⁹ ~~509~~ ⁵¹⁰ ~~510~~ ⁵¹¹ ~~511~~ ⁵¹² ~~512~~ ⁵¹³ ~~513~~ ⁵¹⁴ ~~514~~ ⁵¹⁵ ~~515~~ ⁵¹⁶ ~~516~~ ⁵¹⁷ ~~517~~ ⁵¹⁸ ~~518~~ ⁵¹⁹ ~~519~~ ⁵²⁰ ~~520~~ ⁵²¹ ~~521~~ ⁵²² ~~522~~ ⁵²³ ~~523~~ ⁵²⁴ ~~524~~ ⁵²⁵ ~~525~~ ⁵²⁶ ~~526~~ ⁵²⁷ ~~527~~ ⁵²⁸ ~~528~~ ⁵²⁹ ~~529~~ ⁵³⁰ ~~530~~ ⁵³¹ ~~531~~ ⁵³² ~~532~~ ⁵³³ ~~533~~ ⁵³⁴ ~~534~~ ⁵³⁵ ~~535~~ ⁵³⁶ ~~536~~ ⁵³⁷ ~~537~~ ⁵³⁸ ~~538~~ ⁵³⁹ ~~539~~ ⁵⁴⁰ ~~540~~ ⁵⁴¹ ~~541~~ ⁵⁴² ~~542~~ ⁵⁴³ ~~543~~ ⁵⁴⁴ ~~544~~ ⁵⁴⁵ ~~545~~ ⁵⁴⁶ ~~546~~ ⁵⁴⁷ ~~547~~ ⁵⁴⁸ ~~548~~ ⁵⁴⁹ ~~549~~ ⁵⁵⁰ ~~550~~ ⁵⁵¹ ~~551~~ ⁵⁵² ~~552~~ ⁵⁵³ ~~553~~ ⁵⁵⁴ ~~554~~ ⁵⁵⁵ ~~555~~ ⁵⁵⁶ ~~556~~ ⁵⁵⁷ ~~557~~ ⁵⁵⁸ ~~558~~ ⁵⁵⁹ ~~559~~ ⁵⁶⁰ ~~560~~ ⁵⁶¹ ~~561~~ ⁵⁶² ~~562~~ ⁵⁶³ ~~563~~ ⁵⁶⁴ ~~564~~ ⁵⁶⁵ ~~565~~ ⁵⁶⁶ ~~566~~ ⁵⁶⁷ ~~567~~ ⁵⁶⁸ ~~568~~ ⁵⁶⁹ ~~569~~ ⁵⁷⁰ ~~570~~ ⁵⁷¹ ~~571~~ ⁵⁷² ~~572~~ ⁵⁷³ ~~573~~ ⁵⁷⁴ ~~574~~ ⁵⁷⁵ ~~575~~ ⁵⁷⁶ ~~576~~ ⁵⁷⁷ ~~577~~ ⁵⁷⁸ ~~578~~ ⁵⁷⁹ ~~579~~ ⁵⁸⁰ ~~580~~ ⁵⁸¹ ~~581~~ ⁵⁸² ~~582~~ ⁵⁸³ ~~583~~ ⁵⁸⁴ ~~584~~ ⁵⁸⁵ ~~585~~ ⁵⁸⁶ ~~586~~ ⁵⁸⁷ ~~587~~ ⁵⁸⁸ ~~588~~ ⁵⁸⁹ ~~589~~ ⁵⁹⁰ ~~590~~ ⁵⁹¹ ~~591~~ ⁵⁹² ~~592~~ ⁵⁹³ ~~593~~ ⁵⁹⁴ ~~594~~ ⁵⁹⁵ ~~595~~ ⁵⁹⁶ ~~596~~ ⁵⁹⁷ ~~597~~ ⁵⁹⁸ ~~598~~ ⁵⁹⁹ ~~599~~ ⁶⁰⁰ ~~600~~ ⁶⁰¹ ~~601~~ ⁶⁰² ~~602~~ ⁶⁰³ ~~603~~ ⁶⁰⁴ ~~604~~ ⁶⁰⁵ ~~605~~ ⁶⁰⁶ ~~606~~ ⁶⁰⁷ ~~607~~ ⁶⁰⁸ ~~608~~ ⁶⁰⁹ ~~609~~ ⁶¹⁰ ~~610~~ ⁶¹¹ ~~611~~ ⁶¹² ~~612~~ ⁶¹³ ~~613~~ ⁶¹⁴ ~~614~~ ⁶¹⁵ ~~615~~ ⁶¹⁶ ~~616~~ ⁶¹⁷ ~~617~~ ⁶¹⁸ ~~618~~ ⁶¹⁹ ~~619~~ ⁶²⁰ ~~620~~ ⁶²¹ ~~621~~ ⁶²² ~~622~~ ⁶²³ ~~623~~ ⁶²⁴ ~~624~~ ⁶²⁵ ~~625~~ ⁶²⁶ ~~626~~ ⁶²⁷ ~~627~~ ⁶²⁸ ~~628~~ ⁶²⁹ ~~629~~ ⁶³⁰ ~~630~~ ⁶³¹ ~~631~~ ⁶³² ~~632~~ ⁶³³ ~~633~~ ⁶³⁴ ~~634~~ ⁶³⁵ ~~635~~ ⁶³⁶ ~~636~~ ⁶³⁷ ~~637~~ ⁶³⁸ ~~638~~ ⁶³⁹ ~~639~~ ⁶⁴⁰ ~~640~~ ⁶⁴¹ ~~641~~ ⁶⁴² ~~642~~ ⁶⁴³ ~~643~~ ⁶⁴⁴ ~~644~~ ⁶⁴⁵ ~~645~~ ⁶⁴⁶ ~~646~~ ⁶⁴⁷ ~~647~~ ⁶⁴⁸ ~~648~~ ⁶⁴⁹ ~~649~~ ⁶⁵⁰ ~~650~~ ⁶⁵¹ ~~651~~ ⁶⁵² ~~652~~ ⁶⁵³ ~~653~~ ⁶⁵⁴ ~~654~~ ⁶⁵⁵ ~~655~~ ⁶⁵⁶ ~~656~~ ⁶⁵⁷ ~~657~~ ⁶⁵⁸ ~~658~~ ⁶⁵⁹ ~~659~~ ⁶⁶⁰ ~~660~~ ⁶⁶¹ ~~661~~ <

—milited against them, & Harmon together will go to enquire of the Lord, & if he sayeth
unto us, ye shall come unto your brethren, we will go, & if he sayeth unto him, ye shall
not, we will go, we will go down unto our brethren, to me, will be their
slaves until we repair unto them the sugary pleasures & sins which we have com-
mitted against them, but Harmon said unto him, it is against the law of our
brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any
slaves among them, therefore let us go down & we will upon the mercies of our
Heavenly Father, but the King, said unto him, enquire of the Lord, & if he sayeth unto us
ye shall go, otherwise we will perish in the land, & it came to pass that
Harmon went to enquire of the Lord, & the Lord said unto him, ~~ye shall~~ get this
people out of this land, that they perish not, for I have had great hold on the
members of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Amalekites to anger against their brethren
to slay them, therefore get the out of this land, & blessed are they who shall in this genera-
tion, for I will forgive them, & now it came to pass that Harmon went & told the
King all the words which the Lord had said unto him, & it came to pass that they gather-
ed together all their people, yea, all the people of the land, & did gather together all the
in flocks & herds to be parted into of the land, & it came ^{into the} to pass that the land which divided
the land of Ephraim from the land of Gadi, & came even near the borders of the land
it came to pass that Harmon said unto them, he holdeth my brethren will go for the
into the land, ^{of your families} ye shall remain here until we return, & we will try the hearts of our
brethren, whether they will come into their land, & it came to pass that as Harmon was
going forth into the land, that he & his brethren met Alma, who in the place of which
which has been spoken, he holdeth that was a joyful meeting, now the joy of Alma
was so great, even that he was full of joy, he was small bowed up in the
joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength, & he fell again to the earth, now
it was not this evening, yea, he holdeth this joy, which none receive with him, he the truly
penitent & humble (section of happiness, now the ^{top of}) Alma in meeting his brethren
marvellously, & also the joy of Alma, & it came to pass that he holdeth their joy
was not that to exceed their strength, now it came to pass that Alma con-
ducted his brethren back to the land of Gadi, & into his own houses, it
came to pass that they were told the Chief Judge, all the things which had hap-
pened, unto them in the land of Ephraim among their brethren, & it came to
pass that the Chief Judge sent a hundred men throughout all the land, desiring
the voice of the people concerning the admitting ^{of} their brethren, ^{which} were the
people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, it came to pass that the people came saying, behold
we will give up the land of Asher, which is on the east by the Sea, which
joins the land beautiful, which is on the south of the land beautiful, & the
land Gershon is the land which we will give ^{unto} your brethren for an inheritance, &

and would not sell to him unless he first took the land of Gishon & the land of
that was a great battle between the land of Gishon & the land of Gishon, and
and of this year to take his army against them, but they should commit sin
to this their great sin came, because of their soul repentance which they had made
out of the many murders, & their awful wickedness & now he told them that will not do anti
now the thing that they may in the land of Gishon & will guard them from their enemies
by our mutual conditions that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us
that we may maintain our armies from it came to pass that when this man had heard
this he returned to the city of Gishon, & he went with him into the wilderness
where they had pitched their tents, & made known unto them all these things &
all these things which he had said unto them his conversation with Hamon & Maron & his brethren
became to pass that it did cause great joy among them, & it came to pass that they
dominate the land of Gishon, & took possession of the land of Gishon, they were called
by the Ephraim the people of Hamon, therefore they were distinguished by that name
ever after they were among the people of Ephraim, also named among the people
which were of the Church of God & they were also distinguished for their zeal
towards God & also towards men, for they were perfect in honor & upright in all
things, & in the end of the day they went into the land & they did look upon
shedding the blood of their brethren with the highest of their hearts, & they could be moved
did upon it to be as a sin against their brethren, & they never did do it upon death
with any degree of honor, for their hope & views of Christ & the resurrection, therefore
death was a punishment up to them by the victory of Christ over it, therefore
they would suffer death in the most approving & distressing manner which could
be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword on the Gyna
the 10 miles north of this they were a great & beloved people, a highly favored
people of the Lord, & now it came to pass that after the people of Hamon were estab
lished in the land of Gishon, a church was also established in the land of Gishon &
the armies of the Ephraim were returned & had the land of Gishon & all the
borders around about the land of Gishon, & he held the armies of the Samanites
had followed their brethren into the wilderness, & there a tremendous battle
was given such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land
from the time that he left Samaria many years of thousands of the Samanites
were slain & scattered a broad way, & also there was a tremendous slaughter
among the people of Ephraim, nevertheless the Samanites were driven & scattered, &
the people of Ephraim returned again to their land, & now this was a time that there
was a great mourning & lamentation heard throughout all the land, among
all the people of Ephraim, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands,
& also of fathers mourning for their sons, & the daughters for the brothers.

And he brother, in the father & thus the cry of mourning was heard among every one of
them mourning for their kindred which had been slain & now raised. This
was a season of blessing a time of solemnity & a time of much fasting & prayer
& thus ended the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Ephraim
& this is the account of Shemone & his brethren, their journeyings into the land of Ephraim
their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, afflictions, & their incomprehensible joy &
the redemption & safety of the brethren in the land of promise & now may the Lord, the
redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever & this is the account of the wars con-
tinuing among the Ephraim, & also the wars between the Ephraim & the Gadians &
the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended & from the first year to the
fifteenth, has brought to pass the destruction of many thousands & since then it has
brought to pass an awful scene of blood shed in the shadows of many thousands
are laid low in the earth, while the leaders of many thousands are mourning
in heaps upon the face of the earth & many thousands are mourning for the
loss of their kindred, because they want reason to say according to the promises
of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless woe, while many thou-
sands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice & exult
in the joy, yet & mention according to the promises of the Lord, that they are con-
signed to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never ending happiness &
thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin & transgression
& the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised
to increase the hearts of men & thus we see the great call of the diligence of men to
labour in the vineyards of the Lord & thus we see the great reason of sorrow &
also of rejoicing, sorrow because of death & destruction among men, & joy because
of the light of Christ unto life & that if there were an angel, & could have the wish
of mine heart, that he might go forth & speak with the trump of God, with a
voice to shake the earth, & cry repentance unto every people, if he would declare
unto every soul as with the voice of thunder, repentance & the plan of redemption, that they
should repent & come unto our God, that there might be no more sorrow upon all
the face of the earth. But behold I am a man & do sin in my wish, for I ought
not to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me, I should
rather ought to know upon my desires, the firm decree of a just God, for I know
that he granteth unto men according to their desires, whether it be unto death
or unto life, yea, I know that he doth unto ^{men} ~~men~~ great, doth unto them
things which are ^{unfathomable} ~~unfathomable~~ according to their wills, whether he will unto
salvation or unto destruction, yea, I know that good & evil he doth unto
all men, or he that knoweth not good from evil, is blameless, but he that know-
eth the good & evil, to him it is given according to his desire, whether he desire

I good or evil, life or death, joy or ^{removal} of longuence, now seeing that I know
 on these things, why I should have now that I perform the work to which I have
 been called, why I should I desire that I was an angel, that I could go forth
 all the ends of the earth, for I desire the Lord, that I might go unto all nations of their own
 nations, & tongue to teach, his word, & say in mine heart that he hath said that
 they should come, therefore, let us see that the Lord hath counsel in his wisdom, according
 to that which I see, & think I know that which the Lord hath commanded
 me, & I glory in it, it is not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord
 hath commanded, my glory is this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instru-
 ment in the hands of God, in bringing some soul to repentance, & this is my joy, &
 behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, & coming to the Lord
 their God, their souls filled with joy, then do I remember when the
 Lord hath said, I am merciful, that he hath heard my prayer, & then do I remem-
 ber his merciful arm which he extended towards me, & say, & also I remem-
 ber when the Captain of my guard, & I surely do know that the Lord did deli-
 ver me out of bondage, & he did establish his church, & say the Lord God
 the Lord God I believe, he said, & I have, & the Lord of Israel, did deliver them out of
 bondage, & say, I have always remembered the Captain of my guard, & I have
 indeed delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians, did deliver them out of
 bondage, & say that same Lord God, I have established his church among them, & say that
 same Lord hath called me by a holy calling, to preach his word unto this people,
 & hath given me much success, inasmuch as my joy is full, but I do not give
 my own success alone, but my joy is mine, & I because of the success of my
 brethren, ^{who} have been up to the land of Babel, behold they have labored
 exceedingly, & have brought forth much fruit, & how great I shall be therein, &
 and, now, when I think of the success of these my brethren, my soul is carried
 away even to the separation, & I join the hands, as it were, & great is my joy
 & now may God grant unto these my brethren that they may sit down in the king-
 dom of God, & rise all that ^{which} are the fruit of their labors that
 they may go no more, but that they may praise him forever, & may God
 grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken, Amen
 Chapter. xvi. Behold now it cometh pass that of the
 people of Shumen, under the labors of the land of Shumen, & also after the
 Lamanites were driven out of the land, & their dead were buried by the people
 of the land, now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of
 their numbers, neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered, but it came to
 pass that after they had buried their ^{dead}, also after the days of fasting & mourn-
 ing to prepare it was in the nineteenth of the month of the judges, ^{the people}

[illegible]

[illegible]

248 There is a God yea when the earth & all things that ~~are~~ upon the face of it, yea when
men know ye & also all the planets which move in their regular & orderly
motions that there is a Supreme Ruler in yet days go a boat leading away the
hearts of the people, lying lying, as to them there is no God & yet with ye deny
against all these witnesses & he said yea, will deny except ye shall show
me a sign & now it came to pass that Alma said unto him, he hold I am given
and because of the hardness of your heart, yea that ye will still receive the lie
it of the truth that thy soul may be destroyed, but he held it is better that
thou ^{thou} should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing
many souls down to destruction by thy lying & by thy flattering words
therefore if thou shalt deny again he hold God shall smite thee that thou
shalt become dumb that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more that
thou shalt not decree this unto any more man. Now he said unto him
I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God
& I say also that ye do not know that there is a God & except ye show me a sign
will not believe so with Alma sayeth unto him thou wilt give unto thee
for a sign that thou shalt be made dumb according to my words & it
was that in the name of God that ye shall be struck dumb that ye shall
no more have utterance now with Alma had said these words & he was
made dumb that he could no longer utterance according to the words
of Alma & now when the case came to ^{say} the heart, with his hand he wrote unto
Nehor saying and thou knowest of the power of a God in whom did ye
claim that Alma should show forth his sign & witness that he should off
first attempt to show unto thee a sign ^{he held} ^{would} he hath shewed unto you a sign
& now with ye dispute more & minister but from his hand he wrote saying
know that I am dumb for I cannot speak & I know that nothing can be
the power of God can be bring this upon me ye do not also know that there was a
God but he held he would have deceived me for he appeared unto me in the
form of an angel & said unto me ye do maintain this people for they have all gone
astray & they know not God & he sayeth unto me there is no God & he
taught me that which I should say & he have taught his words & he taught them
because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind & he taught them in such
a way that much success is in them & that is why he lieth that they were true
& for this cause I withheld the truth until I have brought this great case
upon me now when he had said this he receiveth that Alma should ^{and} ^{prophesy}
God that the case might be taken from him but Alma said unto him this
cause should be taken from thee thou shalt not again lead away the hearts
of the people therefore it shall be unto thee even as the Lord shall & it come

to pass that the cause was not taken off of Hönichan but he was 299
went out & went about from house to house a begging for his food and
the sinners of what had happened unto Hönichan was immediately publi-
shed throughout all the land yea the Israelites was sent forth by the
chief judge to all the people in the land declaring unto those who had
declined in the words of Hönichan that they must speedily repent for
the same judgments would come unto them & it came to pass that they
were all converted: the wickedness of Hönichan therefore they were all con-
verted again unto the Lord: this put an end to the iniquity of the manner
of Hönichan & Hönichan did go about from house to house a begging ~~and~~ for
his support & it came to pass that as he went forth among the people yea and
among a people ~~which~~ ^{who} had separated themselves from the Ishites & called
themselves Gomanites being lead by a man whose name was Goman &
as he went forth amongst them he told he was a nation & trodden down
even until he was dead & thus we see the end of him who perverted
the ways of the Lord & thus we see that the Lord will not suffer his
children at the last day but doth speedily drag them down to hell: now
it came to pass that after the end of Hönichan & Hönichan having received tid-
ings that the Gomanites were serving the ways of the Lord & that Goman
~~was~~ ^{the} Hönichan was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to idols
the Lord his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people
and was the cause of great sorrow to him to know of iniquity among his people
therefore his heart was exceeding sorrowful because of the separation of the Goma-
nites from the Ishites now the Gomanites had gathered themselves together in
a land which they called Hönichan which was east of the land of Goman
in which lay nearly bordering upon the sea shore which was south of the
land Goshon which also bordered upon the wilderness south which wilder-
ness was full of the Gomanites now the Ishites greatly feared that the Goma-
nites would enter into a correspondence with the Ammonites & that it would
be the means of great loss on the part of the Ishites & now as the preaching of the
word had had a greater tendency to lead the people to do that which was just
yea it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than
the sword or any thing else which had happened unto them therefore all
men thought it was expedient that they should by the virtue of the word
of God therefore he took seven men & Aaron & Oniah & Shimmi he did hear
in the church in Goman & he took the seven men with him
& a good number of Gomanites ~~which~~ ^{who} were at Hönichan & he also took
two of his sons now the eldest of his sons he took not with ^{him} his name

Let us now see the manner of these ~~things~~ ^{which} he took with him
I will now declare unto you the manner of these ~~things~~ ^{which} went with him among
the Garamites to preach unto them the word now the Garamites were descended
from the Lichites therefore they had the word of God preached unto them but
they were ~~not~~ ^{not} into great errors for they would not believe to keep the commandments
of God to live eternally according to the law of Moses neither would they
observe the ordinances of the church to continue in prayer & supplication
to God daily that they might not enter into temptation yea in fine they
did bring out the "ways" of the Lord in ~~many~~ ^{many} instances therefore for
this cause I will now his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto
them now when they had come into the land behold to their astonishment
they found that the Garamites had built ~~synagogues~~ ^{synagogues} & that they did gather
themselves together on one day of the week which day they did call the day
of the Lord & they did worship a ~~tree~~ ^{tree} in a manner which Alma & his brethren
had never beheld for they had a place built upon the summit of their young
spire a place of standing which was high above the head of the top they
would only admit one person therefore to ascend to worship
must go up the land upon the top thereof & kneel forth his hands
towards Heaven & cry with a loud voice saying Holy Holy God we believe
that thou art God & we believe that thou art Holy & that thou art a spirit
& that thou art a spirit & that thou wilt be a spirit forever Holy God we
believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren & we do not be-
lieve in the traditions of our fathers which were handed down to them by
the Lichites of their fathers but we believe that thou hast elected
us to be thy Holy Children & that thou hast made it known unto us that
there shall be no Christ but thou art the same yesterday today & forever &
thou hast ~~not~~ ^{not} elected us that we shall be saved whilst all around us
are elected too be cast by thy wrath down to hell for the which holy-
ness O God we thank thee & we also thank thee that thou hast elected us
that we may not be led away of the foolish traditions of our brethren who
did cast ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~them~~ ^{them} down to a ~~hell~~ ^{hell} which doth lead their hearts
to, may deliver them from the ~~same~~ ^{same} & again we thank thee O God that we
are a ~~chosen~~ ^{chosen} people & we do come down out of the wilderness his brethren
& his sons and heard these things they were astonished beyond all measure
for behold one man did ~~offer~~ ^{offer} up these same prayers now the
place was called by their name ~~synagogue~~ ^{synagogue} which being interpreted is the
holy stand now when they did offer up these same prayers the children
prayed unto God thanking their God that they were chosen of him & that he

did not stand them any after the traditions of their brethren & that their hearts
were not softened by the things to come which they knew nothing ab-
out & now the people had all of their affections of their brethren there
returned to their hearts, & now standing by their God again until they had assem-
bled themselves together against the holy stand to give up thanks after their
manner now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved for he saw that they
were wicked & a people ripe for perdition he saw that their hearts were set upon
gold & upon silver & upon all manner of fine goods yea & he also saw that the
their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting in their pride & he lifted
up his voice to Heaven & cried saying O how long O Lord will thou suffer
that thy servants shall dwell here behold in the flesh to behold such gross
wickedness among the children of men behold O God thy eye unto this & yet
thou dost not smothered up in thy pride behold O God thy eye unto this
with their mouths while they are stuffed up even to greatness with the vain
things of the world behold O my God thou hast appeared to their eyes & thou
hast let down thy commandments of gold & all their precious things, which they are
commanded with to behold thou dost set upon them & yet they cry unto
thee & say we thank thee O God for we are as heathen capable to do the will of thee
shall perish yea & they say that thou hast made it known unto them that thou
shalt be with us O Lord how long will thou suffer that such wicked
ness & iniquity shall be among thy people O Lord will thou give me strength
that I may bear with mine infirmities for I am infirm & such wickedness
among thy people is the pain my soul O Lord my heart is exceeding sorrowful
with their comfort my soul in Christ O Lord will thou grant unto me that
I may have strength that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which
shall come upon me because of the iniquity of this people O Lord will
thou comfort my soul & give unto me success & also my fellow laborers
who are with me yea & my brethren who are near & also my brethren who are
far from me yea & my two sons yea even all these with their comfort O Lord yea
will thou comfort their souls in Christ & will thou grant unto them that they may
have strength that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon
them because of the iniquities of this people O Lord will thou grant unto us that
we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ behold O Lord
their souls are precious & many of them are our dear brethren yea & our sons yea
our brethren & our children that we may bring them again unto thee
now I come to pass that when Alma had said these words that he clasped his
hands upon all they ^{who} were with him & he held & he clasped his hands up-
on them they were filled with the holy spirit & after that they did separate

LX

themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves, who either do
suffer or are what they should think, or what they should do, and still continue
wicked, for them that they should hang round, neither should they think of their
also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of affliction, save it was
as mentioned, when they go forth, now this was according to the prayer of Alma, &
this, because, he feared in his heart, that they did go forth, & began to be
with the word, had unto the people, entering into their synagogues, & into their
synagogues, when they did teach the word in their hearts, & came to pass, that after
much labour among them, they began to have success among the poor & the
of the world, they were cast out of the synagogues, because of the covetousness of
their opponents, therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues
to worship God, being despised & afflicted, therefore they were persecuted,
they were esteemed the ~~their~~ ^{brother's} adversaries, therefore they were persecuted to things
of the world, & the poor were in heart, now Alma was teaching & speaking
unto the people upon the hill Cumorah, there came a great multitude, unto him
~~where~~ ^{where} were there ~~where~~ ^{where} were hanging ~~where~~ ^{where} were in heart, he said
of their hearts as to things of the world, & they came unto Alma, & the one, which was
the most famous among them, saying unto him, he hold, what I hold, there is no
more day for you, & this is the end, because of this poverty, & covetousness
especially by you, & this is the end of your synagogues, which we
have laboured abundantly to build, with our own hands, & then have cast
us out, because of our exceeding poverty, that we have no place to wor-
ship our God, & he hold, what shall we do now, when Alma heard this, he
turned him about, & he immediately towards him, & he behold with great
joy, he hold, that their afflictions had brought them to things, that they
were in a preparation to hear the word, therefore he did say no more to the
multitude, but he stretched forth his hand, & said unto them, ^{to you} that he
hold ~~that~~ ^{that} were truly penitent, & would turn to the Lord, he hold that ye are
low in heart, & if ye be low in heart, ye will hold the Lord, he said, what
shall we do for me, we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship
our God, in holiness, we are poor, & ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, will
he in your synagogues only, & moreover, would ye suppose that ye must
not worship God only, and in a week of say, unto you, it is well, that ye are
cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, & that ye may learn
wisdom, for it is not necessary that ye should learn wisdom, for it is, be-
cause that ye are cast out, ^{that} ye are despised of your brethren, because of your
exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart, for ye are
necessarily brought to be humble, & now, because ye are compelled to be

247 This closing work in you, will not be believed in a manner, that ye can
 give place for a portion of my words, now we will compare the word unto a
 seed, now if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold
 if it be a bad seed, on a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief
 that ye will resist the spirit of the Lord, behold if will begin to swell with
 in your hearts, when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say
 within yourselves, it must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word
 is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul, & it beginneth to enlighten my
 understanding, & it beginneth to be delicious to me, now behold, would it not
 be merciful if your faith ^{was} sure, unto your joy, never the less it hath not grown up
 to a perfect knowledge, it is but as the seed smell it, & upon it, it begins
 to grow, & then ye must needs say, that the seed is good, for behold it, & smell it
 & if it smelt, it beginneth to grow, now behold, will not this strengthen your faith, for
 it will strengthen your faith, for ye will say, I know that this is a good seed, for be-
 hold it should not begin to grow, & now ye hold, ye say, I know that this is a good seed,
 & say unto your joy, how can it bring forth unto its own likeness, therefore if a
 seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore
 it is cast away, & now behold, because ye have tried the experiment, & plant-
 ed the seed, & it smelt, & it should grow, & it beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that
 the seed is good, & now behold, is your knowledge, is that if ye your knowledge is
 perfect, is that thing & your faith is dominant, this becometh your knowledge, that the
 word hath swelled your soul, & ye must know that it hath should ^{ye} know that your
 understanding shall begin to be enlightened, & your mind shall begin to be enlarged,
 then it will be said, say unto your joy, because it is right, & it is the true light
 is good, because it is so manifest, that ye must know that it is good, & now
 behold, if ye have tested this light, is your knowledge perfect, behold, say unto
 your joy, will this must ye enlarge your faith, for ye have only exercised
 your faith to plant the seed, that it might, by the experiment, to know if
 the seed ^{was} good, & be held in the soil, beginneth to grow, ye will say, let us
 nourish it, with great care, that it may not rot, that it may grow up, bring
 forth, but will ye now behold, if ye nourish it, with much care, it will
 rot, & will ye bring forth fruit, but if ye neglect the tree, & take
 no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root, & when
 the heat of the sun cometh, it will wither, & because it hath no root, it will
 wither, & will ye bring forth fruit, & now this is not, because the seed
 was not good, neither is it, because the fruit thereof would not be derived,
 but it is, because your ground is barren, ye will not nourish the tree, & will
 ye cannot have the fruit thereof, & thus it is, if ye will not nourish the

made known unto you what ye should do because of your afflictions & it
is spoken unto you what invitation to pursue your mind ye can be hath
in hearted you unto faith in to believe you even that we would have come
thither with us to stand the word in your hearts that ye may by the captain
of the church be admitted not have to hold that the great question which is in
your minds is whether the word be in the law of God or whether the word
shall be no more & ye also hold that my brother has proven unto you in
many instances that the word is in the law of God to salvation my brother
has called upon the church & Jesus Christ the Lord of the church through the Son
of God & also upon the words of Jesus Christ also he hath appealed unto the Holy
Ghost that these things are true & now he holdeth well testify unto you of my
sister that these things are true he holdeth & saith unto you that the Christ that
shall come among the children of men to take upon him the transgre-
ssions of his people & that he shall take on the sins of the world in the end
God shall speak upon it in bedient that an atonement should be made for
according to the great plan of the eternal God there must be an atonement made
on the earth mankind must unavoidably perish & all are hardened & small
in setting an atonement for which except it be through the atonement
which it is expedient & should be made for it is expedient that there should
be a great & last sacrifice & a sacrifice of many nations & hearts
not of one manner of sacrifice & it shall not be a human sacrifice but it
shall be an infinite & an eternal sacrifice now there is no man that
can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another man
if a man murdereth he holdeth with an atonement which is just & take the life of his
brother & say unto you my brother the law requires the life of him who hath mur-
dered & therefore a sacrifice which is not of an infinite atonement which
will suffice for the sins of the world therefore it is expedient that there should
be a great & last sacrifice & then shall there be in it is expedient that there
should be a stop to the shedding of blood then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled
and it shall all be fulfilled every law & all things shall be passed away
that hold in the whole meaning of the law of Moses which is pointing to that
great & last sacrifice that great & last sacrifice will be the Son of God & by
infinite atonement thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall be
true on his name this being the intent of this last sacrifice to bring about
at the home of many which overcomes the justice & brings about mercy
upon the man that they may have faith unto repentance & thus mercy
can satisfy the demands of justice & increase them in the arms of God
while it is that even with no faith in repentance is expedient to that

It has been spoken by Alma & his brethren were at one of the land & they
were in a manner and also into the land of Gashem to come to pass
that Alma & his brethren did minister unto them, now the people of the Gashem
were angry with the people of Gashem ^{to the} which were in Gashem & the people of
the Gashem, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Gashem
desiring them that they should cast off their land all those ^{which} came over
from Gashem to them, and so he he called out many thousands against them, &
now the people of Gashem did not hear their words, therefore they did not cast
them out, but they did receive all the power of the Gashem that came over unto
them, & they did now, in the night, did call the things, & did give unto them, and
for their iniquities, & they did administer unto them according to the measure
of their sins, they did stir up the Gashem to anger against the people of Gashem
and they began to mix with the Gashem, & to stir them up also to anger
against the people, thus the Gashem & the Gashem began to make insurrections
for war against the people of Gashem, & also against the Gashem, & he ended the
war with the Gashem, & he reign of the Gashem over the people of Gashem, the people of
Gashem departed out of the land of Gashem & came over into the land of Gashem
& gave place in the land of Gashem to the coming of the Gashem, that it might come
with the coming of the Gashem, & the coming of the Gashem, & that was named
a man he called the Gashem, & he set forth in the light of the Gashem, the
reign of the Gashem, an account shall be given ~~hereafter~~ of their iniquities.
Alma & his brethren & his brethren, & also the Gashem, & the Gashem, & the Gashem
returned to the land of Gashem after having been in bondage in the hands
of the Gashem, many of the Gashem to be in bondage, & as many as
were brought to bondage, were driven out of their land, but they
have lands for their inheritance in the land of Gashem, & they have taken
up arms to defend themselves, their wives, their children, & their lands.
Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquities of his people, & for the
wars, the bloodshed, & the contentions which were among them, having
been to declare the word of God, to declare the word among all the people
in saying to them, that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, &
that the hearts began to be hardened, because of the strictness of the
word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful, therefore he caused that
his sons should be gathered together, but he might give unto them
every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining
unto righteousness, and have an account of his
commandments, which he gave unto them according to
his own records.

Chapter XVIII

261

the Commandments of Alma to his Son Helaman
My Son Helaman, my words for I mean unto you that inasmuch
ye shall keep the Commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land. I would that
ye should do as I have done in remembering the captivity of my fathers, for they were
in bondage & were would deliver them except it were the God of Abraham & the
God of Isaac & the God of Jacob & he surely did deliver them in their afflictions &
now my Son Helaman, behold thou art in thy youth & therefore I beseech of
thee that thou wilt hear my words & learn of me for I know that when
soever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials & their
travail & their afflictions & shall be lifted up at the last day & I would not
that ye think that I know of myself, not of the temporal but of the spirit
not not of the carnal mind but of God now he hold I pray unto you of I had
not been born of God, I should not have known these things, but God hath by
the mouth of his holy angel made these things known unto me not of any man
things of myself, for I went about with the Sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy
the Church of God, but behold God sent his holy angel to establish by the way
& behold he spake unto us as it were the voice of thunder & the whole earth
did tremble beneath our feet & we all fell to the earth, in the morning
wind came upon us, but he held the voice said unto me arise & stand up &
stand up & behold the angel & he said unto me if thou wilt thou shalt be
destroyed & know more to destroy the Church of God & I came to pass that I fell
to the earth & it was for the space of three days & nights that I could not stir my
member then I had of the use of my limbs, the angel spake more things unto me
which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them for when I heard
his words if thou wilt, he destroyed of thyself, work no more to destroy the Church
of God it was struck with such great fear & amazement that I thought I should
be destroyed that I fell to the earth & I did hear no more, but I was not
dead, with a carnal torment for my soul was harassed up to the greatest degree &
washed with all my sins yeast did remember, all my sins & iniquities by which I
was tormented with the pains of hell & I saw that I had rebelled against my
God & that I had not kept his holy commandments & that I had murdered many of his
children or rather led them away unto destruction & as I saw that I had
been my iniquities that the very thoughts of coming into the presence of
my God did rack my soul with insupportable sorrow & I thought that I
could be banished & become extinct both soul & body & I thought that I
could not stand in the presence of my God & I thought that I could not stand

262th In these days & for three nights was I racked even with the pain of
a damned soul. It came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment while
I was thus racked up by the memory of my many sins behold I remembered also
to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of Jesus
Christ a Son of God to atone for the sins of the world now as my mind caught
hold upon this thought I cried within my heart O Jesus thou Son of God have
mercy on me who am in the gall of bitterness & am increased about by the
everlasting chains of death & now behold where I thought that I could remember
my pains in my heart was comforted up by the remembering of my sins as much
as I what say I what marvelous light I did behold I did my soul was filled
with joy exceeding as was my pain I said say unto you my Son that I have
been nothing so comforted as so better as was my pain I said again I say unto you my
Son that on the other hand there can be nothing so exquisite & excruciating as was
my ^{joy} ~~joy~~ & thus thought I saw even as our Father I did see God sitting upon
his throne surrounded with numerous concourses of angels in the attire
of singing & praising their God & my soul did long to be there but he held
my sins in mine I did stand again & stood up ⁱⁿ ~~up~~ & did manifest unto
the people that I had been born of God & from that time even until now I
have laboured without ceasing that I might bring souls unto repentance that
I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste that I might
that also be born of God & be filled with the holy Ghost & now behold I say
O Son of God do thou give me exceeding great joy in the fruit of my labours for
because of the man which thou hadst imparted unto me behold many have been
born of God & have labored and have testified & have seen eyes to see I have seen
therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken and do know & the more
eagerly they love of God we have been supported under trials & troubles of every
kind yet in all manner of afflictions ye & I have been delivered out of bondage
& from bonds & from death & I do hope I have him who will still deliver me
to know that I will raise me up at the last day to dwell with him in glory
ye & I will praise him forever for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt & he
has swallowed up the Egyptians in the sea & he led them by his power into
the promised land & ye & I have been delivered them out of bondage & captivity from time
to time & ye & I have also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem & he has
also by his everlasting power delivered them out of bondage & captivity from time
to time & I do hope to the present day to have always retained in remembrance
I do continue to remember also to have been delivered out of bondage & captivity

...but he hold up for the world all things that ought to be known as to the
doctrines of the gospel as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall come
down into the land of the living & ye shall know also that inasmuch as ye will not keep the
commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence now this is according
to his word & now, my Son Helaman I command you that ye take the records which
have been entrusted with me & inasmuch as ye will keep a
record of the people according as I have said unto the fathers of your house all the
things which have kept even or have kept them for a wise purpose
that they might be a record of the things which contain the prophecies
which are the records of the holy Scriptures upon them which have the prophecies
of your forefathers even from the beginning & he hold it had been prophesied
by your fathers, that they should be kept & handed down from one generation to another
& they should be kept & preserved by the hand of the Lord, until they should go forth unto
every nation kindred tongue & people that they should know of the mysteries
contained therein & now he hold, if they are kept they must retain their
brightness & they will retain their brightness & ye also shall all the plates
which contain that which is holy writ, now ye may suppose that this is a
necessity, but he hold, I say unto you that by small & simple things, as
great things, brought to pass, & small means in many instances doth confound the
wise & the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great & eternal
purpose & by using small means the Lord doth confound the wise & bring about
the salvation of many souls & now it hath been said, been written in fact that
these things should be preserved, or he hold they have enlarged the number
of the people & have given many of the secrets of their ways & brought them to
the knowledge of the Lord & the salvation of their souls & I say unto you
that it is not for these things that these records do contain which are the records
of the commandments in brethren could not have committed so many transgressions of the
commandments of the iniquitous traditions of the fathers & that these records which were
brought them unto redemption & that they brought them to the knowledge
of the Lord their God & to reside in Jesus Christ their redeemer & who know
not, but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them & a
also many thousands of our afflicted brethren the poor heathen, who are
now hardening their hearts in sin & iniquity to the knowledge of their God
I say now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me therefore
I shall not have & it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose
which as I have said is known unto God for all the counsel in wisdom on this.

[illegible]

I perceived that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled which he spake saying 26
 I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their wicked works & their
 abominations & except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth
 I will bring to light all their secrets & abominations ^{unto} the generation that
 shall hereafter possess the land & now my ^{eyes} saw we see that they did not repent
 therefore they have been destroyed & thus the word of God has been fulfilled & their
 secret abominations have been brought out of darkness & made known
 to us & now my Lord command you that ye retain all their oaths & their covenants
 & their agreements in their secret abominations & all their signs & their words
 & ye shall retain from this people that they know them not lest peradventure they
 should fall into darkness & ye shall be destroying all for behold there is a curse upon
 all this land that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness
 according to the power of God when they are fully ripe therefore desire that this
 people might not be destroyed therefore ye shall keep their secret places
 their oaths & their covenants from this people & only their wickedness & their
 murders & their abominations shall ye make known unto them & all shall teach
 them to abhor such wickedness & abominations & murders & ye shall also teach
 them that such people were destroyed on account of their wickedness & abomi-
 nations & their murders for behold they murdered all the prophets of the Lord
 who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities & the
 blood of these ^{prophets} ^{which} they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for avenge
 & now ye shall ^{make} ^{known} ^{unto} them their murders & thus the judgments of God did
 come upon them workers of darkness & secret combinations & ye shall be the same
 forever & ever until those workers of darkness & secret combinations be brought
 to destruction except they repent before they are fully ripe & now my Lord I desire
 the words which have spoken unto you that ye teach not these secret plans unto the peo-
 ple but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin & iniquity preach unto
 them repentance & faith on the Lord Jesus Christ teach them to humble them-
 selves to be meek & lowly in heart teach them to withstand every temptation of
 the devil with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ teach them to render homage
 of good works but to be meek & lowly in heart for such shall find rest to their
 souls. One member my Lord I learn wisdom in thy youth ye learn in thy youth to
 keep the commandments of God & ye are united to God for all thy support ye let
 thy doings be unto the Lord & whithersoever thou goest let it be in the name
 of the Lord let thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord ye let the affections of thy heart
 be joined upon the Lord for ever counsel the Lord in all thy doings & he will di-
 rect thee for good ye when thou liest down at night lay down unto the Lord
 that he may watch over you in your sleep & when thou risest in the morning

Let him be called a ^{thunk} ^{and} ^{if} ^{you} ^{do} ^{these} ^{things} ^{ye} ^{shall} ^{be} ^{lifted} ^{up} ^{at} ^{the} ^{last} ^{day} & now my Son I have somewhat to say concerning
the thing which our fathers call a ball or director or a compass called it
is a ^{rod} ^{which} ^{is} ^{being} ^{inter-} ^{pre-} ^{ted} ^a ^{compass} ^{to} ^{the} ^{Land} ^{promised} ^{is} ^{as} ^{be} ^{hold}
these cannot any man work after the manner of it unless a workman ^{which}
behold it was prepared to them unto our fathers the cause of ^{which} they should
travel in the wilderness & it did work for them according to their faith
in God therefore if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those
spindles should hold the way they should go behold it was done therefore they
had this miracle & also many other miracles wrought by the power of God
day by day nevertheless because these miracles were wrought by a small man
and ^{when} ^{it} ^{did} ^{show} ^{unto} ^{them} ^{marvelous} ^{works} ^{they} ^{were} ^{glad} ^{and} ^{forgot} ^{to} ^{increase} ^{their} ^{faith} [&] ^{diligence} [&] ^{then} ^{these} ^{marvelous} ^{works}
ceased & they did not progress in their journey therefore they tarried in
the wilderness and did not travel a direct course & were afflicted with hun-
ger & thirst because of their transgressions & now my Son I would that ye should
understand that these things are not without a shadow for as our fathers
were glad to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal)
they did not prosper because so it is with things which are spiritual for be-
hold it is ^{as} ^{ye} ^{shall} ^{be} ^{led} ^{to} ^{the} ^{word} ^{of} ^{Christ} ^{which} ^{will} ^{lead} ^{to} ^{your} ^{eternal} ^{glory}
which cannot to eternal bliss as it was ^{as} ^{ye} ^{shall} ^{be} ^{led} ^{to} ^{the} ^{word} ^{of} ^{Christ} ^{which} ^{will} ^{lead} ^{to} ^{your} ^{eternal} ^{glory}
compass which would have ^{as} ^{ye} ^{shall} ^{be} ^{led} ^{to} ^{the} ^{word} ^{of} ^{Christ} ^{which} ^{will} ^{lead} ^{to} ^{your} ^{eternal} ^{glory}
now I say that not a type in this thing for just as surely as this director did
bring our fathers by following its course to the promised land shall the word of Christ
if we follow ^{the} ^{same} ^{way} ^{as} ^{by} ^{and} ^{this} ^{rule} ^{of} ^{the} ^{word} ^{of} ^{Christ} ^{which} ^{will} ^{lead} ^{to} ^{your} ^{eternal} ^{glory}
of promise (O my Son do not let us be chastised because of the sinner of the way
for so we are with our fathers for as was it prepared for them that if they
would look they might live even so it is with us the way is prepared &
if we will look we may live forever & now my Son see that ye take care
of these sacred things ye see that ye look to God & live go unto the people &
declare the word & be sober my Son farewell Chapter XVIII

The Commandments of Alma to his Son Shiblon

O my Son give ear unto my words for I say unto you even as I said unto the
Laman that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper
in the land & inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be
cut off from his presence & now my Son I trust that I shall have great joy in you

because of your stedfastness & your faithfulness unto God for as you have been
remembered in your youth to look to the Lord your God and to hope that you will
remain in his presence his commandments for blessed is he that endureth to the end
I say unto you my Son that you have been remembered already because of the faith
fulness of your obedience & your patience & by long suffering among the people of the Gen-
tiles for I know that there were in those years & I also know that there were taken
for the world sake & there didst hear all these things with patience because the
Lord was with thee & now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee for
now my Son I think I would that ye should remember that as much as ye shall
put your trust in God ^{as} much ye shall be delivered out of your trials & your
troubles & your afflictions & ye shall be lifted up at the last day now my Son
I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself but it is the
spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me I could
not have known of God I should not have known these things but behold the
Lord in his great mercy ^{saw} that his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the
mouth of the tradition among his people ye shall have an angel face to face he
spoke with me & his voice was as thunder & it shook these walls in the ^{place} & also
to have the walls made three days & three nights in the most bitter pains & anguish
of Jacob & never until he did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy didst see
in a commission of my sins but behold I did cry unto him & I did find place to my
soul & now my Son I would that ye should know that ye may learn wisdom this ye may
I am going that there is another way now in a way man can be saved only in
& through Christ behold he is the life & the light of the world behold he is the
word of truth & righteousness & now a ye have begun to teach the word even so
I would that ye should continue to teach & I would that ye would be dis-
ciples & learners in all things see that ye are not lifted up unto pride ye
see that ye do not trust in your own wisdom among you much strength will be
shown but not outbursts & abuses that ye hide all your passions that ye may
be filled with love see that ye refrain from idleness do not pray as the Gen-
tiles do ye have seen that they pray to the head of men & to the priests
for their wisdom do not say O Lord I thank thee that we are better than
our brethren but rather say O Lord forgive my sins & remember my
brethren in mercy & acknowledge your own sinfulness before God at all times
& may the Lord bless your soul & receive you at the last day into his Kingdom
to sit down in peace now my Son teach the word unto this people be bold
my Son farewell Chapter XIX

The Commandments of the Lord to his Son Corianton

102 And now my Son I have somewhat more to say unto thee ^{that} what I
wrote thy brother for he hold have ye not observed the stediness of thy brother his
faithfulness & his diligence in keeping the commandments of God he hold have he
not set a good example for thee he then didst not give so much heed unto my
words as did thy sister among the people of the Lamanites now this is what
I have against thee thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength & thy mind
now this is not all my Son thou didst do that which was grievous unto me for
thou didst forsake the ministry & didst go over into the land of Laman amongst the
hordes of the Lamanites & for the ^{same} label ^{that} thou didst steal away the hearts
of many but this was no excuse for thee my Son thou shouldst have
tended to the ministry where with thou wast entrusted know ye not my
Son that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord yea & most
abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood &
denying the Holy Ghost for he hold if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it has
had place in you & ye know that ye deny it he hold this is a sin which
is unpardonable yea & whosoever shall stand against the light & knowledge
of God it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness yea & now my Son
that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness & now my Son ^{that} I would that
ye had not been guilty of so great a crime I would not dwell upon your
crimes to harrow up your soul if it were not for your good but he hold ye
cannot hide your crimes from God I would ye repent they will stand as a tes-
timony against you at the last day now my Son I would that ye should re-
pent & forsake your sins & go no more after the lusts of your eyes but ^{cross} ^{your}
yourself in all these things for except ye do this ye are in no wise inherit the
Kingdom of God I would ye take it upon you to cross yourself in these things
& I command you to ^{take it upon you to} ^{cross} ^{yourself} ^{in these things} ^{for} ^{except} ^{ye do} ^{this} ^{ye are} ^{in no} ^{wise} ^{inherit} ^{the} ^{Kingdom} ^{of} ^{God}

now my Son I would say some what unto you concerning the coming of Christ. He holdeth say unto you that it is not that exactly shall come to pass
among the living of the world yet he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation
unto his people & among my Elders this was the ministry unto which ye were
called to declare these glad tidings unto this people to prepare their minds
rather that salvation might come unto them that they may prepare the
minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming & now I will
say unto you some what on this subject behold ye marvel why these things
should be known so long before hand he holdeth say unto you is not a soul
at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming
is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto
this people as well as unto their children is it not as easy at this time for the
Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto as of unto your child
now as after the time of his coming now my Son here is somewhat more I
would say unto you for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resur-
rection of the dead he holdeth say unto you that there is no resurrection and more-
over I say in other words that this mortal does not put on immortality this cor-
ruption does not put on incorruption until after the coming of Christ he holdeth
he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead but he holdeth my Son resur-
rection is not yet unfolded unto you a mystery nevertheless there are many
mysteries which are kept that no one knoweth them save God himself but I should
witness unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know
that is concerning the resurrection he holdeth there is a time appointed that all shall
come forth from the dead now when this time cometh no one knoweth but God
knoweth the time which is appointed now whether there shall be one time or
a second time or a third time that men shall come forth from the dead
it mattereth not for God knoweth all these things & I am confident that I know that
this is the case that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the
dead now there must needs be a space between the time of death & the
time of the resurrection & now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men
from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection now whether there
is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not I shall not
discuss it this mattereth not all is as one day with God & time only is mea-
sured unto men therefore there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise
from the dead & there is a space between the time of death & the resurrection
now concerning this space of time what becometh of the souls of men in
that which I have inquired of the Lord to know & this is the thing I desire
to know & when the time cometh when all shall rise then I will know that

in to heaven but on the other hand it will be a resurrection on of the dead & the
the same but say that there is a resurrection between the resurrection of the body
the state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appoint-
ed of God that the dead shall come forth & be reunited both soul & body & be
brought to stand before God & be judged according to their works & this bringeth
about the restoration of those things which have been spoken by the mouth of
the prophets the soul shall be restored to the body the body to the soul & the
soul & the body shall be restored to its body & even a hair of their heads
shall not be lost but all things shall be restored to their perfect
frame is now my son this is the restoration which has been spoken by the mo-
uth of the prophets & then shall the righteous shine forth in the Kingdom of
God but behold an awful death cometh upon the wicked for they die as to
things pertaining to things of righteousness & they are in a state of misery & they
can inherit the Kingdom of God but they are cast out & assigned to partake
of the fruits of their labors in their works which have been evil & they drink the
drings of a bitter cup & now my son I have some words to say concerning the
restoration of which has been spoken & he hold some have ^{written} the Scriptures &
have gone far wrong because of this thing & I perceive that thy mind hath been
misled also concerning this thing but he hold I will explain it unto thee & I say
to the my son that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God for
it is requisite that all things should be restored by ^{their} proper order & he hold it
requisite & I say according to the plan & resurrection of Christ that the soul of man
should be restored to its body & that every part of the body should be restored to
it & it is requisite with the justice of God that man should be judged accor-
ding to their works & if their works were good in this life & the desires of their hearts
were good that they should also at the last day be restored unto that ^{which} they desired
& if their works were evil they shall be restored unto him for evil therefore all things
shall be restored to them & I say that every thing which is natural come mortality
raised to immortality & corruption to incorruption raised to endless happiness to inherit
the Kingdom of God or to endless misery to inherit the Kingdom of the devil
the one on one hand the other on the other the one raised to happiness according to
his desires of happiness or good according to his desires of God & the other to evil ac-
cording to his desires of evil for as he has desired to do evil all the day long & now
shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh & it is on the other
if he hath repented of his sin & desired right & sought until the night

[illegible]

for the his hand immediately to part with of the tree of life, he would have
and have according to the word of God, having no space for repentance
and he would have been said to the great plan of salvation were
it not that he had said that he held it was of himself to man to die. The
fact as they were cut off from the tree of life, therefore they should be cut
off from the face of the earth. Men became lost, for in this they became
lost, now we see by this that can live, but we cut off both temporal
and eternal life from the presence of the Lord, that we see they became sad
for they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, therefore it was expedi-
ent that mankind should be retained from this temporal death, for that would destroy
the great plan, happiness, therefore as the soul could never die, the fall
had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that
is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, therefore it was expedi-
ent that mankind should be retained from this spiritual death, that
as they had become carnal, sensual & devilish, by nature, this probation-
ary state became a state for them to perfect it became a probationary
state, now remembering, my Son, if it were not for the plan of redemption
by which it could be as soon as they were dead, their souls were miserable,
being cut off from the presence of the Lord, & now there was no means
of obtaining from this fallen state, which man had brought upon him-
self because of his own disobedience, therefore according to justice, the
plan of redemption could not be brought about only on conditions, for the
law of nature, this probationary state, for except it were for these condi-
tions, no law could not take effect, except it should destroy the work of justice,
or now the work of justice could not be developed, if so God would be a liar.
God, & thus we see that all mankind were fallen, & they were in the grasp of
the law, & the law of God which consigned their souls to be cut off
from his presence, now the law of mercy could not be brought about, ex-
cept a covenant should be made, therefore God himself stooped for the
sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appear the demands
of justice, that God might be a perfectly just God, & merciful God, also
merciful, because could not come unto men, except there were a punishment, which
was as eternal as the life of the soul, it should be offered opposite to the
plan of happiness, so high was a eternal also as the life of the soul, now
could a man suffer, except he should die, how could he live if there was
no law? how could there be a law, save there was a punishment? now there was a
punishment offered, & a just law given, which brought a man of conscience
unto man, now if there was no law given, if a man understood the school

It has been appointed to be the chief Captain over the Ephraim, now the chief Captain took
the command of all the armies of the Ephraim, his name was Moroni. He now took all
the command of the governments of their wars, he was only twenty years old when
he was appointed Chief Captain over the armies of the Ephraim, it came to pass that he met the
Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, & his people were armed with swords & with stones
these & all manner of weapons of war, ~~but~~ ^{when} the armies of the Lamanites
saw that the people of the Ephraim had prepared his people with breastplates
& with shields, ~~and~~ ^{also} shields to defend their heads, & also they were dressed with
thick clothing, now the army of Jershon was not prepared with any such thing
they had all their swords, their spears, their bows & their arrows, their darts & their slings,
but they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins, & all
were naked save it were the garments of the women & the children, but they were not armed
with breastplates, nor shields, therefore they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Ephraim,
the heads of their armies, not withstanding their number being somewhat greater than
the Ephraim, he held them, & came to pass that they durst not come against the Ephraim
in the borders of Jershon, therefore they departed out of the land of Jershon into the
wilderness to seek their journey, & came to a head in the wilderness, a way by the head of the
River Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti to take possession of the
land, for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know where they
had gone, but it came to pass soon as they had departed into the wilderness, Moroni
spies into the wilderness to watch their camp, & Moroni, who knowing of the prophecies of the
Prophet Isaiah, men unto him that he should inquire of the Lord with the Urim & Thummim
of the Ephraim should go to defend them, where against the Lamanites it came to pass that
the word of the Lord came unto Alma, & Alma informed the messengers of Moroni that
the armies of the Lamanites were moving round about in the wilderness, that they were
about to come into the land of Manti, that they might come and attack upon the more
weak part of the people, & these messengers went & delivered the message unto Moroni
now Moroni, having a part of his army in the land of Jershon, he by angels & a
part of the Lamanites should come into that land to take possession of the City of Jershon
took the remainder part of his army & marched even to the land of Manti, he came
that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle
with the Lamanites to defend their lands, to their country, their rights & their liberties,
therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites, it came to
pass that Moroni caused that his army should be recruited in the valley which was
near the bank of the River Sidon, which was on the east of the River Sidon in the
wilderness, & he caused spies round about that he might know when the camp of

The Lamanites should come to know as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites of
that it was their ^{intention} to destroy their brethren on to subject them & bring them into an
adage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land & he also
knewing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands their liberty
& their church therefore he thought it was well that he should defend them by strat-
egies therefore he found by his spies which cause the Lamanites were to take their
post he divided his army & brought a part over into the valley & concealed them on
the east & on the south of the hill which the Lamanites he concealed in the
west valley on the north of the river Sidon & so down into the border of the land
Manti's thus having placed his army according to his desire he was prepared to
meet them & came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill
a part of the army of Moroni was concealed & it seemed as if as the Lamanites
had passed the hill which came into the valley & began to cross the river Sidon
the army which was concealed on the south of the hill which was led by a man
whose name was Abish he led his army forth & encircled the Lamanites at
and on the east in their rear & came to pass that the Lamanites when they
saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear turned them about & began
to contend with the army of Abish & the work of death commenced on both parts but
it was intended in the favor of the Lamanites for their wickedness was exposed to the
heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords & their spears which brought down
a mortal among them & he fell on the other hand there was another man who fell among
the Nephites by their swords & the loss of blood they being shielded from the mortal
part of the body being shielded from the shock of the Lamanites by their breast-
plates & their iron shields & their heads & thus the Nephites did give on the work
of death among the Lamanites & it came to pass that the Lamanites became fright-
ened because of the great destruction among them even until they began to flee
towards the river Sidon & they were pursued by Abish & his men & they were driven
by Abish into the waters of Sidon & they crossed the waters of Sidon & Abish
led his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross
it & come to pass that Moroni with his army met the Lamanites in the valley on the
side of the river Sidon & it came to pass that Moroni began to fall upon them
& to slay them & it came to pass that the Lamanites did flee again before them toward
the land of Manti's they were met again by the army of Moroni now in this case
the Lamanites did fight exceedingly & a great number of the Lamanites were known to
be slain with the sword including the strength & courage of the beginning of their
invasion by the Lamanites & the Amalekites & it was their chief captain & his
dearest by his name was their chief captain on their chief leader & captain

[illegible]

[illegible]

He broke it ^{into} ~~for~~ ^{them} ~~to~~ saying unto them with a loud voice saying hence
the goat shall fall to the earth which is the seal of your chief so shall ye fall to
the earth except ye will ^{with} ~~ye will~~ ^{weapons} ~~ye will~~ ^{ye will} depart with a covenant of peace
There were many who ^{heard} ~~heard~~ ^{these words} ~~these words~~ to save the seal which was upon the iron
~~There were~~ ^{There were} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~with~~ ^{with} ~~lean~~ ^{lean} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~many~~ ^{many} ~~carpets~~ ^{carpets} ~~th~~ th ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~throw~~ ^{throw} ~~down~~ ^{down} ~~their~~ ^{their} ~~members~~ ^{members} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~for~~ ^{for}
at the feet of Moroni & entered into a covenant of peace & as many as entered into
a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness now it came to pass that he
Jerahmiah was smiting another & he did slay of the remainder of his Gaudians to
argue to contend more powerfully against the Nephites & now Moroni was angry
because of the slaunder of the Lamanites therefore he commanded his people
that they should fall upon them & slay them & it came to pass that they began early
the next day the Lamanites did contend with their swords & their might they beheld
their naked skin & their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites
and he beheld they were pierced & smitten & did fall exceeding fast before the
swords of the Nephites & they began to be swept down even as the Gaudians & Mo
roni had prophesied now Jerahmiah when he saw that they were all about
to be destroyed Moroni mightily unto Moroni promising that he would come
out & also his people with them if they would spare the remainder of their lives they would
should come to join again against them & it came to pass that Moroni caused that the
works of death should cease again among the people & it came to pass that he took
the weapons of war from the Lamanites & after they had entered into a covenant
with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness now the number
of their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of the number & also
the number of their dead were exceeding great both on the Nephites & on the Laman
ites & it came to pass that they cast their dead into the waters of Sidon & they have
gone forth & are buried in the depths of the sea & the armies of the Nephites on the
Moroni returned & came to their houses & their lands & thus ended the eighteenth
year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi & thus ended the second volume
which was written upon the plates of Nephi. Chapter 21

The account of the people of Nephi & their wars & disensions in the days of
Helaman according to the record of Helaman which he kept in his days. Behold
now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced because the Lord
had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies therefore they gave thanks
unto the Lord their God & they did fast much & pray much & they did worship
God with exceedingly great joy & it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of
the judges over the people of Nephi that Helaman came unto his son Helaman & said
unto him behold these are the words which I spoke unto thee concerning these

was given with the sword which it came to pass that he sent his cause & he took the
spirit thereof & made up of it his testimony of our God our Religion & Freedom
from bondage & his name Children & he fastened it upon the end of a pole the
pole he fastened under his head plate & his breast plate & his shield & girted on
his name in his hand his name & he took the pole which had on the end thereof his
name & he called it the title of liberty & he bowed himself to the east &
he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his bre-
thren so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land for their
all the time belones of Christ who he belonged to the Church of God called by
those who did not belong to the Church & those who did belong to the Church
were faithful & all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them
the title of liberty & Christ on Christians as they were called because of their
faith in Christ who should come & therefore at this time Moroni fastened
the cause of all his name the freedom of the land might he fasten it & it came
to pass that when he had bowed out his soul to God he gave all the land
which was south of the land of Desolation & was in line all the land between
the mountains on the south & a barren land & the land of liberty & he saith surely
God shall not suffer that we who are despised because we take upon us the
name of Christ shall be laden down & destroyed with our being it upon us
by our ^{own} transgressions & when Moroni had said these words he went forth
among the people waving the sword & his garment in the air that all might see
the thing which he had wrote upon the rent & crying with a loud voice
saying behold whosoever will maintain this title upon the land let them come forth
the strength of the Lord & initiate a covenant that they will maintain their right &
their religion that the Lord God may bless them & it came to pass that when Moroni
had proclaimed these words behold the people came running together with their
arms & girted about their loins & sending their garments in token of a covenant
that they would not forsake the Lord their God on any other word & they bowed
themselves the Commandments of God & all intransgression & he as he had to
take upon them the name of Christ & the land should send them in as they had sent
their garments now this was the covenant which they made & they said their gar-
ments at the feet of Moroni saying our covenant with our God that we shall be
destroyed & we are now brethren in the land & if we shall fall into trans-
gression we may cast out the feet of our brethren & as we have cast our gar-
ments at the feet of Moroni & he has taken under foot if we should fall into transgression
Moroni would smite them & he held out a remnant of the seed of Jacob & we
are a remnant of the seed of Joseph whose cause was sent by his brethren in a
pursued to now he held let us remember to keep the commandments of God &
garments shall be sent by our brethren & we be cast into prison or be sold for
slavery & let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph & as a remnant
the seed of Jacob before his death for he held & he said that a part of the remnant

1834. The only thing that remained & had not decayed, ^{the seed of} the remnant
of garment of my Son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my Son
be preserved by the hand of God, & be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the
seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment, now he hold this garment
tho' my soul sorrow, never the less my soul hath joy in my Son become the first of
his seed which shall be taken unto God, now he hold the name the language of
Jacob, & now who knoweth what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall
perish as his garment are, those who have departed, from us, & a remnant shall
be us if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ, & now it came to pass, that
when Mononi had said these words he went forth, & also sent forth in all
the parts of the land, where there were dissensions & gathered together all the
people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah
& those who had dissented which were called, Amalickiahites
it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Mononi were more
numerous than the Amalickiahites, & he also saw that his people were doubting
and questioning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken, therefore
knowing that he should not gain the point, ^{he} took those of his people who man-
led to departed into the land of Ishmael, now Mononi thought it was no expedient
that the Lamanites should have any more strength, therefore he thought to cut off
the people of Amalickiah, & to take them, & bring them back to Jude Amalickiah
to his ^{own} ^{land} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{land} ^{of} ^{Ishmael} that they would strengthen the Lamanites to again
fight them, & cause them to come to battle against them, so that he knew that
Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes, therefore Mononi thought
it was expedient that he should take his army ^{which} that had gathered themselves
together, & armed themselves & entered into a covenant to keep the peace, & it
came to pass that he took his army & marched out into the wilderness to
cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness, & it came to pass that he had
according to his desire, & marched forth into the wilderness & he led the armies
of Amalickiah, & it came to pass that Amalickiah, led with a small number of
his men, & the remainder ^{which} were delivered up into the hands of Mononi & were taken
back into the land of Zarahemla, now Mononi being a man who was appoint-
ed by the chief judges, & the voice of the people, therefore he had power accord-
ing to his will, with the armies of the Nephites to establish & exercise authority
over them, & it came to pass that when he saw the Amalickiahites that would not
enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom that they might maintain

Thou shalt not be king & a leader over them being filled
in their minds with a delinquent revelation that they would not be subje-
cted to against the will of the king & it came to pass that they were gathered themselves
together upon the top of the mount which is called Antipas in preparation
to battle now it was the intention of the king to go down to the battle
according to the commandments of the king but he held it was his intention to
gain favour with the people of the Samaritans that he might place him-
self at their head & it was the king's intention to take possession of the kingdom & he
held it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the val-
ley which was near the mount Antipas & it came to pass that when it
was night he sent a secret embassy unto the mount Antipas desir-
ing that the leaders of them who were upon the mount whose name was Le-
honti should come down to the foot of the mount for he desired to spe-
ak with him & it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he
desired not to go down to the foot of the mount & it came to pass that Abinadi-
ah went again the second time, desiring him to come down & it came to pass
that Lehonti would not & he went again the third time & it came to pass that
Abinadi-ah would not & he could not get Lehonti to come down off
from the mount he went up to the mount nearly to Lehonti's camp &
he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti desiring that he
would come down & that he should bring his guards with him & it came to
pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Abinadi-
ah & Abinadi-ah desired him to come down with his army in the night
time & surrounded those men in their camp & even so when the king had given
him command & that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands & he
would make him Abinadi-ah's second leader over the whole army & it came
to pass that Lehonti came down with his men & surrounded the men of Abinadi-
ah so that he was awakened at the dawn of day & they were surrounded by the
armies of Lehonti & it came to pass that when they saw that they were sur-
rounded they fled with Abinadi-ah & he would suffer them to fall
in with them & it came to pass that they might not be destroyed now this was
the thing which Abinadi-ah desired & it came to pass that he delivered

288
and was being pursued by the king's army & the king's army by his
and gained the heart of the people & it came to pass on the morrow he
and the king's army with his army in look possession of the city & now it came to
pass that the queen ^{Queen} when she had heard that the king was slain ^{and} the king's army
had sent an embassy to the king's army ^{3rd} informing her that the king had been slain by
his servants that he had pursued them with his army but he was in vain
they had made their escape therefore when the queen had received this me-
sage she sent on to the king's army desiring him that he should appear before the
people of the city & she also desired him that he should come in unto her & she
also desired him that he should ^{bring} witnesses with him to testify concern-
ing the death of the king & it came to pass that the king's army took the 10 witnesses
and that when the king's army was with him & was in front of the
queen in the place where she sat & they all testified unto her that the king was
slain by his own servants & they said also they had fled & did not feel
against them & thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king & it
came to pass that the king's army sought the queen & took her on to
him to wife & ^{thus} by his hand & by the assistance of his cunning servants he
obtained the kingdom & he was acknowledged king throughout all the land
among all the people of the land the Lamanites who ^{Oh} were ⁱⁿ the land of the Lamanites &
the Nephites & the Ishmaelites & all the dissenters from the king's army from the
king's army down to the present time. now these dissenters having the same insti-
tution & the same information of the king's army & having been included in the
same knowledge of the Lord. now the Lord it is strange to relate not long after
the dissenters they became more hardened & impudent & more wild
in their opinions than the Lamanites ^{drinking} in with the traditions of the Laman-
ites giving way to idolatry & all manner of lasciviousness & entirely for-
getting the Lord their God & now it came to pass that as soon as the king's army
obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the
people of the king's army he ^{did} ^{men} appoint ^{men} to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers

24
against the Ishmaelites as it did inspire their hearts against the Ephraimites much
that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the Judges the having as-
sembled his men there for a long time he made king over the Samariaites
sought also to dispossess all the land & all the people which were in the land
the Ephraimites as well as the Samariaites, therefore he had accomplished his design as he
had resolved the hearts of the Samariaites he blinded their minds & stirred them up
to anger inasmuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle
against the Ephraimites he was determined because of the greatness of the ^{number} of his
people to encompass the Ephraimites & to bring them into bondage & thus he did appoint
his Captains of the Gileadites they being the most acquainted with the strength
of the Ephraimites & their strongholds & the manner of their cities therefore
he obtained them to be his Captains over his armies & it came to pass that they
took their journey & moved forth towards the land of Gilead in the wilderness
now it came to pass that while the Ephraimites had been obtaining their
preparation & the Gileadites on the other hand had been preparing themselves
of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God & as he had been strengthening
the armies the Ephraimites making small tents on a large desert & turning up
hacks & earth round about to encase his armies & also building walls & stone
to enclose them about round about their cities & the borders of their lands & he
all round about the land & in their weakest fortifications he did place the
greater number of men & thus he did in life & strength then the land ^{which} was possessed
by the Ephraimites thus he was preparing to oppress their liberty their lands their
wives & their children & their peace & that they might live unto the Lord their God &
that they might remain in that which was called by their enemies the Cause of Chri-
stians & moreover was a strong & a mighty man he was a man of a perfect under-
standing & a man that did not delight in bloodshed a man whose soul did
fight for the liberty & the freedom of his country & his brethren from bondage & shal-
low & a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God for the
many privileges & blessings which he bestowed upon his people a man who
did not have exceedingly for the well fare & safety of his people & he was a

His manner he was given to the Father of Christ & he had sworn with an oath
 to defend his people his rights his religion even to the loss
 of his blood now he was able to, taught to defend themselves against
 their enemies even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary yea & they
 were also taught to name his name in all your & mine to resist the word except
 it were against your own except it were to preserve their lives & this was
 their faith that by so doing God would preserve them in the land in the
 words if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would preserve
 for them in the land yea & warn them to flee & to persevere for was according to
 their danger it also that God would make it known unto them when they should
 go to do, but themselves against their enemies & by so doing the Lord would
 deliver them & this was the faith of Ananias his heart did glory in it not
 in the shedding of blood but in doing good in preserving his people yea in keep-
 ing the commandments of God yea & assisting iniquity yea & with his people's
 sword all mankind becometh more & more should be like unto Ananias he held
 the strong promises of ^{would} shall ^{have} I shall have I have been shaken for ever of the Devil
 never shall I have one the heart of the children of men he held he was a man
 like unto Ananias the Son of Pharaoh yea & even the other Sons of Pharaoh
 as well as his Sons for they were all among God know he held the commandments
 he held he was no less sensible unto the people than was Ananias for they
 did more in the words of God & they did help all men who would
 maintain their words that they would with the people did humble the
 servants because of their words in so much that they were highly exalted
 in the Lord & thus they were, & contentful among themselves yea
 living for the space of four years but as I have said in the latter end of the
 ninth month yea in the twelfth month they were all amongst themselves they were
 compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren the Lamanites yea &
 in time there was never did cease for the space of many years with the Laman-
 ites notwithstanding their much reluctance now they were going to take

warfare against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood. ¹⁴⁶ And this was not all they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of the world of righteousness to meet their God, nevertheless they would not suffer to lay down their lives that their brethren should be massacred by the barbarous and savage who were as their brethren, and who had descended from them. Though it had not been so had some of them been joining the Lamanites and they could not have that their brethren should be slain on the blood of their fathers so long as their lives were in he should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was if they should keep his commandments they should be able to stand in the land of promise to live in the covenants of the fathers. ¹⁴⁷ And it came to pass in the tenth day of the month, Tlacuacalli, that the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Shinarump, and he said the city was a great city, and was situated on a river by the borders of the city. Then he said what should we do to shield them from the arrows of the Lamanites, for he said they fought with stones & with arrows. He said he said that the city of Shinarump had been rebuilt. ¹⁴⁸ He said again that it was in fact a built city, but as the Lamanites had destroyed it once before of the iniquity of the people, they supposed it would again become a city. ¹⁴⁹ For them, but he said he was their disappointment. For he said the Lamanites had dug up a ridge of earth, round about them, that it was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones & their arrows at them, that they might take a shot, neither could they come upon them, and it was by their plan of entrenchment at that time. The chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Lamanites in preparing their places of security, now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, ¹⁵⁰ because of the greatness of their numbers, ¹⁵¹ that they supposed they should be privileged to come upon them, as they had hitherto done, yea, they had also prepared themselves with shields & with breast plates, they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, preparing thick garments to come in nakedness, & being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily

242. ~~They~~ ^{they} again ~~subjected~~ ^{subjected} their brethren to the yoke of bondage on day to massacre
them according to their pleasure but behold to their uttermost astonishment
they were prepared in strong iron manner which never had been known among
all the children of Pechi now they were prepared for the Lamanites to battle
after the manner of the inclinations of Moroni's advice to pass that the Lamanites
on the Lamanite side were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation
for war now of King Amaliah had come down out of the land of Ephraim at the head
of his army perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked
the Ephraim at the City of Shimonah but he held he did care not for the blood
of his people but behold Amaliah did not come down himself to battle
but sent his Chief Captains to attack the Ephraim at the City of Shimonah
and Moroni had attended the management of affairs among the Ephraim
so much that the Lamanites were disappointed in their place of what they could
not come upon them therefore they were led into the wilderness to seek their
camp & marched towards the land of Ephraim knowing that to be the most secret place
for them to come upon the Ephraim for they knew not that Moroni had fortified
on had built forts of security among the City in all the land named about Ephraim
they marched forward to the land of Ephraim with a firm determination in their
Chief Captains came forward to look on east that they would destroy the
people of the City but behold to their astonishment the City of Ephraim which
had hitherto been weak & low had now by the means of Moroni become strong
yea even to exceed the strength of the City of Shimonah now he held that was wisdom
in Moroni for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the
City of Shimonah as the City of Ephraim had hitherto been the chief part of
the land therefore they would march thither to battle thus it was according to his
desires & behold Moroni had appointed Pechi to be Chief Captain over the men
at that City & it was that same Pechi which ^{fight} the Lamanites in the valley on
the east of the Jordan now he held it came to pass that when the Lamanites
had heard that Pechi commanded the City they were again disappointed for they
loved Pechi exceedingly more than the Chief Captains had recommended

and the Lamanites therefore they brought up their arms now behold the Lamanites could not get into the place of security by any other way save by the entrance because of the highness of the bank which had been known up to the depth of the side which had been digging round about some time by the entrance & thus were the Lamanites prepared to do so as they should attempt to climb up to enter the place by any other way by casting out stones & arrows at them that they were expected year after year of their most strong men with their swords & their stings to come down on who should attempt to come in to the place of security by the place of entrance & that were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites & came to pass that the Lamanites brought up their arms before the place of entrance by an old road which the Lamanites used to get into their place of security but which they were driven back from time to time in so much that they were slain with an immense slaughter now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Lamanites by the power they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies that they might have an equal show to fight should behold in their attempts they were swept off by the stones & the arrows which were thrown at them instead of filling up their ditches by pushing down the banks of earth they were filled up in a measure with their dead & mangled bodies that the Lamanites had all power over their enemies & that the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Lamanites until their chief captains were all slain & more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain while on the other hand there was not a single soul of the Lamanites which were slain these were about fifty to which were numbered which had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass but they were shielded by their shields & their breastplates & their headplates in so much that their wounds were upon themselves many of which were very severe & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness & it came to pass that they returned to the land of Lehi to inform them king Dondarich where a Lamanite by name concerning their loss & it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people because he had not obtained his desire over the Lamanites he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage yet he was exceedingly wrath & he did curse God & also Moroni & swearing with an oath that he would drink his glass & this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people & it came to pass

And that on the other hand, the people of Ishmael did thank the Lord their
God of his matchless power in delivering them from ^{the hands} of their enemies.
And the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of
Ishmael there was continual peace among them, & exceeding great pros-
perity in the Church, because of their heed & diligence which they gave unto
the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman & Shiblon,
& Corianton & Ammon & his brethren & Cygus & by all those who had been
ordained by the Holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance & sent forth
to preach among the people &c. Chapter XXII.

And now it came to pass that Ammon did not stop making preparations for
war to defend ^{his people} against the Lamanites, because that his mission
should be to preach in the wilderness. And the twentieth year of the reign of the judges
that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities there
about all the land which was possessed by the people of Ishmael & upon the top of these
heaps of earth because that they should be like towers or castles of timber built
up to the height of a man round about the cities & because that upon these
walls of timber ~~that~~ there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers
round about & they were strong & high & because towers be erected that
even looked these walls of pickets & because towers of stone to be built
upon these towers that the stones & the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt
them & they were prepared that they would cast stones from the top thereof according
to their pleasure killing & slaying them which should attempt to approach
near the walls of the city. Thus Ammon did prepare strong holds against
the coming of their enemies round about every city in all the land & because of this
that Ammon caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness
year & they went forth to drive all the Lamanites who were in the east wild-
erness into their own lands which were south of the land of Gashemla &
the land of Ishmael did arise a short course from the east sea to the west
sea & came upon that when Ammon had driven all the Lamanites out of
the east wilderness which was north of the land of the Nephites he
caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Gashemla & in the
land round about should go forth into the east wilderness even to the bay
near by the sea shore & possess the land & he also placed armies on the south

296:1 The reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of
Lephi, had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the
land of the north, the land of the south, which was divided upon the borders of the land
of which were on the borders by the sea shore, for to hold, the people which possessed
the land of the north did claim a part of the land of the south, they began
to have a contention ^{between} among them, inasmuch that the people of the north took
of arms against their brethren, they were determined by the sword to stop them, but
behold, the people which possessed the land of the south fled to the camp of the north, &
healed unto him for assistance, for to hold, they were not in the wrong, it came to
pass that the people of the north, which were led by a man whose name was
Morianton, heard that the people of the south had fled to the camp of the north, they were
expedient, careful, lest the people of the north should come upon them & destroy them,
therefore Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land
which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, & take
possession of the land which was northward, to hold, they would have carried
the people into a wilderness which would have been a cause to have been lamented, but
behold, Morianton, being a man of much cunning, therefore he was angry with one of his
servants, & he told upon him, that he would come to pass that the people should come over
to the camp of the north, & told them all things concerning the matter, & also concern-
ing their intentions to flee into the land northward, now behold, the people which were
in the land southward, & were many, heard that they would break to the northward,
therefore, & also were in heart, that they would obtain possession of that part
of the land, which was a large foundation, for various consequences among the people
of the north, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty, therefore, there
was an arm, with the name of the land of the north, Morianton, which was the
land northward, it came to pass that they did not head them, until they had come to
the borders of the land, & also being there, they did hear them by the narrow pass, &
then led he the people into the land northward, for the king of the north, & the king of the south,
it came to pass that the people which were in the land northward, which was led by a man
whose name was Morianton, did much to the people of the north, & the people of the south, was the
people of the north, which was inspired by the wickedness of the people of the south, that
a battle commenced between them, in the which, the people of the north did slay the people of the
south, & took them prisoners, & returned to the camp of the north, & there ended
the contention among the people of the north, & the people of the south, & the people of the north

[illegible]

And it was dark & came to pass that when the men did pitch their tents
in the borders of the land Bountiful & Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the
borders on the north to the sea & after this manner were they driven & it
came to pass that when the night had come Amalickiah his servant stole
out of the camp & went into the camp of Amalickiah & he held sleep
fast over them because of their much fatigue which was caused by
the labours & heat of the day & came to pass that Amalickiah privately
into the tent of the king & having to his heart he did cause the death
of the king immediately & that he did not awake his servants & he returned
again privately to his own camp & he held his men were asleep & he awoke
them & told them all the things that he had done & caused that his army
should stand in readiness lest the Lamanites had awoke & should come
upon them & thus ended the twenty & eighth year of the reign of Amalickiah
over the people of Zephthian & thus ended the days of Amalickiah
(Chapter XXIV)

And now it came to pass in the twenty & ninth
year of the reign of Amalickiah over the people of Zephthian when the Lamanites
were upon the land in the morning of the first month he held they found Amalickiah
was dead in his own tent & they also saw that Amalickiah was ready to
give them battle on that day & now when the Lamanites saw this they were
affrighted & they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward
and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek & sought
protection in their fortifications & it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah
was appointed king over the people & his name was Moroni thus king Moroni
was the brother of king Amalickiah & he appointed to reign in his stead &
it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain
those cities which they had taken by the shedding of blood for they had not
taken any cities save they had lost much blood & now Moroni saw that the
Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken
& those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of & also seeing
the enormity of their numbers Moroni thought it was not expedient
that he should attempt to attack them in their land but he kept his men
round about as if making preparations for war & he truly he was pre-
paring to defend himself against them by casting up walls round about
his preparing places of resort & it came to pass that he kept thus prepa-
ring for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen
his army & Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should re-
tain all the prisoners which fell into his hands for as the Lamanites

[illegible]

302 some means little. The men of the strong holds that they might gain
advantage over them to take again the city of Mulek determine to pass that they sent
messengers to the king of the Lamanites which predicted the city should be their leader
whose name was Gilead directing him that he would come on with his armies to
meet them upon the plains between the two cities but he held no abiding
place for a while would not come on with his army to meet them when the Lamanites
came to pass that they were having no success meeting them upon plain grounds the
before he resolved upon a plan that he might decay the Lamanites out of their strong
holds therefore he caused that his army should take a small number of men to march
down upon the plain at night by night marched into the wilderness
on the west of the city Mulek to the river where the guards of the Lamanites had
discovered a party there said later it was to catch their leader determine to pass that
the army of the Lamanites did march forth against his army supposing by the men
under a new plan because of the small number of his men but as his army saw
the army of the Lamanites coming on against him he began to retreat down by the
river then northward and came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee
they took courage & pursued them with vigour while his army was thus leading on
the Lamanites which were pursuing them in vain he held his army commanded that
a part of his army which were with him should march off into the city to the pass
east of it & there they hid themselves that which had time left to protect the city & all
that time was spent in the city of Mulek as the Lamanites had not time to pass
a part of the city Mulek with a part of his army while he marched with the remainder
to meet the Lamanites when they could return from the pursuit of his army
determine to pass that the Lamanites in pursuit of his army until they came near the city
of Mulek to where they were met by a small army which had been left
to protect the city from what was now to hold when the chief captain of the Lamanites
had beheld this with him he coming against them they were in much confusion
on both sides they should not obtain the city Mulek because of this should overtake
all them for they were wearied because of their march & the men of Mulek were
not weary the Lamanites did not know that his army had been in their way
with his army & all they heard was of his army men now he was not desirous
to overtake them till they should meet his army & his army did come to pass
that before the Lamanites had reached for they were surrounded by the people
by the men of Mulek on one hand & the men of Mulek on the other all of whom
were fresh & full of strength but the Lamanites were wearied because of their
long march & his army commanded his men that they should fall upon them

[illegible]

as you see it is said that there is a Devil who will be bold with it and so
was their counsel with my brother who have considered in hope have
thought that he shall goe to such a place but behold these things mattereth
not I am Sumner and a descendant of Isaac whom your fathers blessed
thought and of Benjamin of the tribe now Sam a bold Samanite be bold
but man hath been wronged to avenge this wrong & to maintain to obtain
their rights in a court and to the last my Epistle to Sumner now it came
to pass that when Sumner had received this Epistle he was very angry because
he knew that Sumner had a better knowledge of his hand yet he knew
that Sumner was a man that it was not a just cause that he had caused him to
wedged a man against the people of Ephraim so that I shall write you and have
sumner with him and he will undertake his purpose as I have stated in my
Epistle for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than
what he hath got be bold I know the place where the Samanites dwell guard
yourself in the time have taken Sumner as Sumner would not grant unto
my Epistle be bold I will give unto him according to my words and I will
deal among them until the staff be broken & once it come to pass that when
my word shall be made he shall be a man that he made among his men that
he hope he might find in an which man a descendant of Saman among these
that came to possess his land one whose name was Saman's son was one of
the servants of the king who was murdered by Samanite now Sumner
repaired that Saman's a small number of his men should go forth unto the
guards which were over the Ephraim now the Ephraim were guarded in the city of
Gid because Sumner could not Saman's small number of men which
was of Samanite go with him ~~to the city of Gid~~ where he was passing
Sumner went to the guards which were over the Ephraim & he said to them
coming & surrounded him but he said unto them fear not behold I am a
Samanite he said we have escaped from the Ephraim & they said unto him
fear not we will be brought with us now when the Sumner heard
these words they released him with joy & he said unto him give us of your wine
that we may drink & he said unto them that he was his taken wine with you
to me are wrong but Saman said unto them let us keep of our wine
till we go against the Ephraim to battle but this saying only made them more
ready to drink of the wine for said they we are wrong therefore let us take of the
wine & by doing we shall receive wine for our nations which will strengthen
us to go against the Ephraim & Sumner said unto them you may do according to
your desire & it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely & it was
as unto the Ephraim therefore they took of it more freely & it was strong having
been prepared in its strength & it came to pass that they did drink of the wine

288 B. ¹ And the people were in a drunkenness when Simon came to them, and the
thirty were all drunken, and in a deep sleep, they returned to Simon, &
told him all the things that had happened, now this was according to the
design of Simon, & Simon had prepared his men with weapons, & was
present to the City, while the ^{thirty} were in a deep sleep, & Simon & his
in the morning, when he awoke, he found those men that they were all armed
and to their weapons, & all those of their children, as many as were able to use a
sword, & when Simon declared all those prisoners, & all those things
which were in his hand, & Simon told him that they were the Lamanites, he told them
that Simon & his children would have slain them, but he told that was not the
desire of Simon, as still not delight in murder, on the other hand, he had
glad in the saving of his people, from destruction, for this cause, he might
bring them into subjection, he would not fall upon the Lamanites, & he told
in their drunkenness, but he had obtained his desire, for he had armed those
prisoners of the Nephites, & he told them that he had given them
again possession of those walls, which were within the walls, & then he came to
men which were with him to withdraw, & he told them to remove, & he came
of the Lamanites, now he told that he wanted in the night time, so that when the
Lamanites awoke in the morning, they he told that they were surrounded by the
Nephites, & that those prisoners were armed within, & thus they saw that the
Nephites had done unto them, & in these circumstances they found that it was not
expedient that they should fight with the Nephites, for their chief captains
demanded their reason, & when they brought them forth, & saw them, & the
head of the Nephites, & leading on many, now he told that now the day was
now he took those prisoners of many, took possession of the City, & he said that all the
prisoners should be liberated, & he told them that they did join the army of
Simon, & were a great strength to his army, & it came to pass that he did cause
the Lamanites, which he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labo-
r in strengthening the City, & he told them, & he told them that the City did not come to
pass that when he had taken the City, & according to his desire, he caused the
his prisoners should be, & he told them that he also guarded that City
with an army, & he told them that he did not withstanding all the
in the army of the Lamanites, he did protect all the prisoners, & he told them that
also maintained the ground, & the advantage which they had taken, & he told
to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, & to reclaim their rights, &
their privileges, many times did the Lamanites attempt to enslave them, & he told
by night, but in that attempt they did lose many prisoners.

many times did they attempt to administer their voice to the Affairs of
the City might discharge them with honor or with dishonor, but he told the
other were not allowed to remember the Lord their God in their best course of action.
They said it could be taken in their own way, they needed not partake of their
own, you should not take of mine, said the wife, they given to some of the
monks, but once, the people, this can have, that no person should be adminis-
tered as long, they said, this is mine would, justice, I am sure, it would not, but
none, said here, & that they did this all their lives, now I came to see that it was
impossible, but I must be made, I will not be attached to the City, I must not, but I
shall, the Lamenters had by this time, to demonstrate, in the City, I must not, until
it had become an unending stream, so that they were continually bringing new
floods into the City, & ^{all} new subjects, I am sure, & they could not, finally a new
year of the sign of the Judge over the world of 1581. XXVI

[illegible]

should, neither should they march down against the City of Zenobania 311
neither should they cross the head of Sidon river to the City of Sidon & thus with their
power they would be enabled to maintain their power within the land to have no more
any to pass in the second month of this year there was brought unto us many
provisions, from the father of them my dear Samuel & also there was sent
with us
two thousand men from the land of Zenobania & thus we were prepared with
the Lord through our mercies for them & also for their wives & their children
& the Lamanites thus being in great numbers daily & provisions arriving for our support
and they began to be joyful to begin to say forth if it were possible to have our
provisions for various strength now when we saw that the Lamanites began
to grow weary on this war we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect
at upon them & O that Antipater did that he should march forth with my little
band to a neighboring City as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring
City & we were to march near that City Antipater as if we were carrying forth
beyond the head of the river there we came to pass that we did march forth as
if with our provisions to go to that City we came to pass that Antipater did march
to the City as if we were carrying the provisions to maintain the City but he did
not march but he had sent forth with my little army & came near the
City Antipater & now in reality Antipater were stationed the strongest army of
the Lamanites & the most numerous did come to pass that when they had been in-
formed by their spies we came forth with their army & marched against us & it be-
came to pass that we did flee before them northward & thus we did lead away the
most powerful army of the Lamanites & went to a considerable distance in-
tending that when they saw the army of Antipater pursuing them with their mi-
nority they did not turn the right way to the City but they went to the north
and I think I can say that we may suppose that it was their intent to stay at
the place but they should have taken heed that they might not be surrounded
by our people & now Antipater in hearing of our flight did not march to follow us
but he held he was near & that he should not our taking heed Antipater
could take from the place we did camp the night & it came to pass that he was the
strongest of the Lamanites in bold the Lamanites were in great numbers now we were not
sufficiently strong to contend with the Lamanites would we have that my little
band should fall into their hands but we did continue our march & we
and march into the wilderness now they did not turn to the right hand to the
left hand we should be surrounded next morning would I turn to the right hand

1st The Lord said they should never take me & we could not stand against
them but by raising up would make them escape & thus we did flee
that day into the wilderness until it was dark & it came to pass that
when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us &
we did flee before them but it came to pass that they did not pursue us far
before they halted & it was in the morning of the third day on the seventh month
the 4th year when the Lamanites were invincibly Antipas we knew not but said in
our hearts when he told us that we should not let them have halted for the purpose that
we should come against them that they might catch us in their snare therefore
what saith my Lord will ye go against them in battle & now I say unto you
my beloved brethren I know that ye never had I see great courage my
brother amongst all the ~~brothers~~ ^{brothers} for as I said I was called them my sons for they
were all of them young men even so they said unto me latter he hold our feet
is with us & he will not suffer that we shall fall then let us go forth
we will not slay our brethren if they would let us alone therefore let us
go lest they should cut down the army of Antipas now they never had thought
yet they did not know death & they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers
than they did upon their lives & they had been taught by their mothers that if
they did not do it that God would punish them & they heard unto me
the words of their mothers saying we do not doubt our brethren know it came
to pass that I did return with my five thousand against these Lamanites who
had pursued us now behold the armies of Antipas had overtaken them
in a terrible battle had commenced the army of Antipas being weary be-
cause of their long march in so short a space of time were about to fall into
the hands of the Lamanites & had not returned with my five thousand they
would have obtained their purpose for Antipas had fallen by the sword &
many of his leaders because of their weariness which was occasioned by
the speed of their march therefore the men of Antipas being confused be-
cause of the fall of their leaders began to flee before the Lamanites & it
came to pass that the Lamanites took courage & began to pursue them & thus were
the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came on
upon their rear with his five thousand & began to slay them exceedingly in so
much that the whole army of the Lamanites had been turned upon Helaman
now when the people of Antipas saw that the Lamanites had turn-
ed ~~them~~ ^{about} about they gathered together their men & came again upon the

year of the summer he knew it came to pass that in the winter of 31
 the people of Antiparah & the other towns did surround the Samanites &
 did they themselves in such a manner that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons
 of war & also themselves as prisoners of war & now it came to pass that when they
 surrounded themselves up into us, he hold I mean held those young men who
 with me fought with me & saying list there were many of them slain but he held
 to me ^{great} joy there had not one of them fallen to the earth yet & they had
 fought as if with the strength of ^{yea} Goliath men were men known to have fought with
 such marvellous strength & with such ^{mighty} power that they fall upon the Samanites
 that they did fight them down for their cause but the Samanites delivered themselves
 up as prisoners of war & as we had no place for our prisoners that we could guard them
 to keep them here the number of the Samanites therefore we sent them to the ^{land of} Gharahunda
 & a part of those men who were not slain of Antiparah with them to the remainder
 I took & send them to my stronghold Samanites & took some men with me to the
 City of Landa & now it came to pass that I received an Epistle from the king
 the king stating that he would deliver up those prisoners & was willing
 that he would deliver up the City of Antiparah but I sent an Epistle
 unto the king stating that we were ^{our} forces were sufficient to take the City of
 Antiparah by our force & by delivering up the prisoners that City we should
 not suppose ourselves unwisely & that we would ^{not} deliver up any prisoners
 on exchange & the men who were sent to him he would not exchange prisoners
 therefore we began to make preparations to go against the City of Anti-
 parah but the people of Antiparah did leave the City & fled to the other City
 which they had possession of to fortify themselves & that the City of Antiparah fell
 into our hands & thus ended the twenty & sixth year of the reign of the good king
 & it came to pass that in the summer of the twenty & sixth year we received a
 supply of provisions & several additions to our army from the land of Gharahunda
 & from the land round about to the number of ten thousand men besides twenty
 of the Sons of the Samanites who had come to join their brethren my
 little band of ten thousand & now behold we were strong & we had also a
 plenty of provisions brought to us & it came to pass that it was our desire to march
 & go to battle with the army which was placed to besiege the City Cumani
 & now he held it with them unto you that we soon accomplished our desire
 & we went a strong force on with a part of our strong force & did surround
 by night the City Cumani a little before the night to receive a supply of

16. In the which the greater number of them were slain & the remainder of them broke through & fled, leaving to behold when they had fled & were come into the mountains they were taken & carried with speed towards the City. Our men & the soldiers did desire in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the City & behold we were again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. & like said is the name of our God for behold it is he that hath delivered us so that hath done this great thing for us now it came to pass that when Helaman had heard these words of God he was filled with exceeding joy, because of the goodness of God in preserving us that we might not all perish year by year but that his saints of them which have been slain have entered into the rest of their God. & he held now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the City for I think that he held that there was no way that we could lead them out of the City by our small hands. for he held that we remembered that which we had petitioned to do but we could not delay but in a way. I saw their strong holds & they were exceeding more numerous than was our army that we did not say so far as to attack them in their strong holds year by year it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining two parts of the land & the which we had retained of our possession. therefore it became expedient that we should make that we might receive more strength from the land of Gadi. which also came in supply of provisions & came to us that we did send an embassy to the Governor of our land to acquaint him of the distress of our people & it came to pass that we did mean to receive strength & provisions from the land of Gadi. but he held that he did not regard us but little for the Lamanites were always great strength, from day to day, & also many provisions & thus we were circumvented at this period of time & the Lamanites were rallying forth against us from time to time resolving by their might to destroy us nevertheless we could not come to battle with them because of their retreats & their strong holds & it came to pass that we did wait in very difficult circumstances for the space of many months even until we were about to perish in the want of food but it came to pass that we did receive good tidings & we were guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance & this is all the assistance which we did receive to defend ourselves & our country from falling into the hands of our enemies yea to contend with an enemy which was invincible & now because of these circumstances we could not, why they did not send more strength unto us we knew not therefore we were distressed & we were filled with fear lest by any means the judgment of God should come upon our land to our utter ruin & to the

notwithstanding the weakness of our arms yet we decline to cast of the hands ³¹⁹
as enemies be hold this is the thirtieth year, in the latter end & we are in
the possession of our lands & the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi & those
sons of the people of Shimon of which I have so highly spoken, are with me in
the city of Manti & the Lord hath supported them year & kept them from falling by
the sword inasmuch that everyone soul hath not been slain but he hold they have
received many wounds nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty where with God
hath made them free & they are bound to remember the Lord their God from day to day
yea they do observe to keep his statutes & his judgments & his commandments con-
tinually & their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come &
now my beloved brethren I desire that the Lord our God who hath redeemed us
& made us free may keep you continually in his presence year & that he may give
in this people even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all
that which the Lamanites hath taken from us which was for an inheritance now
behold I close mine Epistle I am the Helaman the Son of Helaman.

Chapter XXVII

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth
year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi after Helaman had received &
had read Helaman's Epistle he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the well
fare yea so exceeding success which Helaman had had in obtaining those lands
which were lost yea & he did make it known unto all his people in all the land round
round about in that part where he was that they might rejoice also & it came to
pass that he immediately sent an Epistle to Shimon desiring that he should
cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman on the armies of Helaman
inasmuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land
which he had been so miraculously prospered in obtaining & it came to pass
when Helaman had sent that Epistle to the land of Shimon he began again to
lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions which
the Lamanites had taken from them & it came to pass that Helaman was to
be making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle he hold the people of
Nephi which were gathered together from the city of Helaman & the city of
Manti & the city of Manton were attacked by the Lamanites yea & many of those
which had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti & the land around
about had come over & joined the Lamanites in this part of the land & thus
being exceeding numerous year & receiving strength from day to day by the
command of Shimon they came forth against the people of Nephi & they

by the sword but he said that we have withheld you. Brethren I tell
you that inasmuch that many among you have killed one their kinsmen because of
their great divisions which they had for the with you of this people yet & this they
have done when they were about to wish with things. because of your in-
ceding great neglect towards them is now now believed brethren for ye had
ought to be beloved and ye had ought to have slain your selves manfully
for the well for & the freedom of this people. but he hold ye have neglected
them inasmuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for
vengeance ye for known unto God are all. Their enemies all their sufferings he
hold can it ye suppose that ye could let of you. Brethren & because of the in-
goodness of God ye could do nothing. he would deliver you he hold if ye had
supposed this ye have supposed. I can do ye suppose that because so many of
your brethren have been killed because of this with you. ye have
ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain. For say unto you that there
are many which have been slain by the sword & he hold it is to your condemnation
for the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice & judg-
ment may come upon the wicked. Therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous
are lost because they are slain but he hold they do enter into the arms of the
Lord. Therefore it is now to hold & say unto you. I am persuaded that the judg-
ment of God will come upon you. because of this with you. I am persuaded
ye even the staff of our government is becoming. I am persuaded that
our brethren give that which have been slain for us is not for the with
advice which, but to commend us to our dead we could have withstood our ene-
mies that they could have gained no power against us. ye might not have for the
war which broke out among ourselves ye are now in war for these things men
which caused so much blood shed among yourselves ye are at the time we are content
ing among ourselves. ye are now united one thing that we have done to have done
ye had it not. I am persuaded because of the things which these things men
have done we had the permission to because of our freedom is with us. I am
gone forth against our enemies in stead of taking up our swords against us. which
was the cause of so much blood shed among ourselves. I am persuaded if we had gone forth
against them in the strength of the Lord we should have dispersed our enemies for
it would have been done according to the fulfilling of his word. but he hold
now the Samaritans are coming upon us. they are murdering our people with the
sword. I am persuaded our children are taking possession of our lands. also
carrying them away captive causing them that they should suffer all manner

1st afflictions & tribulations of the great multitude of those who are seeking for you
 in an iniquity, ye are worthy. Remember, I say, why should I say much concerning
 this matter, ~~but~~ ^{for} we know not but what ye yourselves are a sealing for authority
 we know not, but what ye are also leaders to your country, or is it that ye have
 neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country, & ye are surrounded by
 so many that ye do not care, lead to it, that we as a people men to strengthen
 our armies have ye forgot the commandments of the Lord, your God, ye have ye for-
 got the captivity of our fathers have ye forgot the many times we have been de-
 livered out of the hands of our enemies or do ye suppose that the Lord will still
 deliver us while we sit upon our thrones & do not make use of the means which
 the Lord hath provided, for we see well, ye sit in idleness, while ye are sur-
 rounded with thousands of those ye & tens of thousands ^{which do} also sit in idleness
 while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are
 falling by the sword ye wounded & bleeding do ye suppose that God will
 look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still, he holdeth these things be-
 hold, ye are now, however, and that ye should remember that the Lord hath
 said that the iniquities of the people be cleansed, but then shall the iniquities
 be cleansed, is now wrought by ye, ye are now, but which ye have done, begin to be
 up & doing & send forth, lead them unto us, as also unto Helaman, that he may say
 that those sons of men are which he hath obtained, that we may also receive
 the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that
 we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first been cleansed ^{inward}
 & made of us, even the great head of our government, & ye people grant me this
 & come and I shall take out a law, ye shall be strong, ye shall be
 our armies, ye shall take out of them food for their support, ye shall take out of
 of my brethren to maintain this part of our land, we will leave the strength
 of the blessings of God upon them, for none other power can oppose against them, &
 this because of their iniquities, but in that in their tribulations, we will
 come unto you, that we may say, that such a desire, for we are, ye are, &
 he even a part of freedom remaining, he holdeth it will sit up in positions among
 you, but not that who have desired to usurp power & authority shall become
 content, ye behold, do not fear your power, nor your authority, but it is my
 God whom I stand, it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword
 to defend the cause of my country, & it is because your iniquity that we have
 suffered so much loss, he holdeth it is time, ye the time in that hand, that we
 do, he holdeth himself in the defence of your country, & your little ones, & your

as he have fled to the land of Giddion with as many men as it were
possible that he could get to behold he have sent a proclamation through-
out this part of the land to behold they are gathering to us daily to their arms
in the defence of their country & their freedom & to avenge our wrongs & they have
said among themselves that those which have ~~not~~ ^{are} in rebellion against
us are set at defiance & inasmuch that they desire us to draw out ~~not~~
and ~~to battle~~ against us to battle they have got possession of the land of the
city of Jarabha they have appointed a king over them & he hath written unto
the king of the Lamanites in the which he hath joined an alliance with him
in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Jarabha
in the which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to
conquer the remainder of the land & he shall be placed king over this peo-
ple when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites & now in your Epistle
thou hast mentioned me but it matters not I am not angry but dis-
satisfied in the greatest manner I do not wish for power save
only to retain my judgment that that I may preserve the rights of the
people of my people my soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God
hath made me free & now he holdeth out will ~~not~~ ^{not} wickedness & evil and
I should shed we would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in
their own land and would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would
not rise up in rebellion & take the sword against us we would subject our-
selves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God or if he
should command us so to do shall he hold he doth not command us that we
shall subject ourselves to our enemies but that we should put our trust in
him & he will deliver us therefore my beloved Brother Mormon let us resist
evil & what is evil we cannot resist with our words yet such as rebellion
& dissensions let us resist them with our words that we may retain
our freedom that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our Church & in
the counsel of our Redeemer & our God merciful come unto me speedily with a
few of your men & leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi & Lamoni
unto them to conduct them as in that part of the land according to the
law of God which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them he holdeth
I should send a few provisions unto them that they may not lack until I can ac-
company them & then whatsoever I can upon your march I will
send against them dissent in the strength of our God according to

the faith which is in us will take possession of the City of Zarahemla 325
that we may obtain some seed to send forth unto the heathen. ye will go
forth against them in the strength of the Lord & we will put an end to this great
iniquity. Now Moroni did say in convincing you & his little sons was somewhat
convinced concerning what we should do, what they should be just in us to go ag-
ainst our brethren, but ye have said except they repent the Lord hath commanded
you that ye should go against them. See that ye strengthen the Lord & I will command in the
Lord, tell them to fear not for God will deliver them, & ye also all those who
stand fast in that liberty which with God hath made them free & now I have
written Epistle writing, beloved brethren. Moroni Chapter XIX

Second now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this Epistle
his heart did take courage & was filled with exceeding joy, because of the faith
of Joshua & Pharon that he was not also a traitor to the freedom because of his con-
science but he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had
driven Pharon from the judgment seat & in his time because of those who had rebel-
led against the Lord & also this. And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number
of men according to the desire of Joshua & Pharon, & commanded ^{men} the
remainder of his army to take ^{his} march towards the land of Judah & he did
raise the standard of liberty in what was called the land of Judah against what was
called the land of the king. He could in all his march towards the land of Judah & it came to pass that
thousands did flock unto his standard & did take up their arms in the defence
of their freedom that they might not come into bondage. Thus when Moroni
had gathered together what was men he could in all his march become to the
land of Judah & uniting his forces with that of the heathen they became exceeding
strong ^{stronger} than the men of the king, which was the king of those dissenters
which had driven out the government of the land of Zarahemla & had taken
possession of the land & it came to pass that Moroni & Pharon went down with their
armies into the land of Zarahemla & met forth against the City & did meet the
men of the king inasmuch that they did come to battle & behold the king was
slain & his men were taken prisoners. Pharon was restored to his judgment
seat & the men of the king received their trial according to the law & also those
kingmen which had been taken & cast into prison & they were executed ac-
cording to the law & as those men of the king & those kingmen who were
not taken up arms in defence of their country but would fight against it were
put to death & thus it became expedient that the law should be strictly ob-
served

But for the safety of their souls, ye who are now found a denying their
freedom, are speedily executed according to the law & thus ended the thirtieth year
of the reign of the judges and the people of Zephi Monon's & Ahon having restored
peace to the land of Zarahemla among their own people having inflicted death
upon all those who refused to shut to the cause of freedom & it came to pass in
the commencement of the thirty first year of the reign of the judges over the people
of Zephi Monon immediately caused that provisions should be sent as a
company of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman to assist him in
breaching that part of the land & he also caused that a company of six thousand men
with a sufficient quantity of food should be sent to the arms of Elisha & Shamm
it came to pass that this was done to Zephi the land against the Samonites &
it came to pass that Monon's & Ahon having a large body of men in the land of
Zarahemla took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Zephi
they were determined to enter upon the Samonites in that city & it came to pass
they were marching towards the land they took a large body of men of the Samonites &
then many of them took the provisions & their weapons of war & it came to pass
after they had lost them they caused them to enter into a covenant that they could
no more take of their weapons of war against the Zephi's & when they had entered
into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Shamm & they were
in number about ten thousand who had not been slain & it came to pass
that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land
of Zephi & it came to pass that when they had come to the city Zephi they did find
their tents in the plains of Zephi which is near the city Zephi now Brown
was there as was that the Samonites should come out to battle against them
upon the plains but the Samonites knowing of their breeding great courage & ^{in holding}
the great ends of their numbers therefore they did not come out against them
and therefore they did not come to battle in that day & when the night came Monon
went out with his army in the darkness of the night & came upon the top of the wall to
spy out in what part of the city the Samonites did camp with their army & it
came to pass that they were on the last day of the entrance & they were all asleep &
Monon returned to his army & caused that they should prepare in haste
strong cords & ladders to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner
part of the wall & it came to pass that Monon caused that his men should march
in the night upon the top of the wall & let themselves down into that part of
the city & were upon the wall where the Samonites did not camp with their army

it came to pass that they were all led down into the city by night by the means of
their strong cords & their ladders & when the morning came they were all within
in the walls of the city & now when the Lamanites awoke it was that the Lamanites
of Inmonei were within the walls they were affrightened exceedingly in com-
mon that they did flee out by the loss of Inmonei & that they re-
flecting before him he did say that in war should march against it against
them & that many & surrounded many & that took the prisoners & the main
do of them & did the land of Inmonei which was in the borders by the sea shore
that had Inmonei & did obtain the possession of the city of Jephthah with-
out the loss of one soul & did take many of the Lamanites & did retain them
it came to pass that as many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous
to join the people of Inmonei & did become a free people & it came to pass as many
as were desirous to do so it was granted according to their desires therefore all the
prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Inmonei & did begin to labor unceas-
ingly tilling the ground raising up many of grain & looking after the flocks
& thus were the Lamanites released from a great burden & were in common that they
were thus released from all the Lamanites & might come to have the
at Inmonei after he had obtained possession of the city of Jephthah having
the many prisoners which did retain the army of the Lamanites & did retain
ing retained many of the Lamanites which had been taken prisoners which did stre-
ngthen the army of Inmonei exceedingly therefore Inmonei went forth from the land
of Jephthah to the land of Lihie & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw
that Inmonei was coming against them they were again frightened & fled before the
army of Inmonei & it came to pass that Inmonei's army did pursue them from
city to city until they were met by Lihie & Seaneum & the Lamanites fled from
Lihie & Seaneum even down upon the borders by the sea shore until they came
to the land of Inmonei & the Lamanites were all gathered together
in common that they were all in one body in the land of Inmonei now Inmonei
the King of the Lamanites was also with them & it came to pass that Inmonei & Lihie &
Seaneum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of
Inmonei in common that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by
the wilderness on the south & in the borders by the wilderness on the east & they
that did encamp in the night for behold the Lamanites & the Lamanites also were
in common because of the greatness of the march therefore they did not resolve
upon any stratagem in the night time & it came to pass that Inmonei was exceedingly
angry with Inmonei in common that he considered that Inmonei & Inmonei

315- alie Rich. his Brother had been the cause of this great sitting man betw
 Lemth the Lamanites which had been the cause of carnal men to be bladed yet
 so much Lamine & it came to pass that Holoth came in his anger did go forth into the
 camp of the Lamanites & did let himself down over the walls of the City & he went
 forth with a great ^{to place} ~~from place~~ inasmuch that he did find the King & he did cast a spear
 at him which did strike him under the hand but he hold the King did awake his
 servant before he did inasmuch that they did pursue Holoth & slew him now it
 came to pass that when he had returned Holoth was dead they were exceedingly
 joyful for he hold he had been a man in whom had sought to be a liar for his country
 yet a true friend to liberty & he had suffered many & exceedingly sore afflictions
 but he hold he was dead & had gone the way of all fathers & would come to pass that
 Holoth was dead & that the Lamanites were upon the Lamanites inasmuch that
 they did kill them with great violence & did take the land of the Lamanites
 they did know that they did not return at that time against the Lamanites & thus
 ended the third & first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi & thus
 they were not many & bladed & a famine & affliction for the space of many years &
 there had been murders & contentions & dissensions & all manner of iniquity among
 the people of Nephi for the rightness sake yet because of the prayers of the right-
 eous they were spared but he hold because of the exceeding great length of the war
 between the Lamanites & the Lamanites many had become weary because
 of the exceeding great length of the war & many were ^{in the} ~~in the~~ because of their aff-
 lictions inasmuch that they did humble themselves before God even in the do-
 sh of humility & it came to pass that of the Lamanites had fortified those parts of the
 land which were most exposed to the Lamanites until they were sufficiently stor-
 ing he returned to the city of Zarahemla & also Helaman returned to the place
 of his inheritance there was a great peace established among the people of Nephi
 & Holoth yielded up the command of his army unto the hands of his Son whose name
 was Holoth & he retired to his own House that he might spend the remain-
 der of his days in peace & Holoth did return to his judgment seat & Helaman
 did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God for because
 of so many wars & contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be
 made in the church therefore Helaman & his brethren went forth & did de-
 clare the word of God with much power & unto the convincing many of the people
 of their wickedness which did cause them to repent of their sins & he baptised unto
 the Lord then God & it came to pass that they did establish again the church of
 God throughout all the land & regulations were made concerning the law & the

Judges & their chief judges were Challen & the people of Nephi began to prosper ³²⁹
again in the land & began to multiply & ^{to} men exceeding many again in the land & they began
to grow exceedingly rich but notwithstanding their riches or their strength or their power
they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes neither were they slow to re-
member the Lord their God but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him
for they did remember how great things ^{the Lord} he had done for them that he had delivered
them from death & from bonds & from prisons & from all manner of afflictions &
he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & they did pray unto the
Lord their God continually inasmuch that the Lord did bless them according to his
word so that they did wax strong & prosper in the land & it came to pass that all
these things were done & Helaman died in the thirty fifth year of the reign of the
Judges & the bishop of Nephi Chapter XXX

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty & sixth year of the
reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi that Shiblon took possession of those
sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma & he was a just
man & he did ^{walk} uprightly before God & he did a service to God continually to
keep the commandments of the Lord he did & also did his better & it came to pass that
Moroni did also & thus ended the thirty & sixth year of the reign of the Judges &
it came to pass that in the thirty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges there was
a large company of men even to the amount of five thousand & four hundred ^{men}
& their wives & their children departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the
land which was northward & it came to pass that Harith he being ^{an} ex-
ceeding curious man therefore he went forth to build him an exceedingly large
ship on the borders of the land bountiful by the land Desolation & he
launched it forth into the great Sea by the narrow neck which led into the land
Northward & whosoever there were many of the people which did enter therein did
sail & with much provision & with many women & children & they took their course
Northward & thus ended the thirty & seventh year of the reign of the Judges & the man
built the ship & the first ship did not return & many more ^{ships} did enter in
& they also took much provision & set out again ^{for} the land Northward & it came
to pass that they were never heard of more & we suppose that they were drowned in the
great Sea & it came to pass that one of the ships did also did sail in it
& whether I will judge we know not & it came to pass that in this year there were
some people who went forth into the land Northward & thus ended the thirty & eighth
year & it came to pass in the thirty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges Shiblon
did also & Corianton had gone forth to the land Northward in a ship to carry forth

331
 Pahumani & his sons saw that he could not obtain the judgment seat he did
 send into the midst of the people but for old Nephthi's sake in the people that
 were desirous that he should be their Governor was creating much grief he was
 unwilling to take away these people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren &
 it came to pass as he was about to do this he beheld he was taken was tried ac-
 cording to the voice of the people & condemned unto death for he had raised up in re-
 bellion & sought to destroy the liberty of the people now when those people which
 were desirous that he should be their Governor saw that he was condemned
 to death therefore they were angry & beheld they that for one Nephthian even to
 the judgment seat of Pahumani & murdered Pahumani he sat upon the judgment seat &
 he was pleased by the women & it came that he held as a deity was the light of
 Nephthian that no man could ever take him to be went up to those that sent him
 & they all entered into a covenant & a swearing by their swearing Nephthian that they
 would kill no man that Nephthian had murdered Pahumani because Nephthian
 was not known among the people at that time he was in disguise at the time that
 he murdered Pahumani & Nephthian's hand which had conspired with him
 did mingle themselves among the people in a manner that they all could not be seen
 but as many as were found were condemned unto death & now he held the power
 was appointed according to the voice of the people he did a chief judge & a governor over
 the people & sign in the stead of his brother Pahumani it was according to his right
 & all this was done in the first year of the reign of the judges & it had an end & it came
 to pass in the first year of the reign of the judges that the Lamanites that gather-
 ed together an innumerable army of men & armed them with swords with darts
 & with bows & with arrows & with head plates & with breast plates & with all man-
 ner of shields of every kind & they came down again that they might fight battle ag-
 ainst the Nephites & this was led by a man whose name was Coriantumr & he
 was a descendant of Hamule & he was a dissenter from among the Nephites & he was a
 large & a mighty man & therefore the king of the Lamanites whose name was Shiz-
 ler who was the King of the Lamanites, ~~was~~ supposing that Coriantumr
 being a mighty man could stand against the Nephites in so much might & in-
 strength & also with his great wisdom that by sending him forth he should gain
 against the Nephites therefore he did stir them up to anger & he did gather together
 his armies & he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader & he did cause that he
 should march down into the land of Hamule to battle against the Nephites & it came
 to pass that because of so much contention & so much difficulty in the journey

33. That they had not kept sufficient guard in the town of Zarahemla, for they had supposed that the Lamanites should not come into the heart of their lands. It happened that great King Benandiah came to pass that Coriantumner did march forth at the head of his numerous host to come upon the inhabitants of the City. A fierce march was made with exceeding great speed, that there was much in the tracks to gather together this army, till as Coriantumner did but down the water by the entrance of the City, & did march forth with his whole army into the City, & they did stay, many one who did oppose them, in common, that they did take possession of the whole City, & it came to pass that Benandiah, who was the chief Judge of the whole Coriantumner, then to the walls of the City, & came to pass that Coriantumner did smite him against the wall, in common, that he died, & thus ended the days of Benandiah. Now, when Coriantumner saw that it was in possession of the City of Zarahemla, & saw that the high priests had fled before them, & that slaying was taken, & that east into prison, & that in common, & possession of the Kingdom held in all the land, his heart took courage, & he said that he was about to go forth against all the land, & now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, into towards the City of Benandiah, for it was his determination to go forth, & his way through the sand, that he might obtain the Father's part of the land, & supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them notice to assemble, till Benandiah was assembled, & now it came in small, & in the morning to the full upon Benandiah, & he did smite him down to the earth, but he held their march of Coriantumner through the center of the land, & gave them advantage, & he did not stand, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the high priests which were slain, for he held Benandiah had supposed that the Lamanites should not come into the heart of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders, as they had often done, therefore Benandiah had counsel that their strong arm should maintain those parts round about by the borders, but behold the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they did come in the center of the land, & did take the Capital City, which was the City of Zarahemla, & was marching through the most Capital City of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, with men, women & children, taking possession of many cities & of many strong holds, but when Benandiah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth with an army, & he did head them, before they should come to the head of Benandiah.

him, he did in word, hand & foot, before they came to the land, Samu'el, p. 333
 and when they were in battle, inasmuch that they began to retreat back, towards the land of
 Gadiaman, it came to pass, that Inoroniath did lead them in their retreat, &
 did give unto them battle encouragement, that it became an exceeding bloody battle, &
 many were slain, & among the number, which were slain, Corianton was also slain, &
 none beheld, but Lamantia could not retreat, ~~neither~~ ^{neither} was he able to go on, & he
 fell upon the ground, & was on the last, when the most of the army were surrounded, & every
 hand by the soldiers, & ~~the~~ ^{the} Corianton, & Inoroniath, & the Lamantia, & the most of the
 soldiers, inasmuch that they were in the hands of the soldiers, & he himself was slain, &
 Lamantia did give himself up into the hands of the soldiers, & it came to pass that Inoroniath
 took possession of the city of Gadiaman again, & caused that the Lamantia
 which had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land, & he ~~caused~~ ^{caused}
 that the people should depart, & the signs of the signs, & it came to pass in the
 first & second year of the reign of the judges, & it came to pass in the
 third year of the reign of the judges, after Inoroniath had again established
 himself in the land, & between the soldiers & the Lamantia, he held there was no one to fill
 the judgment seat, & therefore there began to be a contention again among the people
 concerning who should fill the judgment seat, & it came to pass that Helaman, who
 was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment seat, by the voice of the
 people, but he held, Hishkumen, who had murdered Tabor, did lay wait to destroy
 Helaman also, & he was upheld by his hand, & he had entered into a covenant, &
 it was no one should know his wickedness, & there was one Gadaton, who was en-
 leading against him, in many ways, & also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of man-
 da's of nobility, therefore he became the leader of the band of Hishkumen, & therefore
 he did gather them, & also Hishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment
 seat, he would grant unto them, & he longed to his hand that they should be
 seat in power & authority among the people, & therefore Hishkumen sought to destroy Helaman,
 & it came to pass, as he was going towards the judgment seat, it did lay Helaman,
 he held one of the servants of Helaman, having been told by night, & having obtain-
 ed through him, a knowledge of the plans which had been laid by his hand to destroy
 Helaman, & it came to pass that it met Hishkumen, & he gave unto him a sign, therefore Hishkumen
 made known unto him the object of his design, & desiring that he would stand him to
 the judgment seat, that he might be murdered, & he was ~~informed~~ ^{informed} when the servant
 of Helaman had known all behind of Hishkumen's heart, that it was his object to murder, & also
 to take the object of all those which belonged to his hand, to murder, & to rob, & to gain, &
 this was his secret plan, & then coming to the judgment seat, Helaman saw that Hishkumen
 men to go with him to the judgment seat, now this did please Hishkumen exceedingly,
 & he did suppose that he should accomplish his design, but he held the servants of Helaman,
 as they were going with him to the judgment seat, did stab Hishkumen with the
 sword, & he was told, Helaman all the

337. Kings, neither. It had a long head, and it came to pass that Helaman did stand
forth to take this band of soldiers & soldiers, that Helaman, he consulted according to the
law, and he held forth, Gadimon, had found that his kingdom did not attempt to pass at last
that he should be destroyed, & that he should not follow him, & that
he should flee out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness, that when Helaman
sent him to take them, they could nowhere be found, & more of the Gadimon shall be kept
in the night, that ended in a long second year of the reign of the judges, & the people of light
did hold in the end of this thing, & shall see that the Gadimon did prove the overthrow
almost, the entire destruction of the people of light, he held, & did not mean the end of the
Book of Helaman, but to mean the end of the Book of Light, from which I have taken all the
account, which I have written. — Chapter 11

1. And then it came to pass in the third year of the reign of the judges, there was
no contention among the people of light, & it was a little while, which was the
year, which did cause some little divisions among the people, which affairs were settled
in the end of the fourth year, & there was no contention among the people in
the fifth year, & then there was much contention in the sixth year, & the year it
came to pass in the sixth year, & there were much contentions & many divisions in
the which there were exceeding great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla
& went forth into the land to the west, to inhabit the land, they did travel a great
great distance inasmuch that they came to large bodies of water, & many rivers, &
rivers, they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into what was called had not
been considered before, & without timber, because of the many inhabitants who
they had inherited the land, & now no more the land was desolate, & it was fertile
because of the greatness of the population of the people, who had before
inhabited the land, it was called desolate, & now being but little time upon the
face of the land, now the less the people who were forth, became increasing in the
working of cement, therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did
dwell, & it came to pass that they did multiply & spread & build, & build, from the
land southward to the land northward, & did spread inasmuch that they began
to cover the face of the whole earth, & now the land, to the sea south, from the sea
north to the sea east, & the people who were in the land northward, did it well in building
in houses of cement, & they did say, in what manner, & should spring up upon the face of
the land, that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses,
for their cities, & their temples, & their synagogues, & their houses, & all manner of their
buildings, & it came to pass as timber was exceeding scarce in the land northward, they did
send out much by five years, & they did say, that they did see the wood in the land
northward, that they might build many cities, & houses of cement, & it came to
pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were commanded by their king
did also go forth into this land, & now there are many records kept of the proceedings

[illegible]

55 And they saw that they had been a dispersed people & that they had not at all
 kept the commandments; & said O that they had at least triumphed under the
 great trials of Israel on that which the Lord commanded him to give unto
 the people & thus saying that their names had become known that they had been
 and a wicked people inasmuch that they were ^{like} ~~as~~ the ~~ancients~~ ^{ancients} of old
 and of their iniquity & their lawlessness had begun to stand before the Lord in the
 spirit of prophecy & in the voice of revelation & the judgments of God did stand them
 in the face & the sword they had become ^{weak} ~~weak~~ like unto them in the same
 thing that the Lord had said unto them in the words of the prophets that they
 were because the church of the Lord left not dwell in unholy temples therefore they
 did ^{class} ~~not~~ to receive them by his mercies & his kindness in that they had fallen
 into a state of unbelief & awful wickedness & they saw that the Lamanites were
 more entering numerous than they & sought they should ^{cleave} ~~be~~ united unto the Lord &
 in God they must unite with his people for behold they saw that the strength
 of the Lamanites was as great as their strength men man for man & thus had they
 fallen into the great transgression of the Lord & they were weak because of their
 transgression in the space of not many years & it came to pass that in this same year
 held up the standard of the judgment that to a man whose name was Cezoram for
 as their laws & their governments were established by the voice of the people & they
 who ~~are~~ ^{have} had more numerous numbers than they which have passed therefore they
 were ripening for destruction for the laws had become corrupted & it was not
 all they were a stiffnecked people inasmuch that they could not be governed by
 the law nor justice and it were to their destruction & it came to pass that Lehi had
 become weary because of their iniquity & he desired of the Holy Spirit that he take it
 upon him to preach the word of God all the remainders of his days & his brother Sati
 also all the remainders of his days for they remembered the words which their father
 Helaman spoke unto them & they saw the words which he spoke Behold my sons
 desire that ye should remember the Lord's commandments & said & I desired that ye
 should declare unto the people these words to hold ~~fast~~ ^{fast} & have given unto you the
 names of our first parents which came out of the land of Jerusalem & this I have done that
 when ye remember the names that ye may remember them & when ye remember
 them ye may remember their words & when ye remember their words ye may
 know how that it is said & also written that they were good therefore my sons I would
 that ye should do that which is good that it may be said of you & also written
 even as it has been said & written of them & now behold my sons behold I have
 said some words more to desire of you which desire is that ye may not do these
 things that ye may boast but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves
 a treasure in Heaven for which is eternal which leadeth not away but
 that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life which ye have received

[illegible]

he said the laws of Lehi & Labi & they said, will the man be held, what dost thou
all that things mean & who is it with whom they men do connect now the
mans name was Amminadab & Amminadab said unto them, they do connect
with the angels of God & it came to pass that the Samaritans said unto him what shall
we do that the cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us & Amminadab
said unto them you must repent & as unto ~~those~~ ^{others} ~~that~~ ^{which} ye shall have faith in
Christ and he was taught unto you, ~~that~~ ^{that} Labi & Amminadab & ~~the~~ ^{the} people from & when ye
shall do this the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you that
came to pass that they all did begin to cry, in to the name of him which had shook the
earth & they did cry, until the cloud of darkness was dispersed. & it came to pass
that when they cast their eyes about to see that the cloud of darkness was dispersed
from overshadowing them & behold they saw that they were encircled about by a
strong wall by a mill of fire & Lehi & Labi ~~was~~ ^{were} in the midst of them & they
were encircled about as if they were in the midst of a flaming fire & it did
burn them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison & they were full
of joy with that joy which is unspeakable & full of glory to behold the Holy Spirit of
God descending from heaven & it did enter into their hearts & they were filled as
if with fire & they could speak forth marvelous words & it came to pass that some
of them were so filled with the Spirit of God that they began to sing of our people
he unto you because ye are full in the Lord & ~~the~~ ^{well} ~~the~~ ^{the} foundation
of the rock is in the Lord & it is the Lord of all things & it is he which is
where we will come to be & it is the Lord which is the Father of our Father & Angel
of our Father & it is the Lord which is the Father of our Father & it is the Lord
which is the Father of our Father & it is the Lord which is the Father of our Father
and they were so filled with the Spirit of God that they began to sing of our people
he unto you because ye are full in the Lord & it came to pass that they did go forth
in the name of the Lord & they did declare throughout all the regions round about
all the things which they had heard & seen inasmuch that the
men of the Samaritans were convinced of them because of the greatness of the evidences
which they had received & among a wise convinced did lay down their necks of men
& also their children & the tradition of their fathers & it came to pass that they did yield
up unto the Lehi's the lands of their possession & it came to pass that when the words
& second of the mighty Judge had ended all these things, had happened in
the Samaritans, that he said the men of the Samaritans & people inasmuch that
the Samaritans did receive that, the Lehi's, because of their firmness & their stedfastness
in the faith for behold there were many of the Lehi's who had become hardened &
impenitent & grossly wicked inasmuch that they did reject the word of God & all the
teachings of the Holy Spirit which did come among them & the people of the
land had great joy because of the conversions of the Samaritans & because of the
church of God which had been established among them & they did follow him out
with their hearts & did agree one with another & did have great joy & it came to pass that

that he had been holding out and now it came to pass that when the Sananites
found that there were no more among them, they were exceedingly sorrowful & they did all
every means which came upon their hearts to destroy themselves the face of the earth
but he held them still, till up to the death of the most parts of the Nephites inasmuch
that they did unite with these bands of robbers & did enter into their covenants &
their oaths that they were as one people & possessed one another in what was no diffi-
cult circumstances. This then led to the plot that they should not suffer for
their murders & their plunderings & their stealings & it came to pass that they did ha-
ve their signs & their secret signs & their secret words & this that they might
be known as brethren who had entered in to the covenant that what was in wickedness
his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother nor those who
did he long to his hand who had taken this covenant & thus they might murder
& plunder & steal & commit all manner of wickedness contrary to the
law of their country & also the law of their God & whosoever of these who belonged to
their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness & their abominations
should be tried not according to the laws of their country but according to the laws
of their wickedness which had been given by Gadienton & his followers now
behold it is their secret oaths & covenants which yet have commenced his God
will not go forth unto the world lest they should be a means of bringing down the
people unto destruction now he said that these ^{secret} oaths & covenants did not
come forth unto Gadienton from the records which were delivered unto the
man but behold they were put into the heart of Gadienton by that same being who
did once cause his parents to partake of the forbidden fruit yea that same being
who did plot with Cain that if he would murder his brother Abel it should
be known unto the world & he did not with Cain & his followers from the
time forth to also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to
build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to Heaven & it was that same
being which lead on the people and he came from that tower into this land which
spread the words of darkness & abominations over all the face of the land until he
dragged the people down to an entire destruction to an everlasting Hell yea it
is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadienton to still engage the
people of darkness & of mortal murder & he hath brought it forth from the beginning
of man's redemption to this time & he hold it if he will which is the authority of all sin
& he hold he hath cast on his workers darkness & secret murders & doth hand down
their plots & their oaths & their covenants & their plans of awful wickedness from
generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children
of men & now behold he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites yea
inasmuch that they had become exceedingly wicked yea the most part of them
had turned out of the way of righteousness & did triumph in their evil

344 the commandments of God which he is to their own ways & did build
up unto themselves ^{the} ^{the} gold & silver & it came to pass that all these iniquities
did come unto them in the space of not many years inasmuch that ~~the~~ ^{the} most part
of it had come unto them in the sixty & seventh year of the reign of the judges over
the people of Lehi's seed & grown in their iniquities inasmuch that they began
to the great sorrow & lamentation of the righteous & that we see that the Lehiites
did begin to dwindle in number & to grow in wickedness & in combinations while the
Lamanites began to grow & understanding his knowledge of their God & that they did
begin to keep his statutes & commandments & to walk in truth & uprightness be-
fore him & thus we see that the Lamanites began to withdraw from the Lehiites
because of the wickedness & the hardness of their hearts & they we see that the Lord
began to pour out his spirit upon the Lamanites because of their sorrow & their
penitence to believe in his word & it came to pass that the Lamanites did drive the bones
of anubus of Gaditonia & they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part
of them inasmuch that their band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among
the Lamanites & it came to pass on the other hand that the Lehiites did build them
up & support them beginning at the more wicked part of them until they had out-
spread all the land & the Lehiites & had ^{reduced} ~~subdued~~ the more part of the righteous
did they had come down to believe in their words & for a time their spirits &
to join with them in their secret murders & combinations & thus they did
obtain the sole management of the government inasmuch that they did
Temple under their feet & smite & rend & turn their backs upon the Law
of the Lord & humble followers of God & thus we see that they were in an
awful state & a signifying & an everlasting destination & it came to pass that
thus ended the sixty & eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people
of Lehi - - - Chapter III

Of the Prophecy of Lehi the Son of Helaman

God thus visited the people of Lehi that he will visit them in his anger & that
their destruction is nigh if they repent of their wickedness - God visited the Lehiites
of Lehi with his word & they repented & turned unto him & Samuel a Lamanite
prophesied unto the Lehiites - Behold now it came
to pass in the sixty & ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of ^{the} ^{the} Lehiites
at Lehi the Lord Helaman returned to the land of Jacob & from the land
Northward for he had been for many years among the people who were in the land Northward
& did preach the word of God unto them & did prophesy many things unto
them & they did reject all his words inasmuch that he could not stay among
them but returned again unto the land of his nativity & seeing the people in a
state of such awful wickedness & those Gaditonia robbers filling the Judaea
entirely having pumped the bones & anubus of the land & lying aside

[illegible]

[illegible]

and many can have no power over ~~him~~ ^{it} ~~will~~ ^{shall} come to pass that shall say
 they did stir up the people to anger against ~~the~~ ^{the} raised contentions among them
 for there were some who did stir up the people to anger against ~~the~~ ^{the} raised contentions among them
 more than those which he said ^{will} ~~shall~~ come to pass ~~the~~ ^{the} raised contentions among them
 he said all the ~~things~~ ^{things} which he said ^{will} ~~shall~~ come to pass ~~the~~ ^{the} raised contentions among them
 for we know that he both testified right unto all concerning our iniquities he told
 them out many & he knew that with all things which shall befall us as he knew of
 our iniquities we can be told it he had not been prophet he could not have testifi-
 ed concerning these things because to pass that these people which sought to destroy
 his life were compelled because of their fear that they did not say this words in
 instant for he began again to speak unto them saying that he had gained heaven in the
 eyes of some inasmuch that the remnants of them did hear therefore he was consti-
 tuted to speak more unto them saying Behold my brethren have ye not read that
 God gave laws unto our men when Moses he wrote upon the tables of the stone
 God was departed to his father in heaven that the Israelites which were our
 fathers came through upon dry ground & the waters closed upon the armies of the
 Egyptians & swallowed them up ^{for} ~~for~~ he told us God gave unto this man such
 power then why should ye dispute among yourselves & say that he hath given us no
 power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you and
 it is evident that he told us not only doing my words but ye also doing all the words
 which he hath been spoken by you ~~for~~ ^{for} ~~for~~ ^{for} the words which were spoken by this man ~~for~~
 as which had great power given unto him ye the words which he hath spoken con-
 cerning the coming of the Son which ye did see not hear record that the Son of God should
 come & come he is here the Son of God in the wilderness & ye should he
 be testified up which should come & as many as should look upon the serpent
 should live even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with hearts
 living & obedient shall might live even unto that life which is eternal & never he shall
 know it not only testify of these things but also all the holy prophets from which
 unto the days of Abraham ye have I Abraham that of his coming it was written
 with gladness & said ye have he told us with you that I Abraham not only him & his
 things but also many before the days of Abraham which were written by the
 or of God & he brought the order of his Son & that that is showed he showed in testimony
 file a great many thousands of years before his coming that our redemption should
 come and then it now I would that ye should know that even since the days of
 Abraham ~~and~~ ^{and} there have been many prophets that have testified these things
 ye be told the prophet Jonas did testify boldly for the which he was slain
 & he said also in noon & also Ozaiah & also Isaiah & Jeremiah Jeremiah him
 that same prophet which testified of the destruction of Jerusalem & now we know
 that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah & then ye

After the women came told the people, saying the cry of murder among them to 547.
 behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgments at a behold.
 as the women told the people that the people were gathered together at the last. & now behold
 the people knew nothing concerning the multitude which had gathered together at the
 judgment. After the people they said among themselves, these men are they which have mur-
 dered the Judge. & God hath sent them, that they could not flee from us. & it came to
 pass that the Lord said unto them, I will send them to you from the prison, & there, near a
 proclamation sent abroad that the Judge was slain & that the murderers had been taken
 & was sent into prison. & it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves
 together to mourn the loss of the Lord of the great & chief Judge which had been slain
 in the war. & also the Judges which were at the garden of the Lord & heard the words
 were gathered together at the burial. & it came to pass that they inquired among the
 people saying, where are the five which were sent to inquire concerning the Chief Judge
 which was dead? they answered & said, concerning this five which we sent to inquire, we
 sent them out, but there are five which are the murderers whom we have
 sent into prison. & it came to pass that the Judge desired that they should be brought to
 the place where they were brought to be held. & so it was that the five which were sent to inquire
 inquired of them to know concerning the matter. & they told them all that they had do-
 ne saying, we ran & came to the place of the Judge's death & when we saw all things
 as they were testified to us, we were terrified in our hearts that we should be slain. & it
 was when we were received from our brethren, that we were sent to the prison. & now we
 the murderers, the murderers know not who have done it & since that time we have
 not seen the murderers. & he said, he was dead according to the words of the Lord.
 & now it came to pass that the Judge did command the matter unto the people's chief
 against the people saying, we have now know that the people must have agreed with the
 to slay the Judge & the people might be led to it as that he might be committed unto
 the Lord. & he might have him to be a great man & having of God, but he
 now he said, we will do as the Lord said & he shall be in his hand to make known
 to us the true murderers. The Judge & the people said, that the five were taken on the
 day of the Lord's death. & they did not hate the Judges in the words which
 they had spoken against. & he said, I will contend with them one by one inasmuch that they
 did command. & he said, they would that the five should be taken, & he would bring
 before the multitude & they began to question him in divers ways that they might know
 him, that they might know him to be dead. & saying unto him, thou art confident that this
 man that hath done this murder, now he is dead & acknowledge thy guilt of fault sa-
 ying, behold, here is money & also we will grant unto thee the life if thou wilt tell
 us & acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him, but the
 said unto them, ye shall be unimpaired & he said, ye blind & ye stiff necked
 people do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on

32 (C. 11) III I told now it came to pass in the country
& second year, the sign of the Lord came in the land inasmuch
that ^{the} people were ⁱⁿ mourning in the land among all the people of the land it was
as if they were ⁱⁿ mourning ⁱⁿ the land of destruction & wickedness
as this year did last all that year was in the land & the people did also last & did come
to pass that in this year the Lord did command the Lord saying O Lord do not let
the people shall be destroyed by the sword that O Lord rather let there
be a famine in the land to destroy them in a manner as if the Lord their God & for
shame they will repent & turn unto the Lord so it was done according to the words of
the Lord & there was great famine upon the land among all the people of the land & thus
in the 3rd year of the year the famine did continue & the work of destruction did come
by the sword but because of the famine to this work of destruction did also continue
in the 4th year of the year the famine was a little less but it was still a little more
than the first year in the season of grain to the whole land was a little less among the
Lamanites as well as among the Nephites & the people were a little more than the first year
by thousands in the most wicked parts of the land & it came to pass that the people said
that they were about to perish by famine & they began to remember the Lord their God
& they began to remember the words of the Lord the people began to plead with their
judges & their leaders that they would say unto the Lord he hold us know that there
was a work of God & that he said unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this
iniquity that all the words which they have spoken concerning a destruction be
fulfilled & it came to pass that the judges did say unto the people according to the words
which had been said & it came to pass that when the people saw that the people had
repented & did humble themselves in sackcloth & cried again unto the Lord say-
ing O Lord he hold this people & he said they have sinned away the hand of God from
amongst them inasmuch that they have become wicked & they have concealed
their secret plans in the earth now O Lord because of this their humility with them turn
away thine anger & let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked
men whom thou hast already destroyed O Lord will thou turn away thine anger
from these men & turn away thine anger from these men may cease in this land O Lord will thou hear
their voice & will thou that it may be done according to my words & send down rain upon
the face of the earth that she may bring forth her fruit & her grain in the season of grain
O Lord thou didst hearken unto my words when I said let there be a famine that the
people of the land might be able to know that there will even at this time hearken unto
my words for they said that if the people repent will I send them yet O Lord &
thou wilt that they have repented because of the famine & the pestilence & destruc-
tion which has come upon them & now O Lord will thou be an angry man against
any again if they will show that they will O Lord thou shalt ^{not} bless them according

to the word which shall come to pass that in the seventy & ninth year
the Lord did turn away his anger from the people & caused that ^{the} people should call
upon the earth inasmuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit
& it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain ^{in the} season of her grain & he held
the people in peace a long day & the whole face of the land was filled with
rejoicing & they did not mind seek to destroy Joseph, but they did esteem him as
a great prophet & a man of God having great power & authority given unto him
from God & he held the people in peace & he was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining
to righteousness & thus it did come to pass that the people of Joseph began to
rejoice in the land & began to build up their walls & began to multiply
& spread out until it did cover the whole face of the land both on the distance
& on the land that did grow from the sea west to the sea east & it came to pass that the
seventy & ninth year did end in peace & the seventy & tenth year began in blood
& the Church did spread throughout the face of all the land & the most part of the
people of Joseph & the Lamanites did belong to the Church & they did have
exceeding great peace in the land & "as ended the seventy & tenth year
also they had peace in the seventy & eighth year & it was a few contentions
of the people of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets & in the
seventy & ninth year there began to be much strife but it came to pass that Joseph
& Lehi & many of their brethren which knew concerning the true bairn of doctrine
were having many consultations daily therefore they did break unto the people
inasmuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year & it came to
pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges even the
people of Joseph thought a certain number of the dissenters from the
people of Joseph which had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites
to live among themselves in name of Lamanites & also a certain number which were
near the servants of the Lamanites being stirred up & angry by them by their
actions therefore they commenced a war with their brethren & they did come out to
destroy & plunder & then they would retreat back into the mountains & into the wil-
derness & secret places hiding themselves that they could not be discovered & sell-
ing daily an addition to their number inasmuch as there were dissenters that
were left to unite with them & thus in a few years even in the space of not many years they
became an exceedingly great host of robbers & they did search out all the secret
places of Gadianton & thus they became robbers of Gadianton now he held these
robbers did make great havoc & great destruction among the people of Joseph
& also among the people of the Lamanites & it came to pass that it was expedient that
there should be a stop put to this work of destruction therefore they sent an army
of strong men into the wilderness to upon the mountains to search out this
band of robbers & to destroy them but behold it came to pass that in that same

and of the building of Jerusalem even they are less than the dust of the earth for he said
old the dust of the earth. now he said to the dividing around at the command
of our great & everlasting God yea behold at his voice doth the hills & the mountains
shake & by the power of his voice they are broken up & become more glad & are like
unto a child. yea by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake yea by the power
of his voice doth the foundations of the earth & the very center of the earth unto the
earthquake it is moved yea if it say unto the earth that shall go back that it lengthen
out the day for many hours that it is done & thus according to his word the earth
doth back it & appear it unto man that the Sun standeth still yea he said that
it is so for sure it is the earth that moveth & not the Sun & he said also if he saith
unto the motion of the great deep that he shall be up & it is done behold if he saith
unto this mountain that it shall be raised up & come unto that City that it shall
be raised up & he said that it is done & he said if a man hideth up a treasure
in the earth & the Lord shall say let it be raised because of the iniquity of him
that hath hid it up he said it shall be raised & if the Lord shall say he shall
be raised that no man shall find it from this time hence forth it is said
behold no man doth it hence forth & forever & he said if the Lord shall say
unto a man because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cursed forever it shall be done
& if the Lord shall say because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my
presence & he will cause that it shall be so & no man whom he shall say this
shall be unto him that will do iniquity & he cannot be saved therefore for this
cause that men might be saved hath a sentence been declared therefore blessed
are they who will repent & hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God for
these are they that shall be saved & may God grant in his great fulness that men
might be brought unto repentance good works that they might be restored unto
grace for good according to their works & I would that all men might be caused for
well read that in that great & last day there come forth shall be cast out yea
what shall be cast out from the presence of the Lord yea what shall be consigned
to a state of endless misery fulfilling the words which ^{saith} they that have done
good shall have everlasting life & they that have done evil shall have everlasting
damnation & that it is Amos — — — Chapter - V — — —

Chapter - V
The Prophecy of Samuel the Lamanite
I had now it came to pass in the night & with you the Lamanites did still remain in
hardness & in great wickedness while the Lamanites did abhor to keep the commandments
of God according to the law of Moses & because to pass that in this year there was
sent Samuel a Lamanite came into the land of Zarahemla & began to preach unto the people
but came to pass that he did preach many days & he sent unto the people & they did cast him
out & he was about to return to his own land but he held the ^{voice} of the Lord to come
to him that he should be a prophet unto the people & what I have said should

356 came into his heart & it came to pass that they would not believe that he had
come into the City therefore he went & got upon the wall thereof & stretched forth his
hand & cried with a loud voice & enquired unto the people what secret things
the Lord put into his heart & he said, unto them Behold, I Samuel & Samanah
do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart & he said, he doth
put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this
people & I am hundred years hence and away is the sword of justice & I left upon
this people a heavy & terrible curse with this people & it shall come down upon this peo-
ple & nothing can save this people save it be repentance & faith in the Lord Jesus Christ
with which shall come into the world & shall suffer many things & shall be slain for
his people & he held an Angel of the Lord took his sword & came unto me & he did bring glad-
tidings to my soul & he said & was not unto you to declare it unto you also that ye
may be glad tidings, but he said ye would not receive me therefore I turn
saith the Lord because of the hardness of the hearts of the people, the high priests
say they will take away my word from them & will withdraw my spirit
from them & will say, I have no longer & will turn the hearts of their brethren
against them & I am hundred years I shall not pass away he said & will cease
that they shall be smitten & I will visit them with the sword & with famine &
with pestilence & will visit them in my fierce anger & they shall be that of the
Latter generation & you are now to behold your utter destruction & they shall surely
come except ye repent saith the Lord & that the Latter generation shall visit your
destruction but if ye will repent & return unto the Lord your God I will turn away
my anger saith the Lord & ye shall with the Lord & I will visit them who will repent
turn unto me but ye will not him that reports that ye are into the great City of Gath
om to for behold it is because they who are righteous that it is called Gath unto
great City for I know saith the Lord that there are many places even the most part of the
great City that will harden their hearts against me saith the Lord but blessed
are they who will repent for them will I spare but behold it is mine intent that the
righteous who come in the great City behold it would cause that fire should come
down out of Heaven & destroy it but he said it is for the right transgressors that it is spa-
red but behold the time cometh saith the Lord that when ye shall cast out the
righteous from among you then shall ye be ripe for destruction & ye are he unto the
great City because of the wickedness & abominations which I have seen in you
unto the City of Gidion for the wickedness & abominations which are in you
me to visit all the cities which are in the land round about which are possessed by the
high priests because of the wickedness & the abominations which are in them & behold a
sword shall come upon the land saith the Lord & I shall because of the people who are
in upon the land & because of their wickedness & their abominations & it shall
come to pass saith the Lord & I shall & a great & a bad that which shall

hide up treasure in the earth shall find them again no more because of
of the great curse of the land none it be a righteous man & shall hide it up unto
the Lord & he will say with the Lord that they shall hide up their treasures unto
yourselves he that who hideth not up their treasures unto me for none shall hide up
their treasures unto me & he that hideth not up his tre-
sures unto me cursed be he & he that hideth not up his tre-
sures unto me the land shall be cursed ^{that} they shall hide up their treasures
because they have set their hearts upon riches & because they have set their hearts
upon their riches & will hide up their treasures when ye shall see he for their enemies
because they will not hide them up unto me cursed be they & also their treasures in that
day they be smitten with the Lord & he shall give the people of this great city & near
thereunto my words & hearken unto the words which the Lord saith for he hath
he said that ye are cursed because of your riches & because ye have set your hearts
upon them & ye have set your hearts upon them & have not hearkened unto the words of
him who gave them unto you & ye do not remember the Lord your God in the
things which he hath blessed you but ye do all things according to your own will not
to thank the Lord your God for them & again he said is not ye are out with the Lord
and but ye do all with great pride unto him & ye are great in swelling song-
ings & ye are in malice & in contention & in murder & in all manner of iniquities for
because with the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land &
also upon your riches & your treasures & your iniquities & ye are out with the people
because of this time which has arisen that ye do cast out the prophets & do make
them & cast them out from before their eyes & do all manner of iniquity unto the
prophets & do make them & do make them & do make them & do make them & do make them
day so that ye are out of the land & ye would not have slain the prophets & ye would not
have slain them & ye would not have slain them & ye would not have slain them
if a prophet come among you & he shall say unto you the word of the Lord which he hath
said of you & his iniquities & ye are angry with him & ye seek to kill him & ye
seek to destroy him & ye will say that he is a false prophet & that he is a
sinner & of the Devil because he testifies that ye are wicked & evil but he hath said
man shall come among you & shall say unto you that there is no iniquity do that ye shall
all not suffer & he will say well after the pride of your own hearts & ye will say
after the pride of your eyes & do as he saith & ye will say that he is a prophet & ye
will lift him up & ye will give unto him of your substance & ye will give unto
him of your gold & of your silver & ye will clothe him with costly apparel & because
he speaketh flattering words unto you & he saith that all is well & then ye will not
find no fault with him & ye will be deceived & ye will be deceived & ye will be deceived
(To end) & ye will be deceived & ye will be deceived & ye will be deceived that the Lord will

388. suffering an ill a how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish & blind
guides & a how long will ye see darkness rather than light. I shall hold the anger of the Lord
and is already kindled against you be hold it hath caused the land because of your iniqui-
ties & be hold the time cometh that he curseth your riches that it become the slipping ^{that} ye
cannot hold them & in the days of your punishment ye cannot retain them & in the days of your
penalty ye shall cry out to the Lord & in vain shall ye cry for your destruction is already come upon
you & your destruction is made sure then shall ye weep & howl in that day with the Lord
of hosts & then shall ye lament & say O that I had repented & had not killed the prophets &
I had closed mine eyes & cast them out for in that day shall ye say O that we had remem-
bered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches & then they would not
have become slipping that we should lose them for we hold our riches and goe from
us be hold we layeth a load here & on the morrow it is gone & be hold our grounds are
taken from us in the day we have sought them for little ye have had up our
treasures & they have slipped away from us because of the curse of the land O that we
had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us for we hold the land
is cursed & all things are become slipping & we cannot hold them be hold we are
reproved by the Lord & ye are not increased about by the angels of him who
have sought to destroy our souls be hold our iniquities are great & our heart from
not turning from their anger because it is small ye have language in these days but
be hold your days of probation are ended & have predestinated the day of your destruc-
tion & in it is immediately or late your destruction is made sure & a long have
sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain & ye have sought for
happiness in doing iniquity which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteous-
ness which is in a great & eternal seed O ye people of the land that ye would
have mercy ready to say for the anger of the Lord he turned away from you & the
angel would repent to the Lord & now it cometh to pass that I should the Lamentable did first
begin a great many more things which cannot be written & be hold he said unto them & I
shall give unto you a sign for I will do more cometh & then be hold cometh the Son
of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name & be hold this will I give
to you for a sign at the time of his coming for he said there shall be great lights in
Heaven inasmuch that in the night there shall be no darkness in-
so much that it shall be plain unto man as if it was day therefore there shall be one
day & a night & a day as if it were one day & there were no night & this shall be
unto you for a sign for ye shall know of the rising of the Sun & also of its sitting
therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two ^{days} & a night
nevertheless the night shall not be darkened & it shall be the night be hold
he is born & be hold there shall be a new Heaven with such an one as ye now have be-
hold & this also shall be a sign unto you & be hold there is not all these shall be many
many signs & wonders in Heaven & it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed

and remember inasmuch that ye shall fall to the earth & it shall come to pass that who shall
men shall believe on the Son of God the same shall have everlasting life & behold
that hath the Lord commanded me by his Angel that I should come & tell this thing
to you & he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you & he
th said unto me say unto this people repent & prepare the way of the Lord & now be-
cause I am a man like to have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath com-
manded me & because it was hard against you & all angry with me & do seek to destroy
me & have cast me out from among you & ye shall hear my words for I have this inter-
est I have come up upon the walls of this city that ye might hear & know of the judgments
of God which doth await you because of your iniquities & also that ye might know the condi-
tions of repentance & also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ the Son of God
the Father of Heaven the Creator of all things from the beginning & that ye might
know of the signs of his coming to the intent that ye might believe on his name & if
ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins that thereby ye may have remission
of them through his merits & behold again another sign which I will give unto you a sign of
his death for he shall die & that salvation may come ye shall believe
with him & become the expedient that he dieth to bring to pass the resurrection of the
dead that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord & he shall
his death bringeth to pass the resurrection & redeemeth all mankind from the first
death that spiritual death for all mankind by the fall of Adam being cut off from
the presence of the Lord and considered as dead both as to things temporal & to things
spiritual but behold the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind & he shall
mankind & bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord & he shall bringeth to
pass the conditions of repentance & whosoever repenteth he shall not be damned
& cast into the fire but whosoever repenteth not he shall be damned & cast into the fire & he
cometh upon them again spiritual death & a second death for they are cut off again as to
things pertaining to righteousness therefore repent ye repent ye lest by knowing these things
and not doing them ye shall suffer condemnation & ye are brought
down unto the second death but behold I have said unto you concerning another sign a sign
of his death he shall die that he shall suffer death the Sun shall be darkened &
refuse to give ^{his} light in the day & also the Moon shall be darkened & there shall be no light
upon the face of the land even from the time that he shall suffer death for the space of the
whole day to the time that he shall rise again from the dead & at the time that he
shall yield up the Ghost there shall be thunders & lightnings for the space of many
hours & the Earth shall shake & tremble & the rocks which are upon the face of the earth
which are ^{above} upon the face of the earth & beneath which ye know at this time is solid on
the more part of it is one solid mass shall be broken up & they shall be rent
in twain & shall even as he be found in seams & in cracks & in broken fragments
upon the face of the whole earth & he shall be ^{both} above the earth & beneath it

may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth. ³⁶¹
 There are many which do add to their number daily & behold ye do know of yourselves for
 ye have witnessed it that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth &
 to know of the wicked & a horrible tradition of their fathers & are led to believe the
 holy Scriptures & the prophecies of the holy prophets which are written which lead
 them to faith in the Lord & a repentance which faith & repentance bringeth a
 change of heart unto them therefore many as have come to this ye know of yourselves
 are firm & steadfast in the truth & in all things wherein they have been made free
 & ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war & they learn to take them up
 lest by any means they shall sin & ye can tell that they learn to sin for behold they
 will not submit themselves that they be sadden down & slain by their enemies & will not lift
 their hands against them & this because of their faith in Christ & now because of their steadfastness
 when they do believe in that thing which they do believe for because of their firmness when
 they are once enlightened behold the Lord shall bless them & prolong their days not-
 withstanding their iniquity & even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall
 prolong their days until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers & also
 by the prophet James & many other prophets concerning the restoration of our brethren the
 Lamanites again to the knowledge of the truth & I say unto you that in the latter times
 the promises of the Lord shall be fulfilled to our brethren the Lamanites & not fail-
 & notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have & notwithstanding they shall be
 driven to & fro upon the face of the earth & be hunted & shall be smitten & scattered ab-
 road having no place for refuge the Lord shall be merciful unto them & this accord-
 ing to the prophecy that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge which is
 the knowledge of their redemption & their great & their true Shepherd & be numbered
 among his sheep therefore I say unto you it shall be better for them than for you
 except ye repent for behold had the might of our brethren been shown unto them which
 have been shown unto you & you were to them which have dwindle in unbelief be-
 cause of the traditions of their fathers & ye can tell of yourselves that they never would
 again have dwindle in unbelief & they have said the Lord I will not utterly destroy
 them but I will curse that in the days of my wisdom they shall return again and
 we will raise the Lord & now behold said the Lord concerning the people of the fifth
 tier if they will not repent & observe to do my will I will utterly destroy them said
 the Lord because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works
 which I have done among them & as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things
 be said the Lord & now it came to pass that our men many which heard the words
 of Samuel the Lamanite which he spake upon the walls of the city & as many as
 believed on his words went forth & sought for to him & when they came forth from
 him they confessed unto him their sins & denied not desiring that they might
 be baptized unto the Lord & as many as there were which did not believe

36 L in the words of Samuel were angry with him & they cast stones at him upon the wall & also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall but the spirit of the Lord was with him inasmuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows now when they saw that they could not hit him there were many more who did believe on his words in so much that they went away on to Nephi to be baptized for behold the people were prophesying & preaching saying repentance unto the people shewing signs & wonders & making miracles among the people that they might know that the Christ must shortly come telling them of things which must shortly come that they might be known & remembered at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them by a hand to the intent that they might believe therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized for they came repenting & confessing their sins but the more part of them did not believe the words of Samuel therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones & their arrows they cried out unto their captains saying take this fellow & bind him for behold he hath said & because of the power of the Devil we cannot hit him with our stones & our arrows therefore take him & bind him & away with him & as they went forth to lay their hands on him behold he did cast himself down & did flee out of their hands & he came unto his own camp & began to preach & to prophesy among his own people & behold he was never heard of more among the Nephites & thus were the affairs of the people & thus ended the eighty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges over the people & after that time under the reign of the hundredth year of the reign of the Judges the more part of the people remaining in their pride & wickedness the less part making more iniquity before God & thus were the conditions also & the eighty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges & there were but little alteration in the affairs of the people & it was the people began to be more hardened in iniquity & to do more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God in the eighty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges but he hold it came to pass in the hundredth year of the reign of the Judges there were great signs given unto the people & wonders & the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled & angels did appear unto men with men & did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy & thus in that year the Gentiles began to be put to their names & the people began to harden their hearts all came it unto the most believing part of them both of the Nephites & also of the same nations began to depend upon their own strength & upon their own wisdom saying some things they may have guessed right among so many but behold now that all these great & marvellous ^{works} cannot come to pass which hath been spoken & they began to reason & to contend among themselves saying that it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come if so be he be the Son of God the Father of Heaven & of Earth as it hath been spoken

why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto the people who shall be
 of Jerusalem. & why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the
 land of Jerusalem. but he told me know that this is a wicked tradition which
 has been handed down unto us by our fathers to cause us that we should believe
 in some great & marvelous thing, which should come to pass but not among us but
 in a land which is distant a land which we know not therefore they can keep
 us in ignorance for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true &
 they will by the cunning & the mystical arts of the evil one work some great
 mystery which we cannot understand which will keep us down to be slaves
 unto their words & also to cause us to remain dependent upon them to teach us the
 word. thus will they keep us in ignorance if we yield ourselves unto them all the days
 of our lives & many more things did the people imagine upon their hearts while we were foolish
 & vain & they were much distressed for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity contin-
 ually yea he did go about spreading rumors & contentions upon all the face of the
 land that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good &
 against that which should come & notwithstanding the signs & the wonders which
 were wrought among the people of the land & the many miracles which they did
 Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land & thus
 ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi & thus end-
 ed the Book of Helaman according to the record of Helaman & his sons

Chapter 1
 The Book of Nephi the Younger which was the Son of Helaman
 & Helaman was the Son of Helaman which was the Son of Alma which
 was the Son of Alma being a descendant of Nephi which was the Son of Lehi
 who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah the king
 of Judah

Chapter 2
 Now it came to pass that the ninety & first year had passed away & it was
 ninety years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem & it was in the year that
 Sashon was the king & the judges & the governors over the land of Nephi the Son of Helaman
 had departed out of the land of Jerusalem giving charge unto his Son Nephi which
 was his eldest Son concerning the plots of Satan & all the records which had been kept
 all these things which had been kept saved from the destruction of Lehi out of Jerusalem
 then he departed out of the land & he left his name no man knew but his Son Nephi
 did keep the record in his old years record of the people & it came to pass
 that in the commencement of the ninety & second year he told the prophecies of the
 prophets began to be fulfilled more fully for there began to be great signs & won-
 derful miracles wrought among the people but there were some men who began to
 say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled which were spoken by Sam-
 uel the Lamanite & they began to rejoice over them but there were some who said the
 time was past & the words of Samuel ^{are} not fulfilled therefore ye are going to fail

364 Concerning this thing he had been told that it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land & the people which intended began to be angry, sorrowful lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass. But behold they did make a loud cry for that day & that night & that day which should be as one day as if there were no night. And they might know that ~~these things~~ ^{these things} had not been vain now it came to pass that there was a day & a night by the unbelief that all those who believed in those traditions would be put to death except the sign should come to pass which had been given by ^{the} Lord. The prophet now it came to pass that when ^{the} Son of God saw that wickedness of his people his heart was exceedingly sorrowful & it came to pass that he went and bowed himself down upon the earth & cried mightily to his God in the behalf of his people & of those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the traditions of their fathers. It came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Father that day & he held the name of the Lord came unto him saying lift up your head & be of good cheer for he held the line is at hand & on that night shall the sign be given & on the morrow come into the world to show unto the world that I will fulfill all that I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets. He held & came unto me & he said all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world & he did the will of his Father & of the Son of the Father because of me & of the Son because I am. And he held the line is at hand & that night shall the sign be given & it came to pass that the words which came unto the Son were fulfilled according as they had been spoken for he beheld all the signs of the Son & there was no darkness & the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came & there were many which had not believed the words of the prophets fell to the earth & died and they were dead for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who had believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated for the sign which had been given was already at hand & they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear upon the face of the earth upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east both in the land which is in the land & in the water as exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth for they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years & that the sign which had been given was already at hand & they began to fear because of their iniquity & their unbelief. It came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night but it was as light as the day it was midday & it came to pass that the land did rise in the morning again according to its proper order & they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born because of the sign which had been given & it had come to pass that all things ending what according to the words of the prophets & it came to pass also that a new standard appeared according to the word that came to pass from that time forth there began to be light & the Father among the people by Satan to hasten their hearts to the intent that they might not be led in those signs & wonders which they had seen but not to understand.

those things & seeing the more part of the people did believe & were converted unto
 the Lord & it came to pass that for the next day among the people & also many other others
 baptizing unto repentance in the which there were a great number of them & that the
 people began again to have peace in the land & there were no contentions save it were a
 few that began to speak and saying to prove by the Scriptures that it was more imp-
 edient to observe the law of Moses now in that time they did come having not under-
 stood the Scriptures that it came to pass that they soon became converted & were con-
 vinced of the error which they were in for it was made known unto them that the law
 was not yet fulfilled & that it must be fulfilled in every what area the word came an-
 to them that it must be fulfilled yea that we felt now that it should not be averted
 it should all be fulfilled there for in this same year were they brought to a knowledge
 of this word & did confess their fault to the Lord & the next year did pass away
 bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass
 according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets & it came to pass that
 the mind of a third year did also pass away in peace save it were for the Lord God did
 not let his work which did dwell upon the mountains which did inhabit the land for
 1. there were their words & their words & places that the people could not comprehend them
 therefore they did commit many murders & did do much evil among the people
 & it came to pass that in the ^{next} year they began to increase in a great degree be-
 cause there were many dissenters of the Lamanites which did believe in them which did
 cease much sorrow unto those Lamanites which did remain in the land & there ^{was} also cause of
 much sorrow among the Lamanites for he heard they had many children which did grow up
 & began to mention in years that they became for themselves & were ^{led} away by some which
 were Jeronites by their things & things & things words to join the Lamanites & to believe
 they were the Lamanites & affected also began to decrease to their faith & righteousness
 because of the wickedness of the rising generation & it came to pass that ^{they} passed away
 the ninety & fifty years & the people began to forget those signs & wonders which
 they had heard & began to be less & less & trusted at signs & wonders from Heaven in-
 so much that they began to be hard in their hearts & blind in their minds & began to dis-
 believe all which they had heard & seen & in imagining up some vain thing in their heart
 that it was wrought by men & by the power of the Devil to lead away & deceive the
 hearts of the people that did Gatan get possession of the hearts of the people again in so much that
 he did blind their eyes & lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a false-
 hood & a vain thing & it came to pass that the people began to ^{man} long & wickedness & abominations
 & they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given & Gatan did
 go about leading away the hearts of the people tempting them & causing them that they sh-
 ould do great wickedness in the land & thus did pass away the ninety & sixth year & also
 the ninety & seventh year & also the ninety & eighth year & also the ninety & ninth year
 & also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Isaiah which was

366 King over the people of the Ephraim & in hundred & nine years had passed away since the first generation & mine never had passed away from the time ^{when} the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets that Christ should come into the world now the Ephraim began to seek on their time from that period which the sign was given on from the coming of Christ therefore nine years ~~had~~ was left away & Ephraim which was the altar of the Ephraim had the charge of the records did not return to the land of Canaan & should be called he found in all the land it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness not withstanding the much preaching & prophesying which was sent among them & thus passed away the tenth generation & the eleventh the Canaanites passed away in iniquity & it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be great contentions through out all the land ^{for} the Canaanites who had become so numerous & did stay in many of the cities & did lay waste to many cities & did spread so much death & damage through out the land that it became expedient that all the people both of the Ephraim & the Gadians should take up arms against them therefore all the Gadians who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with them both of the Ephraim & were compelled for the safety of their wives & their women & their children to take up arms against these Gadianites who had been also to maintain their ^{rights} & their privileges of their Church & of their worship & their freedom their liberty & it came to pass that before this tenth year had passed away the Ephraim were threatened with utter destruction because of this war which had been in carrying so as not to come to pass that these Gadianites who had united with the Ephraim were numbered among the Ephraim & their counsel was taken from them & therefore they became white like unto the Ephraim & their young men & their daughters become wedding linen & they were numbered among the Ephraim & were called Ephraim & hundred & the thirteenth year it came to pass in the fourteenth year the Gadianites were taken out of the land & the people of Ephraim continued to do as before carrying so as not to pass the people of Ephraim did gain some advantage of the Gadianites in so much that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains & into their caves & thus ended the thirteenth year & in the fourteenth year they did come forth again against the people of Ephraim because of the wicked men of the people of Ephraim & their many contentions & divisions the Gadianites who did gain many advantages over them & thus ended the fourteenth year & in the fifteenth year a great plague of locusts & the sword of destruction did hang over them in so much that they were almost to be smitten down by it & this because of their iniquity

Chapter II. I find now it came to pass that in the twentieth year
from the coming of Christ, as when as the gentlemen of the land received an Epistle
from the leaders of the government of their handal nobles & these are the words which were
written saying: We have almost noble & chief gentlemen of the land, to have to write this
Epistle unto you to do you unto you exceeding great thank because of your goodness & abun-
dances of your people in maintaining that which we suppose to be near right &

[illegible]

1368

their women & their children their flocks & their herds & all their substance
 will save it near their land unto one place & he caused that his disciples should
 do, he build round about them & the strength thereof should be exceeding great
 at & because that there should be some bath of the disciples of the Lamanites &
 all the men which were numbered among the disciples should be placed as guards round
 about to watch them & to guard them from the robbers day & night yet he said unto them
 again & said with exception of repentance all your iniquities being forgiven that they can
 be in no wise be delivered out of the hands of these Gadianton robbers & so great carnal
 men as the men of prophecies of Jacobus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people
 & they did meet them in their night to do according to the words of Jacobus & it came
 to pass that Jacobus did appoint chief captains over all the bands of the disciples to command them
 at the time that he said they should come down out of the wilderness against them now the
 chiefest among all the chief captains & the great commanders of all the armies of the disciples
 was appointed & his name was Gidgiddoni now it was the custom among all the disciples
 to appoint their chief captains same it was in the times of wickedness & some of them
 had the spirit of revelation & also of prophecy therefore this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet
 among them & also was he chief judge now the people said unto Gidgiddoni ^{that}
 to the Lord & let us go upon the mountains & into the wilderness that we may fall upon
 the robbers & destroy them in their own lands but Gidgiddoni said unto them the Lord
 forbid for if we should go against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands
 therefore we will be peaceable in the wilderness ^{our} lands & we will gather all our
 goods together & we will not go against them but we will wait till they shall come
 against us therefore in the Lord's name if we do this we will deliver them into our hands
 & it came to pass in the ^{seventeenth} year in the latter end of the year that all the men
 of Jacobus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land & they had taken
 their houses & their substance & their cattle & all their flocks & their ^{heads} herds & their
 substance & did march forth by thousands & by tens of thousands until they
 had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather them-
 selves together to defend themselves against their enemies in the land which was appoi-
 nted was the land of Jershon & the land which was between the land of Jershon
 & the land Baanah & the line which was between the land Baanah & the
 land Gilead & there were a great many thousand people who were called disciples
 who did gather themselves together in this land now Jacobus did cause that
 they should gather themselves together in the land Baanah because of the great
 battle which was upon the land northward & they did so they gathered against their
 enemies & they did dwell in one land & in one body & they did hear the words which
 had been spoken by Jacobus inasmuch that they did repent of all their
 sins & they did put off their baggage unto the Lord their God that he would

delivered them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle & they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies & ^{did} Giddianah said that they should make weapons of war & having said that they should be strong with armor with shields & with bucklers after the manner of his instructions & it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those kinds of robbers had prepared for battle & began to come down & to rally forth from the hills & out of the mountains & the wilderness & the strong hold ^{places} ~~their~~ ^{their} ~~places~~ & began to take possession of the lands both which was in the land south & which was in the land north & began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the L^h P^hites & the L^h P^hites which ~~had~~ ^{had} been left to waste but he held them ^{that} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ the wild waste no game in those lands which had been deserted by the L^h P^hites & there ^{was} ~~was~~ no game in the wilderness & the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness for the want of food for the L^h P^hites had left their lands & they had gathered their flocks & their herds & all their substance & they were in one body ^{total} ~~total~~ for they ~~had~~ ^{had} no choice for the robbers to plunder & to obtain food save it were to come upon them in battle against the L^h P^hites & the L^h P^hites being in one body & having a great number & having a great store of provisions & houses & cattle & flocks of every kind that they might subsist in the space of twenty years in the whole time they did hope to destroy the robbers as soon as the fall of the land & thus the eighteenth year did pass away & it came to pass in the nineteenth year Giddianah found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the L^h P^hites for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder & rob & murder & they dared not spread themselves upon the face of the land inasmuch that they could raise grain lest the L^h P^hites should come upon them & slay them & so for Giddianah gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the L^h P^hites & it came to pass that they did come up to battle & it was in the sixth month & he held great assemblies ~~was~~ ^{was} the day that they did come up to battle & there were killed a host after the manner of robbers & they had a Lamb ^{skin} ~~skin~~ about their loins & they were dyed in blood & their head were ⁱⁿ ~~in~~ they had head plates upon their garments & the appearance of the army of Giddianah was all fallen to the earth & did lift their hands to the Lord their God & said we would spare them & deliver them out of the hands of their enemies & it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianah saw that they began to retreat with a loud noise because of their fear for they had supposed that the L^h P^hites had fallen with them because of the ^{strength} ~~strength~~ of their armies but in this thing they were disappointed for the L^h P^hites did not fear them but they did fear their God & did exhort him for protection therefore when the armies of Giddianah did rush upon them they were forced to meet them & in the strength of the Lord they did receive them & the battle commenced in that the sixth month & great & terrible was the battle

318 And of great great terrible was the slaughter thereof inasmuch that there
 never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Ishi since he left them
 & notwithstanding the threatnings & the oaths which Eidgeidoni had made before
 that the Lophites did beat them inasmuch that they did fall back before them & it came
 to pass that Eidgeidoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as to
 the borders of the wilderness & that they should not spare any that should fall into their
 hands by the way & thus they did pursue them & did slay them to the borders of the
 wilderness & until they had fulfilled the commandment of Eidgeidoni & it came
 to pass that Eidgeidoni who had stood & fought with boldness was pursued as he fled
 & being weary because of his much fighting ^{he} was overtaken & slain & thus was the end
 of Eidgeidoni & he did not know it until he saw that the armies of the Lophites did return again
 to their place of security & it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away & the
 robbers did not come again to battle neither did they come in the twentieth year but in
 the twenty & first year they did not come up to battle but they came up on all sides to
 lay siege round about the people of Ishi for they did suppose that if they should cut
 off the Lophites from their lands & should have them in any side & if they should
 cut them off from all their land & from all their friends that they could cause them to yield the
 submission according to their wishes now they had appointed unto themselves an other leader
 in whose name was Gennarihak for he was Gennarihak that did cause that
 this siege should take place but he told that was an advantage unto the Lophites
 for it was impossible to lay siege sufficiently long to having effect upon the Lophites
 because of their great provision which they had laid up in store & because of the scantiness of
 provisions among the robbers for he told they had nothing save it save meat for their subsis-
 tance which meat they did obtain in the wilderness & it came to pass that the mild game the
 same obtained in the wilderness inasmuch that the robbers were about to perish with hun-
 ger & the Lophites were continually marching out by day & by night & falling upon
 them & slaying them off by thousands & thus it became the des-
 tination of the people of Gennarihak to withdraw from their design because of the great
 destruction which came upon them by night & by day & it came to pass that Gennarihak
 did give commandment unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege
 & to march into the land that was most dark of the land, southward & so Eidgeidoni being ar-
 rayed of their design & knowing of their weakness because of the want of food & the great sla-
 uughter which had been made among them therefore he did send out his armies in the
 night time & did cut off the way of their retreat & did place his armies in the way
 of them so that they did they do in the night time & got on their onward beyond the rob-
 bers so that on the morning the robbers began their march they were met by the armies
 of the Lophites both on their front & in their rear & the robbers with their men on the south
 were also cut off in their places & so that all these things were done by comma-
 nd of Eidgeidoni & there were many thousands which did yield themselves up to him

[illegible]

344 Because of those who testified of these things & those who were angry with them who had been high priests & lawyers & all the people of the land were angry with those who testified of these things now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land now there were many of these who testified of these things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly when they were taken & put to death & surely by the judgment that the knowledge of their death came unto the governor of the land until after their death now behold this was contrary to the laws of the land that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land there fore a complaint came up unto the land of Jacob unto the governor of the land against the judges who had condemned unto death not according to the law now it came to pass that they were taken & brought up before the judge to be judged of their crime which they had done according to the law which had been given by the people now it came to pass that those judges had many friends & kindred & even almost all the lawyers & the high priests did gather themselves together & unite with the kindred of those judges who were to be tried according to the law & they did enter into a covenant one with another & did promise that vengeance which was given by them of old which covenant was given & sworn in blood by the Lord to combine against all righteousness therefore they did combine against the people of the land & to combine to destroy them & to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice which was about to be administered according to the law & they did set at defiance the law & the rights of their country & they did combine one with another to destroy the governor & to establish a king over the land that the land should no more have liberty but should be subject unto kings now behold I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land but in the same year after this last year they did destroy upon the judgment seat & did murder in the high judge of the land & the people were divided one against another & they did set all one from another into bitterness now according to his family & his kindred & his friends & thus they did destroy the government of the land & they did appoint a chief or a leader over them & thus they became leaders & leaders of leaders now behold the one man among them save he had much family & many kindred & friends therefore he became exceedingly great now all this was done & there were many more yet a more terrible thing than this had come upon the people because they did yield themselves up unto the law & the regulations of the government & destroyed the law of the Lord & the combination of the friends & the kindred of those who murdered the prophets & the did cease against contention in the land inasmuch that the more righteous part of the people of the highland nearly all had come & were there & were righteous men among them that is plain had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from righteousness like the dog to his vomit or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire now this secret combination which had brought to great iniquity upon

the people that they had been visited by the power of spirit of God which was upon
Christ in whom they believed was, many as had been cast out from them & ^{now} healed
of their sicknesses & their infirmities did truly manifest unto the people that they had
been wrought upon by the spirit of God & had been healed & they did show forth signs also
& did declare miracles, ^{unto the people} & ~~they passed away the thirty & second year also~~
& ~~they did say unto the people in the commencement of the thirty & third year & he did speak~~
unto them repeatedly a remission of sins now, & would have you remember also that there
were none who were brought in to be baptized who were not baptized with real ^{ness}
faith, were ordained of the high priest to his ministry, that all such as should come
unto them should be baptized with water & this as a witness & a testimony before God
& unto the people that they had obtained a remission of their sins & that were
among in the commencement of the year that were baptized unto repentance & that the
more part of the year did pass away - - - Chapter III - - -

I find now it came to pass according to our record & we know our record to be true for
he that did was a just man who did keep the record for he truly did many mira-
cles in the name of Jesus there was not one man who could do a miracle in the
name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity & now it came to pass
if there was no miracle made by this man in the restoring of our time the thirty &
third year had passed away & the people began to look with great earnestness for the
sign which had been ^{given} by the prophet Samuel the Lamanite, & in the ^{time} ~~sign~~ that there sh-
ould be darkness in the space three days over the face of the land & there began to be
great clankings & dispartations among the people notwithstanding so many signs had been
given & it came to pass that in the thirty & fourth year in the first month in the fourth
day of the month there arose a great storm such as never had been known in
all the land & there was also great & terrible thunders & there was terrible windiness
much, but it did not take the whole earth, & it was hard to divide a word to that matter
exceeding sharp lightning & the harm was done known in all the land & the city of
Zarahemla did take fire & the city of Jerusalem did sink in to the depth of the sea
the inhabitants thereof were drowned & the earth was raised up upon the city of
Mormonah that in the space of the city there became a great mountain
& there ^{was} a great & terrible destruction in the land southward but behold there
~~was~~ a more great & terrible destruction in the land northward for he held the whole
face of the land were changed because of the tempests & the whirlwinds & the thunders
& the lightning & the exceeding great quaking of the whole earth & the high moun-
tains were broken up to the level & the waters & the plains became
rough & many great & notable cities were sunk & many were burned & many
were shook till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth & the inhabitants
thereof were slain & the places were left desolate & there were some cities
which remained, but the damage thereof was exceeding great & there were

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

382 I have made you my doctrine & this is my doctrine & it is the doctrine which the Father
with Jesus made me to hear & record of them a son & the Father heard & record of me & the
Holy Ghost heard & record of the Father & me & the Father & the Holy Ghost heard & record of all
men & very whole to be in me & whose belief in me & it is baptised the Father
shall be saved & they are they which shall be in the Kingdom of God & who are baptised in
me & are not baptised shall be damned & I say unto you that is my doctrine
I am record of the Father & whose belief in me & belief in the Father also
unto him with the Father hear & record of me & he will visit him with fire & with the Holy
Ghost & thus will the Father hear & record of me & the Holy Ghost will hear & record of me
I am the Father & the Son & the Holy Ghost & the Father & the Son & the Holy Ghost are one & I say
unto you ye must repent & become as a little child & be baptised in my
name on ye can in no wise receive these things & I say unto you ye must
repent & be baptised in my name & become as a little child on ye can in no
wise inherit the Kingdom of God & I say unto you that this is my
doctrine & who buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock & the gates of
Hell shall not prevail against them who shall declare more & less than this &
I establish it in my doctrine & the same cometh of me & I will build upon my
rock & he buildeth upon a sandy foundation & the gates of Hell standeth open
to receive such when the floods come & the winds beat upon them & I say
unto you for the unto this people & believe the words which I have spoken
unto the ends of the earth & And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these
words unto the people & the Jews which had been called now the number of them
which had been called & received John's authority to baptize were twelve
& behold he reached forth his hand unto the multitude & cried unto them
saying Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve
which I have chosen from among you to minister unto you & to be your servants
on & I say unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water & I say
unto you that ye are baptised with water & behold I will baptize you with fire & I say
unto you that the Holy Ghost shall come upon you & ye shall believe in me & be
baptised after that ye have seen me & know that I am & again I say
unto you that they which shall believe in your words because ye shall testify that ye have
seen me & that ye know that I am & ye are blessed & they which shall believe in
your words & come down to the depths of humility & be baptised for they shall be
visited with fire & with the Holy Ghost & shall receive a remission of their sins & ye
blessed are the poor in spirit which come unto me for theirs is the Kingdom of the
Heaven & again I say unto you that I say unto you that they shall be comforted & blessed
are the meek for they shall inherit the earth & blessed are all they which do hunger
& thirst after righteousness for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost & blessed
are the merciful for they shall obtain mercy & blessed are all they which are pure in heart

for they shall see God & be blessed as all the people makes for they shall be called
 the children of God & be blessed as all they which are preserved for my name sake
 for there is the Kingdom of Heaven & the eternal life when men shall receive & open
 shall ~~see~~ ^{shall} all manner of evil against you & for my sake for ye shall have
 a great joy to be exceeding glad for great shall be your reward in Heaven
 for ye have seen that they the prophets which were before you verily said
 unto you & give unto you to be the better of the earth but if the salt shall
 lose its ^{savour} where will shall the earth be called the salt shall be thenceforth
 good for nothing but to be cast out & to be trodden under foot of men
 verily I say unto you & give unto you to be the light of this people a city that
 is set on a hill cannot be hid behold do men light a candle & put it under
 a bushel nay but on a candle stick & it giveth light to all that are in the house
 therefore let your light so shine before this people that they may see your
 good works & glorify your Father which is in Heaven think not that I am
 come to destroy the law or the prophets I am not come to destroy but to fulfil
 for verily I say unto you one jot nor one tittle shall pass away from the
 law that in me it shall all be fulfilled & behold I have given unto you
 the law & the commandments of my Father that ye shall believe in me &
 that ye shall repent of your sins & come unto me with a broken heart & a con-
 trite spirit & behold ye have the commandments before you & the law is fulfilled
 therefore come unto me & ye shall be saved for verily I say unto you that except ye
 shall keep my commandments which I have commanded you at this time ye
 shall in no case enter into the Kingdom of Heaven ye have heard that it hath been
 said by them of old time & it is also written before you that thou shalt not kill &
 whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God but I say unto you
 that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment &
 whosoever shall say to his brother thou fool shall be in danger of the council &
 whosoever shall say ^{shall} I will kill shall be in danger of Hell fire Therefore if ye shall
 all come unto me or shall desire to come unto me & remember that they bro-
 thers have fought against thee go thy way unto thy brother & first be reconciled
 to thy brother & then come unto me with full purpose of heart & I will receive
 you & go with thee advising quickly while thou art in the way with
 him lest at any time he shall get thee & thou shalt be cast into prison ve-
 rily I say unto thee thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid
 the uttermost shilling & while ye are in prison can ye pay one shilling verily
 verily I say unto you nay behold it is written by them of old time that thou
 shalt not commit adultery but I say unto you that whosoever look-
 on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery already in his
 heart behold I give unto you a commandment that ye refrain from of

meat them for they think that they shall be heard for their much speak-
 ing, & so may ye therefore like unto them for ye are as they know not what
 things ye have need of, he saith ye ask him. After this manner therefore
 ye say O Lord thou hast heard in Heaven & allowed he thy name
 thy will be done on earth as it is in Heaven & forgive us our debts
 as we forgive our debtors & lead us not into temptation but deliver
 us from evil for there is the kingdom & the power & the glory forever
 Amen. Now if ye forgive men their ^{trespasses} ~~trespasses~~ your Heavenly Father will also
 so forgive you but if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will
 your Father forgive your trespasses. Therefore when ye fast be not as the
 hypocrites of a sad countenance for they disfigure their faces that they may ap-
 pear unto men to fast. But ye ought to fast as ye have seen your Father do. ^{when} ye fast
 shall ye fast in secret thy Father & I will say of him that shall appear not unto ^{men}
 to fast but unto thy Father which is in secret & thy Father which seeth in
 secret shall reward thee openly. Ye shall not upon yourselves burdens upon hearts
 where men's eyes do not see & ye shall break through & steal but lay
 up for yourselves treasures in Heaven where neither moth nor rust doth cor-
 rupt where thieves do not break through nor steal for where your treasure
 is there will your heart be also. If ye light the body is the eye if
 therefore thine eye be single thy whole body shall be full of light
 but if thine eye be evil thy whole body shall be full of darkness if
 therefore see that which is in thee be darkness how great is that darkness
 if man an animal have mastered on him he will hate the one & love another
 as he will hold to the one & despise the other ye cannot serve God &
 Mammon. — Chapter VI — — — And now it cometh to pass
 that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve
 whom he had chosen & said unto them Remember the words which I have
 spoken to you he said ye are they which I have chosen to minister unto
 this people therefore say unto you take no thought for your life
 what ye shall eat or what ye shall drink nor yet for your garments
 for what ye shall put on is more than meat & the body that
 is moment to hold the souls of the air for ye sow not neither do they ^{increase}
 nor gather into barns yet I say I have said these things unto you ye are not
 much better than they are which of you by taking thought can add one
 cubit unto his stature & why take ye thought for moment consider the
 lilies of the field how they grow they toil not neither do they spin &
 yet I say unto you that I will lay upon all his & long was not arrayed
 like unto these. Therefore I say unto you that the Father which is in Heaven
 which today is & tomorrow is cast into the oven even so will the

5th state you if ye are not of little faith therefore take me thought
saying what shall we eat or what shall we drink or whither shall
we go. we be clothed for you. I have only ^{in their knowledge} that ye have
need of all these things. but seek ye first the Kingdom of ^{God} ~~Heaven~~ ^{his}
righteousness & all these things shall be added unto you take therefore
no thought for the morrow for the morrow shall take thought for the things
of itself. sufficient is the ^{day} unto the evil thereof. And now it came
to pass that when Jesus had said these words he turned again to the
multitude & he did open his mouth unto them again saying Verily verily
I say unto you judge not that I am he that judge ^{with} what judg-
ment I judge ye shall be judged. what measure ye mete it shall
be measured to you again & why he holdeth that the world that is in
thy brother's eye but cannot see it. The beam that is in thine own eye
is how wilt thou say to thy brother. Let me pull out the mote out of
thine eye & behold a beam in mine eye. I will say unto thee he will first
cast out the beam out of thine own eye & then shall thou see clearly to
cast out the mote out of thy brother's eye. ye see not that which is he lay
unto the claps with his eyes & ye say yeasts before ye have but they trample
them under their feet & turn again & bind you & it shall be given ^{unto} you
yea ye shall be dashed & shall be opened unto you & every one
that will be made with him shall see him & shall be made with him
it is given to you what ye desire. Turn ye from whom if his son ask bread will
he give him a stone. if he ask a fish will he give him a serpent if ye
then being evil know how to give good gifts unto your children how much
shall your Father which is in Heaven give good things to them that ask him. Therefore
for all things whatsoever ye would that your Father do to you do ye even so to
them for this is the law the hope is but large in that the shaft is wide in
the gate & broad is the way ^{that} leadeth to destruction & many there be which
go in thereat because they do not know the way which leadeth them
to life. In those he that shall be saved I saw of old prophets which come to you
in prophesying but in vainly and naming names ye shall know them
by their fruits. He men getteth ^{thorns} ^{or} figs of thistles & enroslung good seed
bringeth forth good fruit. but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit & good
tree cannot bring forth evil fruit neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit
every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down & cast into the fire. wherefore
by their fruits ye shall know them. And now every one that saith unto me Lord Lord
shall not enter into the Kingdom of Heaven but he that doth the will of my Father
which is in Heaven. Now will I say to you in that day Lord Lord have not
prophesied in thy name & in thy name have cast out devils in thy name.

done many wonderful works And then with purpose unto them I never knew
before from me if that work might be done whose heart were sayings of mine &
death & life will liken him unto a wise man which built his house upon a
rock & the rain descended & the floods came & the winds blew & beat upon that
house & it fell not for it was founded upon a rock & every one that heareth
these sayings of mine & doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man
which built his house upon the sand & the rain descended & the floods came &
the winds blew & beat upon that house & it fell & great was the fall of it
Chapter VII And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these say-
ings he went into Nazareth & as he sat in the synagogue there many
had heard the things which were taught in Nazareth & they were saying
in the synagogue how can this be that Jesus should say these things
at the last he stood up to say that when Jesus had said these words he
perceived that there were some saying in their hearts & wondering what
he would say concerning the law & the prophets for they understood not his saying that
all things must be fulfilled & that all things must become new & he said
unto them marvel not that I said unto you that all things must be fulfilled
and that all things must become new for I have said unto you that the law
is fulfilled that was given unto Moses he said I am he that gave the law
& I am in which I commanded with my people & shall therefore the law is
is fulfilled now when I come to fulfil the law there for it hath an end be-
hold I do not destroy the prophets for as many as have not been fulfilled in me
nearly & say unto you shall all be fulfilled because I said unto you that all
things which I have said are not destroyed that which hath been spoken concerning
things which are to come for I have the commandments which I have made with my people
is not all fulfilled but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in
me be hold I am the law & the light look unto me & endure to the end & ye shall
have life in you that endureth to the end with giving eternal life be-
hold I have given unto you the commandments therefore keep my
commandments & this is the law & the prophets for they truly have
said of me since now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these
words he said unto those which were with him he has chosen ye are my
disciples & ye are a light unto this people which are a remnant of
the house of Israel & behold this is the name of your father in heaven
the Father hath given it unto you & not at any time hath the Father given
any commandment that I should tell it unto you brethren at
perverse in mission at any time hath the Father given me commandment
that I should tell unto you concerning the Father & the Son of the house
of Israel which the Father hath led away out of the land

388 This much did the father command me that I should tell unto
 them that after this I have which are not of this fold, them also
 so I must bring & they shall hear my voice & there shall be one fold
 & one shepherd know because of stiffneckedness & unbelief they unders-
 stood not my word therefore I was commanded to say no more of the
 father concerning this thing unto them but, verily I say unto you that the
 father hath commanded me & I tell it unto you that ye were separated from
 among them because of their iniquity therefore it is because of their iniquity
 that they know not of you & now I say unto you again that the other tribes have
 the father separated from them & it is because of their iniquity that they
 know not of them & now I say unto you that ye are sheep of whom I said other
 things I have which are not of this fold them also I must bring & they
 shall hear my voice & there shall be one fold & one shepherd & they un-
 derstand me not for they supposed it had been the Gentiles for they un-
 derstand not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preach-
 ing & they understand me not that I said they shall hear ^{my voice} & they
 understand me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear ^{my voice}
 that I should not at my word come unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost
 but behold ye have been hearing my voice & seen me & ye are my sheep & ye are
 numbered among them & the father hath given me to feed & to lead & to
 say unto you that I have other sheep which are not of this land neither of the
 land of Jerusalem neither in any part of that land neither a land which I have
 not to minister for the of whom I speak unto them which have not as yet hear-
 ed my voice neither have they been manifested unto them here I have
 received a commandment of the father that I ^{shall} go unto them & that they shall
 hear my voice & shall be numbered among my sheep that there may be one fold
 & one shepherd it is for ye to tell my will unto them & command you that ye
 shall write ^{sayings} ~~things~~ after the manner of the things which I have said unto you
 that if it so be that my people at Jeru-
 salem they who have seen me & been with me in my ministry do not ask the
 father in my name that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost
 also of the other tribes who ~~continually~~ know not of that these sayings which ye shall write
 shall be kept & shall be manifested unto the Gentiles that through them I may save
 the remnant of their seed which shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth
 because of their unbelief may be brought in or may be brought to a knowledge
 of me their righteousness then will I gather them from the four quarters of the earth &
 then will I fulfill the covenant which the father hath made with all the people of
 the house of Israel & blessed are the Gentiles because of their belief in me and of the
 Holy Ghost which witnesseth in their hearts of me & of the father behold because
 of their belief in me saith the father because of the unbelief of you to hear of

I shall in the ~~last~~ day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles that the ~~fulfillment~~^{fulfillment} of
 these things shall be made known unto them but I do not say the Father unto the
 Gentiles for notwithstanding that they have come forth upon the
 face of this land to have scattered my people which are of the house of Israel & my
 people which are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them & have
 been trampled under foot by them & because of the manner of the Father unto the Gentiles
 to be the judgment of the Father upon my people which are of the house of Israel I can
 only say unto you that after all this & none can say my people which are of the house
 of Israel to be scattered in as afflicted & to be cast out & to be cast out from among them
 & to be made hated by them & to be made a hissing & a byword among them & that I am not
 with destruction to say ^{unto you} ~~unto you~~ at the day when the Gentiles shall sin against my
 Gospel & shall reject the witness of my Gospel & shall be lifted up in the pride of their
 hearts & shall have all nations & shall have all the world & shall be filled with
 all manner of lyings & deceits & of mischief & all manner of hypocrisy & murders
 & of all manner of iniquities & shall be a testimony & if they shall do all these things &
 shall reject the witness of my Gospel & shall be lifted up in the pride of their
 hearts & shall have all nations & shall have all the world & shall be filled with
 of my Gospel & shall have all nations & shall have all the world & shall be filled with
 made unto my people & House of Israel & shall bring my Gospel unto them & shall
 show unto the House of Israel that the Gentiles shall not have power over you but
 shall remember my covenant unto you & shall have ~~Israel~~ ^{Israel} shall come unto the
 knowledge of the Father & my Gospel & if the Gentiles will repent & return unto me with
 the Father behold they shall be numbered among my people & House of Israel & I will
 not suffer my people which are of the house of Israel to go through among them & to be
 trampled under foot by them but if they will not return unto me to hearken unto my
 voice & will say to them & shall say to my people & House of Israel that they shall
 all be ~~trampled~~ ^{trampled} under foot & shall be trampled under foot & they shall be as salt that ~~is~~^{is}
 lost ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~which~~ ^{which} is their ~~part~~ ^{part} good for nothing but to be cast out & to be
 trampled under foot of my people & House of Israel & I can only say unto you
 that the Father commanded me that I should give unto this people this
 land for their inheritance & when the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled
 which say they shall lift up the voice with the voice together
 shall they sing for then shall eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again his
 people & shall sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem for the Lord hath
 comforted his people & hath redeemed Jerusalem the Lord hath made heard his
 holy arm in the eyes of all the nations & all the ends of the earth shall see the
 glory of God. (Chapter VIII) Behold now it came to pass that when Jesus
 had spoken these words he looked round upon him again & he said unto them ^{Behold} ~~Behold~~ ^{that ye are weak that ye cannot}
 stand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you

[illegible]

multitude, that they were overcome, and it came to pass that Jesus ^{came} ^{up} ^{unto} them & made them gaze & they arose from the earth. & he went to them & blessed
 and ye heard of your father's name, he told my joy is full & mine in you and mine was
 to visit & to minister unto you & he took them to the children one by one
 & blessed them & placed them in the Father's arms & when he had done this he
 went again to speak unto the multitude & with him were the twelve of our little
 ones & they looked to behold, they were their eyes towards heaven & they
 said the Father's name & they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the
 midst of the twelve came down & ministered to these little ones about them. They were
 enabled a hour with him & the angels did minister unto them & the multitude
 did see & hear & hear & heard & they knew that their word is true for they all
 of them did see & hear every man for himself & they were in number about
 two thousand & were hundred souls & they did consist of men, women & ^{children}
~~that~~ And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should
 bring him some meat & wine & when he had said this he gave them bread & wine
 he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the grass
 & when the disciples had come with bread & wine he took of the bread & broke it
 blessed it & gave unto the disciples & commanded that they should eat & when they had
 eat & were filled he commanded that they should give unto the multitude &
 when the multitude had eaten & were filled he said unto the disciples Behold there
 shall be a sign & an omen & it shall be a sign & an omen that he shall break
 bread & minister unto the people of my church & unto all those who
 shall believe & be baptized in my name & this shall ye always & hereafter do
 as I have done & ye shall have bread & wine & blessed it & gave it unto you & this
 shall ye do in remembrance of my body which I have given unto you & it shall
 be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me & if ye do always
 remember me ye shall have my spirit to be with you And it came to pass that
 when he had said these words he commanded his disciples that they should
 take of the wine of the cup & drink of it & that they should also give unto the
 multitude that they might drink of it And it came to pass that they did so &
 did drink of it & were filled & they gave unto the multitude & they did drink & they were
 filled & when the disciples had done this Jesus said unto them Blessed are ye for this
 thing which ye have done for this is fulfilling my commandments & that doth witness
 unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which he has commanded you
 & this shall ye always do unto those who repent & are baptized in my name &
 ye shall do it in remembrance of me & I have shed for you that ye
 may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me & if ye do al-
 ways remember me ye shall have my spirit to be with you & I give unto
 you a commandment that ye shall do these things & if ye shall always do these

12. I say blessed are ye for ye are built upon my rock but whose among
 you shall do more or less than there are not built upon my rock but are built
 upon a sandy foundation & when the floods come & the winds
 blow & beat upon them they shall fall & the gates of hell is already open to
 receive them therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments which
 the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you & verily I say
 unto you ye must watch & pray always lest ye be tempted by the devil & ye are
 led ^{away} of him by him & as I have prayed among you I say so shall ye pray
 my church among ^{the} people who shall be baptized in my name be-
 hold I am the light I have set an example to you & I think it came to pass that
 when Jesus had made these words unto his disciples he turned again unto the mu-
 ltitude & ^{said} unto them Behold I send you forth I say unto you ye must watch &
 pray always lest ye enter into temptation for Satan desireth to have you
 that he may sift you as wheat therefore ye must always pray unto
 the Father in my name & whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name
 which is right believing that ye shall receive & he hold it shall be given
 unto you pray in my name & I send you forth in my name that ye
 witness your children my be blessed & behold ye shall meet together &
 ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet
 together but receive them that they may come unto you & if they do not
 but ye shall pray for them & shall not eat them eat if it so be that they
 come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father in my name that ye
 hold up your light & it may shine unto the world be hold I am the light
 which ye shall hold up that which ye have seen do behold ye ^{say} that
 I have prayed unto the Father & all have witnessed & ye see that I have com-
 manded that none of you should go away but rather have commanded that ye
 should come unto me that ye might feel & see when ye shall go unto the
 world & whosoever breaketh this commandment setteth himself to be led
 into temptation & now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words
 he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen & said unto
 them Behold I send you forth I say unto you another commandment
 that I must give unto my Father that I ^{may} fulfill other commandments which he
 hath given me & now I send this is the commandment which I give unto you
 that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh & blood un-
 lawfully when ye shall minister of or whose doth & drinketh my flesh & blood
 unlawfully eateth & drinketh damnation to his soul therefore if ye know
 that a man is unworthy to eat & drink of my flesh & blood ye shall forbid him
 nevertheless ye shall not cast him out from among you but ye shall minister
 unto him & shall pray for him unto the Father in my name & if it so be that he

repeal the is baptised in my name then shall ye receive him & shall
minister unto him of my flesh & blood but if he repent not he shall
not be numbered among my people that he may not destroy my people for
his sake. I know my sheep & they are numbered never shall ye shall not cast him
out of your synagogues or your places of worship for unto us ^{ye shall} continue
unto minister for ye know not but what this will ^{return} report & come
unto me will full purpose of heart & shall heal them & ye shall be the means of bring-
ing salvation unto them therefore keep these sayings which I have commanded
you that ye come not under condemnation for ye unto him whom the Father sent
in me & I give you these commandments because of the disputations which
have been among you ~~before him~~ & blessed are ye if ye have no disputations
among you & now I go unto the Father because it is expedient that I should go
unto the Father for your sakes And it came to pass that when Jesus had made
an end of these sayings he laughed with his hand the disciples whom he had cho-
sen one by one even until he had taught them all & spake unto them as he taught
them & the multitude heard not the words which he spake therefore they did not
hear record but the disciples hear record that he gave them power to give the Holy
Ghost & I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true And it came
to pass that when Jesus had taught them all there came a cloud & overshadowed
the multitude that they could not see Jesus & while they were overshadowed
he departed from them & ascended into Heaven & the disciples saw & did
hear record that he ascended again into Heaven Chapter 18 - And now it
came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into Heaven the multitude ^{did} disperse
every man did take his wife & his children & did return to his own home
& it was noised abroad among the people immediately before it grew
dark that the multitude had seen Jesus that he had ministered unto them
& that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multi-
tude yea & even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus & in-
so much did they send forth unto the people that there were many yea an ex-
ceeding great number did labour exceedingly all that night that they
might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself un-
to the multitude And it came to pass that on the morrow when the multi-
tude was gathered together behold Joseph his brother whom he had ^{was} raised
from the dead whose name was Timothy & also his son whose name
was Donas & also Nathani & Nathani-hah his brother & Kumen & Kumenon
& Jeremiah & Shemnon & Donas & Gedekiah & Pish now these were
the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen And it came to pass that
they went forth & stood in the midst of the multitude & he held them
under his feet so great that they did cease that they should be separated

394 Twelve badles & the twelve did teach the multitude but be-
 hold they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the
 face of the earth & should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus &
 the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus and it came to pass
 that they arose & ministered unto the people & when they had ministered them
 came words which Jesus had spoken nothing coming from the words which Jesus
 had spoken behold they knelt again & prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus &
 they did pray for that which they most desired & they desired that the Holy Ghost should
 be given unto them & when they had thus prayed they went down unto the waters
 edge & the multitude followed them and it came to pass that Jesus went down
 into the water & was baptized & he came up out of the water & began to baptize
 & he did baptize all those whom Jesus had chosen and it came to pass when they were
 all baptized & had come up out of the water the Holy Ghost did fall upon them
 & they were filled with the Holy Ghost & with fire & behold they were encircled ab-
 out as if it were fire & it came down from Heaven & the multitude did
 witness it & do hear record & angels did come down out of Heaven & did min-
 ister unto them & it came to pass that while they were ministering unto the disciples
 behold Jesus came & stood in the midst & ministered unto them & it came to pass that
 he spake unto the multitude & commanded them that they should kneel down
 again upon the earth & also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth
 And it came to pass that when they had all knelt ^{down} upon the earth he com-
 manded his disciples that they should pray & behold they began to pray & they did pray unto
 Jesus calling him their Lord & their God & it came to pass that Jesus departed out
 of the midst of them & went a little way off from them & bowed himself to the
 earth & he said Father I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto
 them whom I have chosen & it is because of their belief ^{in me} that I have chosen them
 out of the world & now I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost
 unto all them that shall believe in their words & Father thou
 hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me and
 thou seest ^{that} they believe in me because thou hast sent them and they
 pray unto me and they pray unto me because I am with them and
 now Father I pray unto thee for them and also for all those which shall
 believe on their words that they may believe in me that I may be
 in them as thou Father art in me that we may be one, and it
 came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father he
 came unto his disciples and behold they did still continue without cea-
 sing to pray unto him and they did not multiply many words
 for it was given unto them what they should pray and they were
 filled with desire and it came to pass that Jesus beheld them

395 as they did pray unto him and his countenance did shine upon them and the light of his countenance did shine upon them and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed ^{all} the whiteness yea ⁱⁿ their could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof and Jesus saith unto them pray on nevertheless they did not cease to pray and he turned from them again and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth and he prayed again unto the Father saying Father I thank thee that thou hast justified those which I have chosen because of their faith and I pray for them and also for them which shall believe on their words that they may be purified in me through faith on their words even as they are purified in me Father I pray not for the world but for those which thou hast given unto me out of the world because of their faith that they may be purified in me that I may be in them as thou art in me that we may be one that I may be glorified in them. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples and behold they did pray very fastly without ceasing unto him and he did smile upon them again and behold they were white even as Jesus and it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father and tongues cannot speak the words which he prayed neither can be written by man the words which he prayed and the multitude did hear and do ^{from} record and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed nevertheless so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written neither can they be uttered by man, and it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples and saith unto them so great faith have I never seen among all the Jews wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles because of their unbelief verily I say unto you there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard and it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray and also his disciples, and he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts, and he commanded them that they should arise and stand upon their feet and thus arose up and stood on their feet, and it came to pass that he ^{took} bread again and blessed it and gave to the disciples to eat and when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread and give unto the multitude and when

396 they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink
and ~~commanded them that they should give unto the multitude~~ and there had been no
bread neither wine brought by the disciples neither by the multitude but he
truly gave unto them bread and also wine to drink and he said unto
them that eat of this bread eat of my body to their soul and he that drink
eth of this wine drink of my blood to their soul and their soul shall
never hunger nor thirst but shall be filled now when the multitude
had all eat and drank behold they were filled with the spirit and
they did cry out with one voice and gave glory to Jesus whom they
both saw and heard and it came to pass that ~~where~~ ^{now} they had all
given glory unto Jesus he said unto them behold I finish the command
ment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people
which are a remnant of the House of Israel ^{as I have said} that I speak unto
you and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled behold there are
written ye have them before you therefore search them and surely
verily I say unto you that when they shall be fulfilled there is the
fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his
people of the House of Israel and then shall the remnant which
shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth be gathered
in from the east and from the west and from the south and from
the north and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord
their God who hath redeemed them in the Father hath commanded
me that I should give unto ^{you} this land for your inheritance and I
say unto you that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessings which
they shall receive after ~~that~~ I have scattered my people then shall
all ye which ^{are} a remnant of the House of Israel be with them
and ye shall be in the midst of them which shall be many and
ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest
and as a young lion among the flock of sheep who
if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces
and none can deliver ~~him~~ ^{him} and shall be lifted up upon ^{his} ~~their~~ adversaries
and all ~~the~~ ^{his} enemies shall be cut off and I will gather my people together
as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor for I will make my
people whom the Father hath covenanted ye I will make thy horn
iron & I will make thy hoofs brass and thou shalt beat in pieces
many people and I will consume their pain unto the Lord and their substance
unto the Lord of the whole earth and behold I am he which doeth it
and it shall come to pass saith the Father that the sword of my justice
shall hang over them at that day and except they repent it shall fall

397 16, on them ^{the} nations ye even upon all the ~~the~~ Nations of
the Gentiles, and it shall come to pass that I will establish my People
of the House of Israel and behold this People will I establish in this Land
unto the fulfilling of the Covenant which I made with your Father Jacob and
it shall be a new Jerusalem and the Rivers of Heaven shall be in the
midst of this People ye even I will be in the midst of you Behold I am
~~in the~~ he of whom Moses spake, saying a ^{Prophet} ~~Prophet~~ shall the Lord your God
raise up unto you of your Brethren like unto me him shall ye hear
in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you and it shall come to
pass that every Soul which will not hear that ~~Prophet~~ Prophet shall be cut
off from among the People. Verily I say unto you, ye and all the Prophets
from Amos and those that follow after as many as ^{as} have spoken have testified
of me and behold ye are the Children of the Prophets and ye are of the
House of Israel and ye are of the Covenant which the Father made
with your Father saying unto Abraham and in thy seed shall all
the ^{inhabitors} ~~through~~ of the Earth be blessed the Father having raised me up
unto you first and sent me to bless you in turning away every one
of you from his Iniquities and this because ye are the Children of the
Covenant after that ye were blessed then fulfill the Father the Covenant whi-
ch he made with Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the Kindreds of the
Earth be blessed unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the
Gentiles which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all
unto the scattering of my People O House of Israel and they shall be a con-
-rage unto the People of this Land nevertheless when they shall have recei-
-ved the fullness of my Gospel then if they shall harden their hearts ag-
-ainst me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads saith the
Father and I will remember the Covenant which I have made with my
People & I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in
mine own due time that I would give unto them again the Land of their
Fathers for their inheritance which is the Land of Jerusalem which is the prom-
-ised Land unto them forever saith the Father & it shall come to pass that
at the time cometh when the fullness of my Gospel be preached unto them
and they shall believe in me that I am Jesus Christ the Son of God & shall
proceed unto the Father in my name then shall their watchmen lift up their
voice & with the voice together shall they sing for they shall see eye to eye
then will the Father gather them together again & give unto them Jerusalem
for the Land of their inheritance then will they break forth into joy
singing together ye waste places of Jerusalem for the Father hath comforted his
People he hath redeemed Jerusalem the Father of hath made bare his Holy

898 arm in the eyes of all the Nations and all the ends of the Earth shall
see the salvation of the Father and the Father & I are one and then shall be
brought to pass that which is written awake awake again & put on thy strength
- the O' Lion put on thy beautiful garments O Jerusalem the Holy City
for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised &
the unclean shall shake thyself from the dust arise sit down O Jerusalem
loose thyself from the bands of thy neck & live Thou shalt be a Lion for thus
saith the Lord ye have sold yourselves for naught & ye shall be redeemed
without money, verily, verily I say unto you that my People shall know
my name in that day they shall know that I am he that speak
& then shall they say how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of
him that bringeth good tidings unto them that publisheth peace that
bringeth good tidings unto them of good that publisheth the salvation that say
- the unto Zion thy God reigneth and then shall a boy go forth depart ye
depart ye go ye out from thence touch not that which is unclean go ye forth
of the midst of her be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord for ye shall
not go out with haste nor go by flight for the Lord will go before you &
the God of Israel shall be your ~~reward~~ ^{reward} behold my servant shall deal
prudently he shall be exalted & exalted and be very high as many were
astounded at thee his visage was renowned more than any man and his form
more than the sons of men so shall he sprinkle many Nations his kins
shall shut their mouths at him for that which had been told them shall
they see and that which they had not heard shall they consider, verily, verily I
say unto you all these things shall surely come even as the Father hath
commanded me & then shall this Covenant which the Father hath commanded
with his People be fulfilled & then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with
my People & it shall be the land of their inheritance & verily I say unto you
^{sign unto you}
- for a sign that ye may know the time when these things shall be
about to take place that I shall gather in from their long dispersion
my People O House of Israel & shall establish again among ^{offspring} my Lion
and behold this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign for
- only I say unto you that when these things which I ^{shall} ~~do~~ ^{do} unto you and
- what I shall ~~do~~ ^{do} unto you hereafter of myself & by the power of the hol
y Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father shall be made known
unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this People which are a
remnant of the House of Jacob and concerning this my People which
shall be scattered by them verily, verily I say unto you when these things
shall be made known unto them of the Father and shall come forth of the
Father from thence unto you for it is wisdom in the Father that they should

399 be established in this land & be set up as a free People by the Power of
of the Father that these things may come forth from them unto a remnant of your
seed that the Covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath coven-
anted with his People of House of Israel therefore when these works and
the work which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth
from the Gentiles unto your seed which shall dwell in unbelief be-
cause of iniquity for thus it ~~becometh~~ behoveth the Father that it should
come forth from the Gentiles that he may shew forth his power unto the
Gentiles for this cause, that the Gentiles if they will not harden their hearts
that they may repent and come unto me and be baptised in my name
and know of the true points of my doctrine that they may be numbered among
my People of House of Israel & when these things come to pass that they shall
begin to know these things it shall be a sign unto them that they may
know that the work of the Father hath ^{it shall come} been commenced unto the fulfilling of
the Covenant which he hath made ^{it shall come} unto the People which are of the House of
Israel & when that day shall come to pass that things shall be that their mouths
which had not been told them shall they see & that which they had
not heard shall they consider for in that day for my sake shall the Father
work a work ~~among~~ which shall be a great & a marvellous work among them
and there shall be among them which will not believe it although a man
shall declare it unto them, but behold the life of my servant shall be in
my hand therefore they shall not hurt him although he shall be married
because of them yet I will heal him for I will shew unto them that
my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the Devil therefore it shall come
to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words which are Jesus Christ
which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles & shall
give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles
it shall be done even as Moses said they shall be cut off from among my
People which are of the Covenant & my People which are a remnant of Jacob
shall be among the Gentiles you in the midst of them as a lion among
the Beasts of the forest as a young lion among the flocks of sheep who
if he go through with breadth down & teareth in pieces & none can
deliver their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries & all their
enemies shall be cut off yea we be unto the Gentiles except they repent
for it shall come to pass in that day saith the Father that I will cut
off thy flocks out of the midst of thee & I will destroy thee & I will
cut off the cities of thy land & throw down all the strong holds & I will cut
off witchcrafts out of thy hand & thou shalt have no more soothsayers thy
groves & images I will also cut off & thy standing images out of the midst of

400 of thee & thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands & will
 pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee so will I destroy thy cities
 & it shall come to pass that all thy idols & deceivings & envenomings & stripes & priest
 -craft & whoredoms shall be done away for it shall come to pass saith the
 Father that at that day whosoever will not repent & come unto me bel
 -oved I will cut off from among my people & House of Israel
 & will execute vengeance & fury upon them even as upon the heathen
 such as they have not heard. Chapter X But if they will repent &
 hearken unto my words & harden not their hearts I will establish my Ch
 -urch among them & they shall come in unto the covenant & be numbered
 among the remnant of Jacob unto whom I have given this land for their
 Inheritance & they shall assist my People the remnant of Jacob & also
 as many of the house of Jacob of Israel as shall come that they may build
 a city which shall be called the New Jerusalem & then shall they assist
 my People that they may be gathered in which are scattered upon all
 the face of the land in unto the New Jerusalem & then shall the powers
 of Heaven come down among them & I also will be in the midst and
 then shall the work of the Father commence at that day even when this
 Gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people & I say
 unto you at that day shall the work of the Father commence among
 all the dispersed of my People yea even the tribes which have been
 lost which the Father hath had away out of Jerusalem yea the work shall
 commence among all the dispersed of any People with the Father to
 prepare the way whereby they may come unto me that they may
 call on the Father in my name yea & then shall the work commence with the Father
 among all Nations in preparing the way whereby his People may be gathered
 home to the land of their inheritance & they shall go out from all Nations
 & they shall not go out in haste nor go by flight for I will go before them
 saith the Father & I will be their rearward & then shall that which is written
 come to pass. Sing & huzzan then that didst not bear, break forth into si
 -nging & cry aloud thou that didst not travel with child for more are the
 children of the desolate than the children of the married wife saith the
 Lord enlarge thy place & thy tent & let them stretch forth the curtains
 of thy tabernacles & have not compassed thy Gods & strengthen the stakes for
 thou shalt break forth on the right hand & on the left & thy seed shall in
 -herit the Gentiles & make the desolate cities to be inhabited, fear not for
 thou shalt not be ashamed neither be thou confounded for thou shalt not
 be put to shame for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth & shalt not
 remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more for thou hast made thy husband

401 The Lord of Hosts is his name & thy redeemer the Holy one of Israel the God
 of the whole earth shall he be called for the Lord hath called thee as a woman to me
 when I grieved in spirit & wife of youth when thou wast I used saith thy God for
 a small moment have I forsaken thee and with great mercies will I gather thee
 in a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment but with everlasting
 kindness will I have mercy on thee saith the Lord thy redeemer for thus the waters of
 Noah I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more
 grove over the earth so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee for the
 Mountains shall depart & the hills be removed but my kindness shall not depart
 from thee neither shall the Covenant of my peace be removed saith the Lord that
 hath mercy on thee & thou shalt dwell in peace with the tempests & not be comforted behold
 I will lay thy stones with fair colors & lay thy foundations with sapphires & will
 make thy windows of agates & thy gates of Carbunkles & all thy borders of pleasant
 stones & all the Children shall be taught of the Lord & great shall be the plea-
 ce of thy Children in righteousness & shall thou be established thou shalt be
 free from oppression for thou shalt not fear & from terror for it shall not con-
 near thee behold they shall surely gather together against thee not by me
 whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake behold I
 have created the Smith that bloweth the Coals in the fire & that bringeth
 forth an instrument for his work & I have created the ^{master} ~~smith~~ to destroy
 no weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper & every tongue that shall
 revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn this is the heritage of
 the servants of the Lord & their righteousnes is of me saith the Lord & now behold
 I say unto you that ye had ought to search these things yea a Commandment
 I give unto you that ye search these things diligently for great is the reward of
 Joiah for surely he spake as touching all things concerning my People which
 are of the House of Israel therefore it must needs be that he must speak
 also to the Gentiles & all things that he spake hath been & shall be even accord-
 ing to the words which he spake therefore give heed to my words write
 the things which I have told you & according to the time & the will of the
 Father go forth unto the Gentiles & whosoever will hearken unto my words
 & repenteth & baptised the same shall be saved search the Prophets for
 many there be that testify of these things & will come to pass that when Jesus
 had said these words he ^{hid} ~~came~~ unto them again after he had expounded all the
 scriptures unto them which they had received he ^{saith} ~~came~~ unto them & said
 other scriptures I would that ye should write that ye have not & it came to pass
 that he saith unto Nephi bring forth the Records which ye have kept & when
 Nephi had brought forth the Records & laid them before him he cast his eyes
 upon them & saith & I say unto you I Commanded my servant Samuel the

402 Lamanites that he should testify unto his People that at the day that the Father should ^{that} glorify his name in me there were many saints which should arise from the dead & should appear unto many & should minister unto them & he said unto them were it not so & his disciples answered him & said yea Lord Samuel did prophesy according to thy words & they were all fulfilled & Jesus said unto them how be it that ye have not written this thing that many saints did arise & appear unto many & did minister unto them & it came to pass that when he remembered that this thing had not been written & it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written therefore it was written according as he commanded Chapter X

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one which they had written he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had commanded unto them & it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the word which the Father had given unto Malachi & he would tell unto them & it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them & these are the words which he did tell unto them saying thus said the Father unto Malachi behold I will send my messenger & he shall prepare the way before me & the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his Temple even the messenger of the Covenant whom ye delight in behold he shall come saith the Lord of Hosts but may abide the day of his coming & who shall stand when he appeareth for he is like a refiner's fire & like fullers soap & he shall sit as a refiner & purifier of Silver & he shall purify the Sons of Levi & purge them as gold & silver that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness then shall the offering of Judah & Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord as in the days of old & as in former years & I will come near to you to judgment & I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers & against the adulterers & against false swearers & against those that oppress the hireling in his wages the widow & the fatherless & that turn aside the stranger & fear not me saith the Lord of Hosts for I am the Lord & I change not, therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances & have not kept them return unto me & I will return unto you saith the Lord of Hosts but ye said wherein shall we return will a man rob God yet ye have robbed me but ye say wherein have we robbed thee in tithes & offerings ye are cursed with a curse for ye have robbed me even this whole nation bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse that there may be meat in my house and prove me now herewith saith the Lord of Hosts if I will not open you the windows of Heaven & pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it & I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes he shall

14 I will not destroy the fruits of your ground neither shall your vine cast
 her fruit before the time in the field saith the Lord of Hosts & all Nations
 shall call you Blessed for ye shall be a delightful land saith the Lord
 of Hosts. your words have been stout against me saith Lord yet ye say what
 have we spoken against thee ye have said it is vain to serve God & what do we
 profit that we have kept his ordinances & that we have walked mournfully
 before the Lord of Hosts & now we call the proud happy yea they that work
 wickedness are set up yea them that tempt God are even delivered them
 they that feared the Lord spake often one to another & the Lord hearkened & heard &
 a Book of remembrance ^{was} written before him for them that feared the Lord & that
 thought upon his name & they shall be mine saith the Lord of Hosts in that day
 when I make up my jewels & I will spare them as a man spareth his own son
 that sweeth him then shall ye return & discern between the righteous & the wicked
 between him that serve the God & him that serve him not for behold the day
 cometh that shall burn as an Oven & all the proud yea & all that do wickedly
 shall be stubble & the day that cometh shall burn them up saith the Lord
 of Hosts. that it shall leave them neither ^{root} ~~not~~ nor branch but unto you
 that fear my name shall the stock of righteousness arise with healing
 in his wings & ye shall go forth & grow up as calves of the stall
 & ye shall tread down the wicked for they shall be ~~as~~ ashes under the sole
 of your feet in the day that I shall do this saith the Lord of Hosts remember
 ye the Law of Moses my servant which I commanded unto him in Mount
 Sinai for all Israel with the statutes & judgments behold I will send you Elijah the Prophet
 - it before the coming of the great & dreadful day of the Lord & he shall turn
 the heart of the Fathers to the Children & the heart of the Children to their Fa-
 -thers ~~that~~ lest I come & smite the Earth with a curse And now it came to pass
 that when Jesus had said these things he expounded them unto the multitude
 - & he did expound all things unto them both great & small & he saith
 these scriptures which ye had not with you the Father commanded that I
 should give unto you for it was wisdom in him that they should be given
 unto future generations & he did expound all things even from the begin-
 -ning until the time ^{now} ~~now~~ should come in his glory yea even all things which
 should come upon the ~~world~~ ^{Earth} even until the elements should
 melt with fervent heat & the earth should be wrapped together as a scroll
 - and the Heaven & the Earth should pass away & even unto the great &
 last day when all people & all kindreds & all Nations & Tongues shall
 stand before God to be judged of their works whether they be good or
 whether they be evil if they be good to the resurrection of Everlasting
 life & if they be evil to the resurrection of damnation being on a

404 parallel the one on the one hand & the other on the other hand
 according to the mercy & the Justice & the holiness which is in Christ
 which was before the world began Chapter XII
 And now there cannot be written in this Book even an hundredth
 part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the People but behol-
 -ld the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he
 taught the People & these things have I written which are a lesser part
 of the things which he taught the People & I have written them to the intent
 -^{that} they may be brought again unto this People from the Gentiles ac-
 -cording to the words which Jesus hath spoken & when they shall have re-
 -ceived this which is expedient that they should have, first to try their faith
 & if it should so be that they shall believe these things then shall the great-
 -ter things be made manifest unto them & if it so be that they will not
 believe these things then shall the greater things be withheld from them
 unto their condemnation behold I were about to write them all which were
 engraven upon the plates of Nephi but the Lord forbid it saying I will
 try the faith of my People therefore I Mormon do write the things which
 have been Commanded me of the Lord, And now I Mormon make
 an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been
 Commanded me therefore I would that ye should behold that the Lord
 truly did teach the People for the space of three days & after that he did
 show himself unto them & he did break bread & bless it & give it unto
 them & it came to pass that he did teach & minister unto the Children of the
 multitude of whom hath been spoken & he did loose their tongues
 & they did speak unto their Fathers great & marvelous things even great-
 -er than he had revealed unto the People & loosed their tongues that they
 could utter & it came to pass that after he had ascended into Heaven these
 -and time that he showed himself unto them & ^{he} gone unto the Father after
 having healed all their sick & their lame & opened the eyes of the blind
 & sendeth forth the word & the deep & even had done all manner of Cures among
 them & raised a man from the dead & had shown forth his Power un-
 -to them & had ascended unto the Father, behold it came to pass on the
 morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together & they both saw
 & heard these Children yea even Babes did open their mouths & utter mar-
 -velous things & the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should
 not any man write them & it came to pass that the Disciples whom Jesus had
 chosen began from that time forth to baptise & to teach as many as did come
 unto them & as many as were baptised in the name of Jesus were filled with
 the Holy Ghost & many of them saw & heard unspeakable things which

5 are not lawful to be written & they taught & did minister one to another
and they had all things common among them every man dealing
justly one with another and it came to pass that they did do all things
- as even as Jesus had commanded them & they which were baptised in the
name of Jesus were called the Church of Christ & it came to pass that as the
Disciples of Jesus were journeying & were preaching the things which they had
both heard & seen & were baptizing in the name of Jesus it came to pass that the
Disciples were gathered together & were united in mighty prayer & fasting & Jesus
again showed himself unto them for they were praying unto the Father in his name
& Jesus came & stood in the midst of them & said unto them what will ye that I shall
give unto you & they said unto him Lord we will that thou wouldst tell us the
name whereby we shall call this Church for there are disputations among
the people concerning this matter & the Lord said unto them verily verily
I say unto you whosoever it be that the People should name that Church because
of this thing have thou not read the scriptures which say & ye must take upon
you in name of Christ which is my name & whosoever shall call upon my name & endure to the end the same shall
be saved at the last day therefore whosoever ye shall do ye shall do it in my name
therefore ye shall call the Church in my name & ye shall call upon the Father in
my name that he will bless this Church for my sake & howbeit my Church shall
it be called in my name for if a Church be called in Moses name & in
the name of a man it is not the Church of a man but
if it be called in my name then it is my Church if it so be that they are built upon my
Gospel verily I say unto you that ye are built upon my Gospel therefore ye shall call
whatsoever things ye do call in my name therefore if ye call upon the Father for the Church
if it be in my name the Father will hear you & if it so be that the Church is built upon
my Gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it but if it be not built
upon my Gospel & is built upon the works of ^{men} or upon the works of the devil
verily I say unto you they have sown their works for a season & by & by the fire cometh
& they are sown down & cast into the fire from whence there is no return for
their works do follow them but it is because of their works that they are sown down
therefore remember the things that I have told you & I will have given unto you my
Gospel & this is the Gospel which I have given unto you that I came into the world to do
the will of my Father because my Father sent me & my Father will visit me that I may
be lifted up upon the Cross & after that I have been lifted up upon the Cross
I will draw all men unto me that have been lifted up by men men should
men be lifted up by the Father & shall be ^{men} be judged of their works whether
they be good or whether they be evil & for this cause have I been lifted up therefore
according to the power of the Father will draw all men unto me that they may

406 be judged according to their works & it shall come to pass that whoso believeth in me shall not be judged in my name shall be filled with it he endureth to the end behold him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to see the world & he that endureth not unto the end the same is he that is also cast into the fire from whence there can no more return because of the words of the Father & this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men for this cause to fulfil the words which he hath ~~spoken~~ given & he hath not but fulfil the all his words & no unclean thing can enter into his Kingdom therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood because of their faith & the repentance of all their sins & their faithfulness unto the end now this is the commandment I give all ye ends of the earth whoso cometh unto me shall be baptised in my name that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day verily I say unto you this is my Gospel & ye know the things that ye must do in my Church for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do therefore if ye do these things blessed are ye for ye shall be lifted up at the last day Chapter X Of those things which ye have seen & heard save it be those which are forbidden write the ^{names} of this people which shall be even as hath been written of that which hath been for behold out of the Books which have been written & which shall be written shall this people be judged for by their works be known unto men & behold all things are written by the Father therefore out of the Books which shall be written shall the world be judged & know ye that ye shall be judges of this people according to the judgment which I shall give unto you which shall be just therefore what manner of men had ye ought to be verily I say unto you even as I am and now I go unto the Father and verily I say unto you whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name it shall be given unto you therefore ask & ye shall receive know & it shall be opened unto you for he that asketh receiveth & to him that knocketh it shall be opened and behold my joy is great even unto fullness because of you & also this generation yea even the Father rejoiceth & also all the holy Angels because of you & this generation for none of them ^{are} lost behold I would that ye should understand for I mean them which are now alive of this generation & none of them are lost & in them I have fullness of joy but behold it sorroweth me because of the last generation for this generation for they are lead away captive by him even as was the ^{land} of Judah for they will sell me for silver & for gold & for that moeth doth corrupt which thieves can break through & steal & in that day will I visit them even in burning their works upon their own heads & it came to pass that when

457 Jesus had ended these sayings he sayeth unto his disciples on the way in at the
strait gate for strait is the gate & narrow is the way that leads to life & few
there be that find it but wide is the gate & broad the way which leads to death
and many there be that travel therein until the night cometh wherein
no man can work & it came to pass when Jesus had said these words he path
unto his disciples one by one saying unto them what is it that ye desire of me after
that I am gone to the Father & they all spake save it were three saying we des-
ire that we may come unto the age of man that our ministry wherein thou hast
called us may have an end that we may speedily come unto thee in thy Kingdom &
he said unto them blessed are ye because ye desire this thing of me therefore
after that ye are seventy & two years old ye shall come unto me in my Kingdom
& with me ye shall find rest & when he had spoken unto them he turned himself
unto the three & said unto them what will ye that I should do unto you when I am
gone unto the Father & they sorrowed in their hearts for they durst not speak unto
him the thing which they desired & he said unto them I would do any thing
if ye have desired the thing which John my Beloved said that I was with
me in my mind to refer that I should do up by the Jews) desired of me therefore
more blessed are ye for ye shall never know death but ye shall live to behold all the
doings of the Father unto the children of men even until all things shall be ful-
filled according to the will of the Father when I shall come in my glory with
the powers of Heaven & ye shall never endure the pains of death but when I shall
come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortal-
ity to immortality & then shall ye be blessed in the Kingdom of my Father
& again ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh neither
sorrow or we it be for the sins of the world & all this will I do because of the thing
which ye have desired of me for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls
of men unto me while the world shall stand & for this cause ye shall have
fullness of joy & ye shall sit down in the Kingdom of my Father & as your
joy shall be full even as the Father hath given me fullness of joy & ye shall be
even as I am & I am even as the Father & the Father and I am one & the Holy Ghost
beareth record of the Father and me & the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto
the children of men because of me and it came to pass that when Jesus had said
these words he touched every one of them with his finger & said it were the three
which were to tarry & then he departed and behold the Heavens were opened and
they ^{were} caught up into Heaven & saw & heard unspeakable things & it was forbidden
them that they should utter neither was it given unto them power that they could
utter the things which they saw & heard & whether they were in the body or out
of the body they could not tell for it did seem unto them like a
Transfiguration of them that they were changed from this body of flesh into

408 an immortal state that they could behold the things of God but it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard & seen because of the commandment which was given them in Heaven & now whether they were mortal or immortal from the day of their Transfiguration I know not but this much I know according to the Record which hath been given they did go forth upon the face of the land & did minister unto all the People uniting as many to the Church as would believe in their Preaching Baptizing ~~them~~ them & as many as were Baptized did receive the Holy Ghost & they were cast into Prison by them who did not belong to the Church & the Prisons could not hold them for they were rent in twain & they were cast down into the earth but they did smite the earth with the word of God inasmuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth & therefore they could not dig pits sufficiently to hold them & thrice they were cast into a furnace & received no harm & thrice were they cast into a den of wild beasts & behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb & received no harm & it came to pass that times they did go forth among all the People of the Land & did preach the Gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the Land & they were converted unto the Lord & were united unto the Church of Christ & thus the People of that Generation were blessed according to the word of Jesus. And now I Hermon make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time behold I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death but the Lord forbade, therefore I write them not for they are hid from the world but behold I have seen them & they have ministered unto me & behold they will be among the Jewiles & the Gentiles know them not they will also be among the Jews & the Jews shall know them not & it shall come to pass when ~~that~~ the Lord shall fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel & unto all Nations Kindreds Tongues & People & shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls that their desire may be fulfilled & also because of the Convincing power of God which is in them & thus are as the Angels of God & if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto what soever man it seemeth them good therefore great & marvelous works shall be wrought by them before the great & coming day when all People must surely stand before the Judgment seat of Christ; yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them before that Judgment day & if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ ye would according to the words of Christ know that these things must surely come to pass & so be unto him that will not hearken

409 unto the words of Jesus is also to them which he hath & hath sent among them
 for whose ruineth not the words of Jesus & the words of them which he hath sent & will not
 not them & therefore he will not receive them at the last day & it would be better for
 them if they had not been born for aye suppose that ye can get rid of the jus-
 -tice of an offended God who hath been trampled under feet of men that
 thereby salvation might come, and now be hold a & shake concerning them &
 from the Lord shall I have ye even those which were carryt up into ^{the} heavens
 that I know not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality of ^{behold}
 But Jesus & I have enquired of the Lord & he hath made it manifest unto me
 that ^{it is} needs be a change wrought upon their bodies and ~~it is~~ needs be that
 they must taste of death therefore that they might not taste of death there was
 a change wrought upon their bodies that they might not suffer pain nor ^{be}
 save it were for the sins of the world now this change was not equal to that which
 should be wrought at the last day but there was a change wrought upon them
 inasmuch that Satan could have no power over them that he could not tempt
 them & they were sanctified in the flesh that they were Holy & that the powers
 of the earth could not hold them in this state they were to remain until the
 judgment day of Christ & at that day they were to receive a greater change &
 to be received into the Kingdom of the Father to go no more out but to dwell with
 God eternally in the heavens & now behold I say unto you that when the Lord
 shall see fit in his wisdom that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles
 according to his word then ye may know that the Covenant which the Father
 hath made with the Children of Israel concerning their restoration to the land
 of their inheritance is already beginning to be fulfilled & ye may know that the
 words of the Lord which have been spoken by the Holy Prophets shall all
 be fulfilled & ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the
 Children of Israel & ye need not imagine in your hearts that their words which
 have been spoken are vain for behold the Lord will remember his Covenant
 which he hath made unto his People of the House of Israel & when ye shall see
 these sayings coming forth among you then ye need not any longer spurn at the sayings
 of the Lord for the sword of his justice is in his right hand & behold at that day if ye shall
 spurn at his sayings he will smite that it shall soon overtake you & we caution that
 ye will at the coming of the Lord ye will smite him that shall deny the Christ & his
 works ye will smite him & will deny the revelations of the Lord & that shall say
 the Lord no longer worketh by revelation or by Prophecy or by gifts or by tongues or by
 healings or by the power of the Holy Ghost ye will smite him that shall say at
 that day that there can be no messenger sent by Jesus Christ & that he get gain for he
 that doeth this shall become like unto the sons of perdition for whom there was no man
 many according to the words of Christ ye will not any longer have nonhuman made

all game of the Jews ^{and} of the remnant of the house of Israel, for behold the Lord
 remembereth his covenant unto them & he will do unto them according to that which
 he hath sworn: therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of
 the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the
 covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel Chapter XIV

¶ I have been to ye Gentiles and, hear the words of Jesus Christ the Son of God the living
 God which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you for behold
 he hath commanded me that I should write saying, turn all ye Gentiles from your
 wicked ways & repent of your evil doings, of your lyings & deceivings & of your whoredoms
 & of your secret abominations & of your idolatries & of your murders & your priestcrafts
 & your envyings & your strife, from all your wickedness & abominations & come
 unto me & be baptised in my name that ye may receive a remission of your
~~sin~~ sins & be filled with the Holy Ghost that ye may be numbered with my
 People which are of the House of Israel - in the Book of ^{the} ~~the~~ ^{which} ~~the~~ ^{is} the son
 of Man one of the Disciples of Jesus Christ - An account of the People of ^{the} ~~the~~ ^{which} ~~the~~ ^{is} the son
 of Man one of the Disciples of Jesus Christ - ^{Chapter XV}
 And it came to pass that the thirty & fourth year was
 passed away & also the thirty & fifth, behold the Disciples of Jesus had formed
 a Church of Christ in all the lands round about & as many as did come unto
 them & did truly repent of their sins were baptised in the name of Jesus & they
 did also receive the Holy Ghost and it came to pass in the thirty & sixth year the
 People were all converted unto the Lord upon all the face of the land both Nephites
 & Lamanites & there was no contention ^{or} ~~or~~ ^{disputations} among them & every man did
 deal justly one with another & they had ^{all} ~~the~~ things common among them therefore there
 were not rich & poor & bond & free but they were all made free & partakers of the
 Heavenly gift & it came to pass that the thirty & seventh year passed away also
 & there still continued ^{to be} ~~to be~~ peace in the land & there were great & marvellous works
 wrought by the Disciples of Jesus inasmuch that they did heal the sick & raise the
 dead & cause the lame to walk & the blind to receive their sight & the deaf to hear
 and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men & inasmuch
 as they work miracles some time in the name of Jesus & thus did the
 thirty & eighth year pass away & also the thirty & ninth & the forty & first & the forty
 & second year even until forty & nine years had passed away & also the fifty & first
 and the fifty & second year & even until fifty & seven years had passed away & the
 Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land & inasmuch that they did
 build cities again wherefore had been cities burned yea even that great city
 Jaredhema did they ~~cause~~ ^{cause} to be built again but there were many cities
 which had been seen & the waters came upon the head thereof therefore these
 cities could not be renewed & now behold it came to pass that the People of Nephi
 did wax strong & did multiply exceedingly fast & became an exceeding fair

411 And delightful people & they were married & given in marriage & were
blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto
them & they did not walk any more up to the performances & ordinances of the Law of
Moses but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their
Lord & their God continuing in fasting & prayer & in meeting together oft to
pray & to hear the word of the Lord, and it came to pass that there was no contention
among all the people in all the land but there were mighty miracles wrought among the
the Disciples of Jesus & it came to pass that the seventy & first year passed away & also
the seventy & second year & yet in fine until the seventy & ninth year had passed
away & yet even an hundred years had ^{passed} away & the Disciples of Jesus whom he had
chosen had all gone to the paradise of God save it were the three which should
tarry & there were other Disciples & trained in their stead & also many of that genera-
tion which had passed away & it came to pass that there was no contention in the land
because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the People & there were
no enmities nor contentions nor murders nor lying nor murders nor
mannered lasciviousness nor any thing which could not be said of the people among all the people
which had been created by the hand of God there were no robbers nor no murderers
neither were there any manner of wickedness nor any manner of evil but they were in one the will
of Christ & heirs to the Kingdom of God & now blessed were they for the Lord did
bless them in all their days & yet even they were blessed & prospered until an hundred
& ten years had passed away & the first generation from Christ had passed away & there was
no contention in all the land & it came to pass that Nephi (the that kept the last re-
cord & he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died & son Amos kept it in his stead & he
kept it upon the plates of Nephi also & he kept it eighty & four years & there was still
peace in the land save it were a small part of the People who had revolted
from the Church & took upon them the name of Lamanites therefore there began
to be Lamanites again in the land & it came to pass that Amos died also &
it was an hundred & eighty & four years from the coming of Christ, and his son
Amos kept it in his stead & he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi & it was also written
in the Book of Nephi which is this book & it came to pass that two hundred & age
-ars had passed away & the second generation had all passed away & it were
a few & now Mormon would that ye should know that the People had
multiplied in so much that they were spread upon all the face of the land
& that they had become exceeding rich because of their prosperity in labour
& now in this two hundred & first year there began to be among them those
- which were lifted up in pride & in the wearing of costly apparel & all manner
- men of fine pearls & of the fine things of the world & now at that time forth they did
have their goods & their substance no more common among them & they began to be
divided into classes & they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain and

412 began to deny the true Church of Christ & it came to pass that when two hundred & ten years had passed away there were many Churches in the land & yet there were Churches which professed to know the Christ & yet they did deny the more part of his Gospel inasmuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness & did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness & this Church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity & because of the power of Satan which did get hold upon their hearts, & again there was another Church which denied the Christ & they did profane the true Church of Christ because of their humility & their belief in Christ & they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them therefore they did ~~deny~~ ^{exercise} power & authority over the Disciples of Jesus which did tarry with them & they did cast them into prison but by the power of the word of God which was in them the prisons were rent in twain & they went forth doing mighty miracles among them nevertheless notwithstanding all these miracles the People did harden their hearts & did seek to kill them even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus according to his word & they did cast them into furnaces of fire & they came forth receiving no harm & they also cast them into dens of wild beasts & they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb & they did come forth from among them receiving no harm nevertheless the People did harden their hearts for they were led by many priests & false Prophets to build up many Churches & to do all manner of iniquity & they did smite upon the people of Jesus but the people of Jesus did not smite again & thus they did dwindle in unbelief & wickedness from year to year even until two hundred & thirty years had passed away - & now it came to pass in this year year in the two hundred & thirty & first year there was a great division among the People & it came to pass that in this year there arose a People which was called the Nephites & they were true believers in Christ & among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites Jacobites & Josephites & Zoramites therefore the true believers in Christ & the true worshipers of Christ among whom were the three disciples of Jesus which should tarry; were called Nephites & Jacobites & Josephites & Zoramites & it came to pass that they who rejected the Gospel were called Lamanites & Lemuelites & Ishmaelites & they did not dwindle in unbelief but they did willfully rebel against the Gospel of Christ & they did teach their children that they should not believe even as their Fathers from the beginning ^{did} & it was because of the wickedness & abominations of their Fathers even as in the beginning & they were taught to hate the children of God even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning & it came to pass that two hundred & forty four years had passed away & thus were the affairs of the People & the more wicked part

115 did come upon us with exceeding great distress inasmuch that they did fight my
armies & in they would not fight & they began to retreat towards the North-east
& it came to pass that the Lord did come to the city of Angolah & we did take possession of the city
& made preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites & it came to pass that
we did fortify the city with our mights and notwithstanding all our fortifications the
Lamanites did come upon us & did drive us out of the city & they did also drive us forth
out of the land of David & we marched forth & came to the land of Goshen which was in
the borders west by the sea where it came to pass that we did gather in our people as
fast as it were possible that we might get them together in one body but behold the
land was filled with robbers & with Lamanites & notwithstanding the great distress
which hung over my people they did not repent of their evil doings therefore
there was blood & carnage spread throughout all the ^{land of the} land both on the part of the Nephites
and also on the part of the Lamanites & it was as one complete revolution through
out all the face of the land & now the Lamanites had a King & his name was Lamoni
& he came against us with an army of forty thousand & behold I withstood him with
forty & two thousand & it came to pass that I beat them with my army that
they fled before me & behold all this was done & three hundred & thirty years had pass-
ed away & it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity & began to cry
even as had been prophesied by Samuel the Prophet for behold no man could help that
which was his own for the thieves & the robbers & the murderers & the magic art &
the wickedness which was in the land thus there began to be a mourning & a lamenta-
tion in all the land because of these things & more especially among the
people of Nephi & it came to pass that when Mormon saw their lamentations & their
mourning & their sorrowing before the Lord my heart did begin to rejoice within me
knowing the misery & the long suffering of the Lord therefore supposing that the
Lord would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people
but behold this my joy was vain for their sorrowing was not unto repentance
because of the good men of God but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned
because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin & they did
not come unto Jesus with broken hearts & contrite spirits but they did curse God
& wish to die nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives &
it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again & I saw that the
day of grace was passed with them both temporally & spiritually for I saw
thousands of them hewn down because of their rebellion against their God & I reaped
up as dung upon the face of the land & thus three hundred & forty & four years
had passed away & it came to pass that in the three hundred & forty & fifth year
the Nephites did ^{begin} to flee before the Lamanites & they were pursued until they
came even to the land of Goshen before it was possible to stop them in their retreat
& now the city of Goshen was near the land where Mormon had deposited

41. The Records with the Lord that they might not be destroyed. And he
I had gone according to the word of the Lord & taken the plates of gold
I did make a record according to the words of the Lord upon the plates of
Nephi I will make a full account of all the wickedness & abominations
that upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wicked-
ness & abominations for behold a continual scene of wickedness & abomi-
nations had been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to
behold the ways of man & woe is me because of their wickedness for my de-
ar heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness all my days
Nevertheless I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day & it came to pass
that this year the People of Nephi again were hunted & driven & it came
to pass that we were driven forth until we had come Northward to the land
which was called Shem-hi that came to pass that we did fortify the City of Shem-
hi & we did gather in our People as much as it were possible that perhaps we
might save them from destruction & it came to pass in the three hundred
& forty year they began to come upon us again & it came to pass that
I did speak unto my People & I did urge them with great energy that they we-
ld stand boldly before the Lamanites & fight for their wives & their child-
ren & their houses & their homes & my words did arouse them somewhat to
vigor in so much that they did not flee from before the Lamanites but did
and with boldness against them & it came to pass that we did contend with
an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand & it came to pass
that we did stand before them with an impetuosity that they did flee from before
us & it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies
and did meet them again & did beat them nevertheless the strength of the Lord was
not with us yea we were left to ourselves that the spirit of the Lord did not
abide in us therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren & my
heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my People because
of their wickedness & their abominations but behold we did go forth again
not the Lamanites but the Robbers of Gadianton until we had again
taken possession of the lands of our inheritance & the three hundred & forty year
year had passed away & in the three hundred & fiftieth year we made a trea-
-aty with the Lamanites & the Robbers of Gadianton in the which we did give
the lands of our inheritance divided & the Lamanites did give unto us
the land Northward yea even to the narrow passage which lead into the
land Southward & we did give unto the Lamanites all the land Southward &
it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until
ten years more had passed away & behold I had employed my People
the Nephites in preparing their lands & their arms against the time

417 of battle & it came to pass that the Lord did send me among this people & some of them & be-
ge the people & build up again my Church & ye shall be gathered & such say with that people but it was known
as they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them & granted unto them a chance for pen-
itance & behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God & it came to pass that after this
tenth year had passed away making in the whole three hundred & sixty years from the coming
of Christ & the King of the Jews the Lamani's sent an epistle unto me which gave me to know
that they were preparing to come again to battle against us & it came to pass that I did cause
People that they should gather themselves together at the land desolation to a city which was in the borders
by the narrow pass which lead into the land southward & there we did place our armies that we might
stop the armies of the Lamani's that they might not get possession of any of our lands therefore we
did fight against them with all our force & it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty
& first year the Lamani's did come down to the City of Desolation to battle against us & it came
to pass that in that year we did beat them inasmuch that they did return to their own lands
again & in the three hundred & sixty & second year they did come down again to battle
& we did beat them again & did slay a great number of them & their dead was cast into
the sea & now because of this great thing which we people the Nephites had done they began
to boast in their strength & began to say before the Nephites that they would avenge themselves of the
blood of their brethren which had been slain by their enemies & they did swear by the Nephites & al-
so by the throne of God that they would go up to battle against their enemies & would cut them
off from the face of the land & it came to pass that I even manifested utterly my refusal from this time
forth to be a commander or a leader of this people because of their wickedness & abomination
behold I had loved them not with standing their wickedness I had led them many times to
battle & I had loved them according to the love of God which was in me with all my heart
& my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them & yet the
Lord it was without faith because of the hardness of their hearts & they have not delivered them
out of the hands of their enemies & they repented not of their sins & when they had sworn by
all that had been forbidden them by our Lord & our Savior Jesus Christ that they would go up
unto their enemies to battle & avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren behold the voice
of the Lord came unto me saying vengeance is mine & I will repay & because this people repented
not after that I have delivered them behold they shall be cut off from the face of the earth
& it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies & I did stand as an
even as the Lord had commanded me & I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto
the world the things which I saw & heard according to the manifestations of the spirit which
had testified of things to come therefore I write unto you Gentiles & also unto you House of Israel
when the works shall commence that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land
of your inheritance & behold I write unto all the ends of the earth & I write unto you twelve tribes
of Israel which shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom
Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem & I write also unto the remnant of this
people which shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land & they
shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem

418 & these things do the spirit manifest unto me therefore write unto you all & for the
cause I write unto you that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgement seat
of Christ ye every soul which belongs to the whole human family of Adam & ye
must stand to be judged of your works whether they be good or evil & also that ye may be
alive the Gospel of Jesus Christ which ye shall have among you & also that the Jews the
Covenant People of the Lord shall have other witnesses besides ~~those~~ ^{those} which they saw & heard
that Jesus was he who they also was the very Christ & the very God & I would that I could
persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent & prepare to stand before the judgement seat of
Christ — Chapter 11 And now it came to pass that in the three hundred &
sixty & third year the Nephites did go up with their armies ~~to battle~~ ^{to fight} against the Lamanites
out of the land of Desolation & it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back
again to the land of desolation & while they were yet in a fresh army of the Lamanites
did come upon them & they had a sore battle in somuch that the Lamanites did take
possession of the City Desolation & did slay many of the Nephites & did take many pri-
soners & the remainder did flee again the inhabitants of the City Jeoncum now the City
Jeoncum lay in the borders by the sea shore & it was also near the City Desolation &
it was because ~~that~~ the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they beg-
an to be smitten forasmuch as it was not for that the Lamanites could have had no power
over them but he hold the judgements of God will overthrow the wicked & it is by the
wicked that the wicked are punished for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the
Children of men unto bloodshed & it came to pass that the Lamanites did make prepa-
ration to come against the City Jeoncum & it came to pass in the three hundred & sixty & fourth
year the Lamanites did come against the City Jeoncum that they might take possession
of the City Jeoncum also & it came to pass that they were repulsed & driven back by the Neph-
ites & when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites thence did again seek
their own strength & thus continued in their own might & took possession again of the City Desolat-
ion & now all these things had been done & there had been thousands slain on both sides
— as both the Nephites & the Lamanites & it came to pass that three hundred & sixty & sixth
year had passed away & the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle & yet
the Nephites repented not of the evil which they had done but persisted in their wicked-
ness continually & it is impossible for the tongue to ~~describe~~ ^{describe} or for man to ar-
rite a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood & carnage which was
among the People both of the Nephites & of the Lamanites & every heart was hard-
ened so that they delighted in the drinking of Blood continually & there never
had been so great wickedness among all the Children of Adam nor even among all
the House of Israel according to the words of the Lord as were among this People & it came
to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the City Desolation & this because their
numbers did exceed the numbers of the Nephites & they did also march forward against
the City Jeoncum & did drive the inhabitants forth out of the same & did take many
prisoners of women & of children & did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idols & gods

419 and it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty & seventh year the
-phites being angry because the Lamanites had ~~over~~ ^{despoiled} their women & their ch-
-ildren that they did go against the Lamanites with exceeding great anger in so
much that they did fight again with the Lamanites & drive them out of their lands &
the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hun-
-dred & seventy & fifth year & in this year they did come down against the Nephites
with all their powers & they were not numbered because of the greatness of their
numbers & from this time forth did the Nephites ^{gain} no power over the Lamanites but began
to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun & it came to pass that the Lamanites
did come down upon us in the late desolation & there was an exceedingly sore battle fought
-g in the land desolation in the which they did beat the Nephites & they fled again
from before them & they came to the city Bery & there they did stand against the Lam-
-anites with exceeding boldness inasmuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until
they had come against the second time & when they had come the second time the Nephites were
driven & a number of us & an exceedingly great many of our women & their children
were again ~~driven~~ ^{driven} into the desolate & it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from
before them & being all the inhabitants with them both in towns & villages & most more
-men seeing that the Lamanites were about to over throw the land therefore I did go to the hill
shim & I did take up all the records which I nor any man had hid up unto the Lord & it
came to pass that I did go forth among the People Nephites & said in front of the oath
which I had made that I would no more assist ^{them} & they gave me command again
of their armies for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their
afflictions but behold I was without hopes for I knew the judgments of the Lord
which should come upon them for they repented not of their iniquities but did
struggle for their lives without calling upon that being who had created them
& it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the City of
-~~London~~ ^{London} but behold they were driven back that they did not take the City at that time
- & it came to pass that they came against us again & we did maintain the City & there were
also other Cities which were maintained by the Nephites which strong holds did cut them
off that they could not get into the Country which lay before us to destroy the inhab-
-itants of our land until it came to pass that whosoever lands we had passed by the inhab-
-itants there were not gathered in were destroyed by the Lamanites & their towns
- & villages & cities were burned with fire & thus the three hundred & seventy &
- nine years passed away & it came to pass that in the three ^{hundred} & eighty & eighth year the
Lamanites did come again against us to battle & we did stand against them boldly
but it was all in vain for so great were their numbers that they did beat the People
- ~~and they did~~ ^{and they did} the Nephites under their feet & it came to pass that we did again take
to flight & ^{their} ~~the~~ ^{those} light were swifter than the Lamanites did escape & they who
- & flight did not meet the Lamanites were swept down & destroyed & now behold I
- common do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them an
an awful scene of blood & carnage as was laid before mine eyes but I knowing that
these things must ^{surely} be made known & that all things which are hid must be

420 I have told upon the house top & also that a knowledge of these things must come
unto the remnant of these People & also unto the Gentiles which the Lord hath will-
ed should scatter this People & this People should be counted as sought among
them therefore I wrote a small abridgement desiring not to give a full account
of the things which I have seen because of the commandment which I have re-
ceived & also that ye might not have to great sorrow because of the wickedness of this
People & now behold this I speak unto their seed & also to the Gentiles ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{is} ~~are~~
for the House of Israel that realize & know from whence their blessings come
for I know that such will sorrow for the ^{Calamity of the} house of Israel yea they will sorrow
for the destruction of this People they will sorrow that this ^{Noble} ~~had~~ ^{id} ~~not~~ ^{repent}
that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus now these things
are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob & they are written af-
ter this manner because it is known of God that wickedness will not
bring them forth unto them & they are to be hid up unto the Lord that
they may come forth in his own due time & that is the commandment
which I have received & behold they shall come forth according to the co-
mandment of the Lord when he shall see fit in his wisdom & behold they shall go unto
the unbelieving of the Jews & for this intent shall they go that they may be persuaded
that Jesus is the Christ the Son of the living God that the Father may bring about thro-
ugh his most beloved his great and eternal purpose in the restoring the Jews & all
the house of Israel to the land of their inheritance which the Lord their God hath
given them unto the fulfilling of his Covenant & also that the seed of this People may
more fully believe his Gospel which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles for this
People shall be scattered & shall become a dark filthy & a loathsome People beyond
the description of that which ever hath been amongst us yea even that which hath
been among the Lamanites & this because of their unbelief & adultery for behold
the spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their Fathers & they
are without Christ & God in the world & they are driven about as chaff
before the wind they were once a delightful some People & they had Christ for
their shepherd yea they were lead even by God the Father but now behold
they are lead about by Satan even as chaff is driven before the wind or as a
vessel is tossed about upon the waves without sail or anchor or without any
thing whither she is driven & even as she is so are they & behold the Lord hath
reserved their blessing which they might have received in the land for the Gentiles who
shall possess the land but behold it shall come to pass that they shall be driven &
scattered by the Gentiles & after that they have been driven & scattered by the Gentiles
behold then will the Lord remember the Covenant which he made unto Abraham
& unto all the house of Israel & ^{also} ~~and~~ the Lord will remember the prayers of the righte-
ous which ^{have} ~~was~~ been put up unto him for them & then O ye Gentiles how can ye stand
before the power of God except ye shall repent & turn from your evil ways know ye

421 not that ye are in the hands of God know ye not ^{that} he hath all power & at his
great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll therefore repent ye &
humble yourselves before him lest he shall come out in justice against you & a
remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion & it is you in
pieces & there is none to deliver ~~Chaber 111~~ & And now I finish my record
concerning the destruction of my People the Nephites & it came to pass that we
did march forth before the Lamanites & I Mormon wrote an Epistle unto the
King of the Lamanites & desired of him that he would grant unto us that we
might gather ^{together} our People unto the land of ~~Cumorah~~ ^{Cumorah} by a hill which was call-
ed Cumorah & there we would give them battle & it came to pass that the
King ~~of~~ of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired &
it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah & we did
pitch our tents round about the hill Cumorah & it was in a land of many
waters rivers & fountains & here we did hope to gain advantage over the Laman-
ites. & when three hundred & eighty & four years had passed away we had
gathered in all the remainder of our People unto the land Cumorah &
it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our People in one to the lan-
d of Cumorah behold I Mormon began to be old & knowing it to be the last str-
uggle of my People & having been commanded of the Lord that I should not
suffer that the records which had been handed down by our Fathers which were
sacred to fall into the hands of the Lamanites for the Lamanites would destroy
them therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi & hid up in the hill
Cumorah all the Records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the
Lord save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni & it cam-
e to pass that my People with their wives & their children did now behold the
armies of the Lamanites marching towards them & with that awful fear of
death which fills the breasts of all the wicked did they await to receive them
& it came to pass that they came to battle against us & every soul was filled
with terror because of the greatness of their numbers & it came to pass that they did fall
upon my People with the sword & with the bow & with the arrow & with the axe &
with all manner of weapons of war & it came to pass that my men were hewn down
yea or even my ten thousands which were with me & I fell wounded in the midst &
they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life. & when they had gone through
& hewn down all my People save it twenty & down of us among whom was my son
Moroni & we having survived the death of our People. did behold on the morning
when the Lamanites had returned unto their Camps from the top of the hill
Cumorah the ten thousands of my People which were hewn down being laid in
the front by me was also beheld the ten thousands of my People which were hewn
down by my son Moroni & behold the ten thousands of ~~the Lamanites~~ ^{the Lamanites} had fallen & he also
did fall down

4th Gospel of Christ which shall be set before you not only in this record but also in the
second which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews which record shall come from the
Gentiles unto you for behold this is written for the intent that ye may believe that if ye believe
that ye will believe this also if ye believe this ye will know concerning your Father & also the
marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them & ye will also
know that they are a remnant of the seed of Jacob therefore ye are numbered among the
People of the first covenant & if it so be that ye believe in Christ & are baptized first with
water then with fire & with the Holy Ghost following the example of our Saviour
according to that which is in the commandment it shall be well with you in the
day of Judgment Amen — Chapter IV — 6th. Hold I, Mormon do finish the
Record of my Father Mormon & hold I have but few things to write which things I have been com-
manded & my Father & now it came to pass that after the great & tremendous battle at Cumorah
behold the Nephites which had escaped into the Country southward were hunted by
the Lamanites until they were all destroyed & my Father also was killed by them & I
remained alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my People but behold they are
gone & I fulfill the commandment of my Father & whether they will slay me I know not
therefore I will write & hide up the records in the earth & whether I go it matters not
not behold my Father hath made this Record & he hath written the intent thereof & behold
I would write it also if I had room upon the plates but I have not I have none
for I am alone my Father hath been slain in battle & all my kinsfolks & I have no
friends nor whither to go & how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know
not behold four hundred years have passed since the coming of our Lord & Saviour &
behold the Lamanites have hunted my People the Nephites down from City to City &
from place to place even until they are no more & great has been their fall yeago
& marvellous is the destruction of my People the Nephites & behold it is the hand of
the Lord which hath done it & behold also the Lamanites are at war one with another & the
whole face of this land is one continued scene of murder & blood shed & no one knoweth
the end of the war & none be hold I say no more concerning them for there are none
save it be Lamanites & robbers that do exist upon the face of the land & there are none
that do know the true God save it be the Disciples of Jesus which did tarry in the
land until the wickedness of the People was so great that the Lord would not suffer
them to remain with the People & whether they be upon the face of the land a nation know-
eth & I have seen them & they have ministered unto us & have
received this Record & shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are
in it the same shall know of greater things than these behold I am Mormon and
were it possible I would make all things known unto you behold I make an end of
speaking concerning this People I am the son of Mormon & my Father was a de-
scendant of Lehi & I am the same who hid up this Record unto the Lord the plates
thereof are of no worth because of the Commandment of the Lord for he truly saith that

424^{no} none shall have them to get gain but the second thing is of great worth
whose shall bring it to light him will the Lord bless for no one can have power
to bring it to light save it be given him of God for God will that it shall be done
with an eye singled to his glory or the welfare of the ancient & long dispersed cove-
nant Peop. & the Lord & blessed be him that shall bring this thing to light for it shall
be brought out of darkness unto light according to the word of God yea it shall be
brought out of the earth & it shall shine forth out of darkness & come unto
the knowledge of the People & it shall be done by the power of God & if there
be fault to they be faults of a man but behold we know no fault in him that God
knoweth all things therefore that condemneth. let him be aware least he shall be in danger of
hell fire & he that sayeth a new unto me or ye shall be smitten let him be aware least he
commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord for behold the same that judgeth rashly shall
all be judged rashly again for according to his works shall his wages be therefore he that
smileth shall be smitten again of the Lord behold what the scripture saith if man shall
not smile nathless shall be judge for judgement is mine saith the Lord & woe
and is mine also & will repay & he that shall breathe out wrath & stripes against
the work of the Lord & against the covenant People of the Lord which is the house of Israel
it shall say we will destroy the work of the Lord & the Lord will not remember his covenant
which he hath made unto the house of Israel the same is in danger to be hewn down & cast in
to the fire for the eternal purposes of the ^{Lord} shall roll on until all his promises shall be
fulfilled & mark the scriptures Prophecies of Isaiah behold I cannot write them yea behold I
say unto you that those saints which have come before me which have possessed the land
shall cry yea even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord & as the Lord liveth he will remem-
ber the covenant which he hath made with them & he knoweth their prayers that
they were in behalf of their Brethren & he knoweth their faith for in his name could
could they remove mountains & in his name could they cause the earth to shake & by
the power of his word could they cause prisons to tumble to the earth yea even the fiery
furnace could not harm them neither wild beasts nor poison serpents because
of the power of his word & he told their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord
should suffer to bring these things forth & no one need say they shall not come
for they surely shall for the Lord hath spoken it for out of the earth shall they come
by the hand of the Lord & none can slay it & it shall come in a day when it shall be said
that miracles are done away & it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead
& it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord because of unjust con-
demnation & the works of darkness & it shall come in a day when the power of God shall
be denied & his name reviled & shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts yea
even in a day when leaders of Churches & teachers in the pride of their hearts were deny-
ing of them who belong to their Church yea it shall come in a day when there shall be
inland of fires & tempests & vapours of smoke in foreign lands & there shall also be heard of

115 1000's & numbers of wars & wars & wars in diverse places & it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth there shall be murders & robings & lying & deceivings & whoredoms & all manner of abominations when there shall come any who will say do this or do that it mattereth not for the Lord will uphold such at the last day but were unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity & ye shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall ^{say} ~~not~~ ^{say} ~~not~~ me & to you & men you shall be forgiven of your sins. O ye wicked & perverse ~~Generations~~ ~~that~~ ~~have~~ ~~ye~~ ~~built~~ ~~up~~ ~~churches~~ ~~unto~~ ~~your~~ ~~selves~~ ~~to~~ ~~get~~ ~~gain~~ ~~ye~~ ~~have~~ ~~ye~~ ~~transfigured~~ ~~the~~ ~~holy~~ ~~word~~ ~~of~~ ~~God~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~might~~ ~~bring~~ ~~damnation~~ ~~upon~~ ~~your~~ ~~souls~~ ~~behold~~ ~~look~~ ~~ye~~ ~~unto~~ ~~the~~ ~~revelations~~ ~~of~~ ~~God~~ ~~for~~ ~~behold~~ ~~the~~ ~~time~~ ~~cometh~~ ~~at~~ ~~that~~ ~~day~~ ~~when~~ ~~all~~ ~~these~~ ~~things~~ ~~must~~ ~~be~~ ~~fulfilled~~ ~~behold~~ ~~the~~ ~~Lord~~ ~~hath~~ ~~shown~~ ~~unto~~ ~~me~~ ~~great~~ ~~&~~ ~~marvelous~~ ~~things~~ ~~concerning~~ ~~that~~ ~~which~~ ~~must~~ ~~shortly~~ ~~come~~ ~~at~~ ~~that~~ ~~day~~ ~~when~~ ~~these~~ ~~things~~ ~~shall~~ ~~come~~ ~~forth~~ ~~among~~ ~~you~~ ~~behold~~ ~~I~~ ~~speak~~ ~~unto~~ ~~you~~ ~~as~~ ~~if~~ ~~ye~~ ~~were~~ ~~present~~ ~~&~~ ~~yet~~ ~~ye~~ ~~are~~ ~~not~~ ~~but~~ ~~behold~~ ~~Jesus~~ ~~Christ~~ ~~hath~~ ~~shown~~ ~~you~~ ~~unto~~ ~~me~~ ~~&~~ ~~I~~ ~~know~~ ~~you~~ ~~doing~~ ~~&~~ ~~I~~ ~~know~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~do~~ ~~walk~~ ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~pride~~ ~~of~~ ~~your~~ ~~hearts~~ ~~&~~ ~~there~~ ~~are~~ ~~none~~ ~~saved~~ ~~but~~ ~~only~~ ~~which~~ ~~do~~ ~~not~~ ~~lift~~ ~~themselves~~ ~~up~~ ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~pride~~ ~~of~~ ~~their~~ ~~hearts~~ ~~unto~~ ~~the~~ ~~wearing~~ ~~of~~ ~~very~~ ~~fine~~ ~~apparel~~ ~~unto~~ ~~evening~~ ~~&~~ ~~to~~ ~~bed~~ ~~&~~ ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~morning~~ ~~&~~ ~~all~~ ~~manner~~ ~~of~~ ~~iniquity~~ ~~&~~ ~~your~~ ~~churches~~ ~~ye~~ ~~even~~ ~~evening~~ ~~ye~~ ~~have~~ ~~become~~ ~~polluted~~ ~~because~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~pride~~ ~~of~~ ~~your~~ ~~hearts~~ ~~for~~ ~~behold~~ ~~ye~~ ~~do~~ ~~love~~ ~~money~~ ~~&~~ ~~your~~ ~~substance~~ ~~&~~ ~~your~~ ~~fine~~ ~~apparel~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~adornings~~ ~~of~~ ~~your~~ ~~churches~~ ~~more~~ ~~than~~ ~~in~~ ~~love~~ ~~the~~ ~~poor~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~sick~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~afflicted~~ ~~O~~ ~~ye~~ ~~pollutions~~ ~~ye~~ ~~hypocrites~~ ~~ye~~ ~~teachers~~ ~~which~~ ~~sell~~ ~~your~~ ~~selves~~ ~~for~~ ~~that~~ ~~which~~ ~~will~~ ~~canter~~ ~~why~~ ~~have~~ ~~ye~~ ~~polluted~~ ~~the~~ ~~name~~ ~~of~~ ~~Christ~~ ~~why~~ ~~are~~ ~~ye~~ ~~assured~~ ~~to~~ ~~take~~ ~~upon~~ ~~you~~ ~~the~~ ~~name~~ ~~of~~ ~~Christ~~ ~~why~~ ~~do~~ ~~ye~~ ~~not~~ ~~think~~ ~~that~~ ~~greater~~ ~~is~~ ~~the~~ ~~value~~ ~~of~~ ~~an~~ ~~endless~~ ~~happiness~~ ~~than~~ ~~that~~ ~~misery~~ ~~which~~ ~~never~~ ~~dies~~ ~~because~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~promise~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~world~~ ~~why~~ ~~do~~ ~~ye~~ ~~adorn~~ ~~your~~ ~~selves~~ ~~with~~ ~~that~~ ~~which~~ ~~hath~~ ~~no~~ ~~life~~ ~~ye~~ ~~yet~~ ~~suffer~~ ~~the~~ ~~hungry~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~weedy~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~naked~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~sick~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~afflicted~~ ~~to~~ ~~pass~~ ~~by~~ ~~you~~ ~~&~~ ~~not~~ ~~hear~~ ~~them~~ ~~not~~ ~~ye~~ ~~why~~ ~~do~~ ~~ye~~ ~~build~~ ~~up~~ ~~your~~ ~~secret~~ ~~abominations~~ ~~to~~ ~~get~~ ~~gain~~ ~~&~~ ~~cause~~ ~~that~~ ~~widows~~ ~~should~~ ~~mourn~~ ~~before~~ ~~the~~ ~~Lord~~ ~~&~~ ~~also~~ ~~orphans~~ ~~to~~ ~~mourn~~ ~~before~~ ~~the~~ ~~Lord~~ ~~unto~~ ~~the~~ ~~blood~~ ~~of~~ ~~their~~ ~~fathers~~ ~~&~~ ~~their~~ ~~husbands~~ ~~to~~ ~~cry~~ ~~unto~~ ~~the~~ ~~Lord~~ ~~from~~ ~~the~~ ~~ground~~ ~~for~~ ~~an~~ ~~answer~~ ~~from~~ ~~your~~ ~~heads~~ ~~behold~~ ~~the~~ ~~word~~ ~~of~~ ~~angels~~ ~~is~~ ~~coming~~ ~~over~~ ~~you~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~time~~ ~~soon~~ ~~cometh~~ ~~that~~ ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~noon~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~day~~ ~~ye~~ ~~shall~~ ~~not~~ ~~suffer~~ ~~their~~ ~~loins~~ ~~any~~ ~~longer~~ ~~now~~ ~~behold~~ ~~that~~ ~~concerning~~ ~~those~~ ~~who~~ ~~do~~ ~~not~~ ~~believe~~ ~~in~~ ~~Christ~~ ~~behold~~ ~~will~~ ~~ye~~ ~~believe~~ ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~day~~ ~~of~~ ~~visitation~~ ~~behold~~ ~~when~~ ~~the~~ ~~Lord~~ ~~shall~~ ~~come~~ ~~ye~~ ~~even~~ ~~that~~ ~~great~~ ~~day~~ ~~when~~ ~~the~~ ~~earth~~ ~~shall~~ ~~be~~ ~~rolled~~ ~~together~~ ~~as~~ ~~a~~ ~~scroll~~ ~~&~~ ~~the~~ ~~elements~~ ~~shall~~ ~~melt~~ ~~with~~ ~~fire~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~in~~ ~~that~~ ~~great~~ ~~day~~ ~~when~~ ~~ye~~ ~~shall~~ ~~be~~ ~~brought~~ ~~to~~ ~~stand~~ ~~before~~ ~~the~~ ~~Bar~~ ~~of~~ ~~God~~ ~~there~~ ~~will~~ ~~ye~~ ~~say~~ ~~that~~ ~~there~~ ~~is~~ ~~no~~ ~~God~~ ~~there~~ ~~will~~ ~~ye~~ ~~confer~~ ~~denying~~ ~~the~~ ~~Christ~~ ~~or~~ ~~any~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~law~~ ~~of~~ ~~God~~ ~~do~~ ~~ye~~ ~~suppose~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~shall~~ ~~dwell~~ ~~with~~ ~~him~~ ~~under~~ ~~a~~ ~~consciousness~~ ~~of~~ ~~your~~ ~~guilt~~ ~~do~~ ~~ye~~ ~~suppose~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~could~~ ~~be~~ ~~happy~~ ~~to~~ ~~dwell~~ ~~with~~ ~~that~~ ~~idol~~ ~~being~~ ~~when~~ ~~your~~ ~~souls~~ ~~are~~ ~~marked~~ ~~with~~ ~~a~~ ~~consciousness~~ ~~of~~ ~~your~~ ~~guilt~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~have~~ ~~been~~ ~~altered~~ ~~the~~ ~~this~~ ~~law~~ ~~behold~~ ~~I~~ ~~speak~~ ~~unto~~ ~~you~~ ~~that~~ ~~ye~~ ~~would~~ ~~be~~ ~~more~~ ~~miserable~~ ~~to~~ ~~dwell~~ ~~with~~ ~~the~~ ~~idol~~ ~~than~~ ~~with~~ ~~the~~ ~~Lord~~

427 unto you he changeth not if so he would mean to be God & he warran't not to be God
and is a God of miracles the reason why he causeth to be miracle among the children of men
is because that they disbelieve in unbelief and not from the right way & know not the God in
whom they should trust behold I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ doubting
nothing whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him
& this promise is unto all even unto the ends of the earth for behold thus saith Jesus
Christ the son of God unto his Disciples whom he should carry ye & also to all his
Disciples in the hearing of the multitude go ye into all the ~~earth~~ world & preach
the Gospel to every creature & he that believeth & is Baptised shall be saved but
he that believeth not shall be damned & these signs shall follow them that believe
in my name shall they cast out devils they shall speak with new tongues they shall
take up serpents & if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them they shall lay
hands on the sick & they shall recover & whosoever shall believe in my name doubt-
ing nothing unto him will I continue all my words even unto the ends of the earth &
now behold who stand ~~and~~ against the works of the Lord who can deny his sayings
who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord who will despise the works of the
Lord who will despise the children of Christ behold all ye ^{that are} despising the works of the Lord
for ye shall wonder & marvel & ^{ye shall} ~~ye shall~~ ^{not} wonder not but hearken unto the
word of the Lord & ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye
shall stand in need doubt not but be believing & begin us in times of old & come
unto the Lord with all your heart & work out your own salvation with fear &
trembling & for as much as in the days of your probation strip yourselves
of all unclean acc't & ask not that ye may consume it on your lusts but ask ~~with~~
with a firmness unshaken that ye will yield to no temptation but that ye
will serve the true and living God all that ye are not baptised unworthily
that ye partake ^{not} of the sacrament unworthily but see that ye do all things in worthi-
ness & do it in the name of Jesus Christ the Son of the living God & if ye do this and
endure to the end ye will in no wise be cast out behold I speak ^{unto you} as though I spoke
from the dead for I know that ye shall have my words concerning me but believe
because of mine imperfection rather my Father because of his imperfection rather
them who have written before him but rather give thanks ~~to~~ to God that he hath
made manifest unto you our imperfections that ye may learn to be more wise
than ~~that which~~ ^{according} we have been & now behold we have written this record ~~and~~
according to our knowledge in the characters which are called among us the reform-
ed Egyptian being handed down & altered by us according to our manner of
speech & if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in the
Hebrew but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also & if we could have written
in the Hebrew behold ye would have had more imperfection in our record

428
But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written & also that none
other People knoweth our language & because that none other People knoweth
our language therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation
thereof and these things are written that we may rid our garments of the
blood of our brethren which have dwindled in unbelief & to hold these things
which we have desired. Concerning our Brethren yea even their restoration to the
knowledge of Christ according to the prayers of all the saints which have
dwelt in the land & may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers
may be answered according to their faith & may God the Father remember
the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel & may he bless them
forever through faith on the name of Jesus Christ - Amen -

They were not confounded, & it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother saying he & himself the Lord whithin he would direct you out of the land & it be well, being out of the land say unto him whether shall we go & who knoweth but the Lord will carry us into a land which is choice & pure all the earth if it be led us by faithful witnesses & that we may witness for him in his name. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did say unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken to the man of God. And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared & had compassion upon him & said unto him Go & gather together thy flocks both male & female & come ^{kind} of the seed of the earth of every kind & the fowls & also prepare thy families to thy family & ^{thy} friends & thy families to the friends of Jared & their families & when thou hast done this then shalt thou go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward & there will I meet thee & I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the land of the earth & there will I bless thee & thy seed & raise up unto me a great nation & the seed of thy brother & they which shall go with thee a great nation shall be more greater than the nation which will raise up unto me of thy seed upon all the face of the earth & thus I will do unto thee because of this long time which ye have lived unto me. And it came to pass that Jared & his brother & their families & also the friends of Jared & his brother & their families went down into the valley which was northward in the name of the valley was thinned, being called after the mighty hunting with their flocks which they had gathered together male & female & every kind & they did also lay snares & catch fowls of the air & they did also prepare a vessel in the which they did carry with them the fish of the waters & also did carry with them the secret which by interpretation is a honey bee & thus they did carry with them swarms of bees & all manner of that which was upon the face of the land & flocks of every kind. And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Shinnah the Lord came down & talked with the brother of Jared & he was in a cloud & the brother of Jared saw him not. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where their enemies had been killed & it came to pass that the Lord did go before them & did talk with them as he stood in a cloud & gave directions whither they should go. And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness & did build houses in the which they did cross many waters being directed continually by the hand of the Lord & the Lord would not suffer that they should get beyond the ²⁷ ~~27~~ wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people & he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared that whoso should possess this land of promise from that time hence forth for ever should come him the trial & only if they should be swift of foot when the fullness of his wrath should come upon them. And now we can behold one

431
discovered, had discovered this land, that it is a land of promise, & whatsoever nation
shall possess it, shall serve God, for they shall be swift of, when the judgment of his wrath
shall come upon them, & the salvation of his wrath cometh upon them when they are repen-
ted in iniquity, for behold, this is a land, which is better above all other lands, wherefore, he that
doth possess it, shall serve God, or shall be swift of, for the land is the land, which is the land of
promise, & it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swift of,
and then cometh the wrath of God, & he will destroy them, & you may know the goodness of God, that ye may
repent, & not continue in your iniquity until the fulness be come, that ye may ^{not bring} down the
judgment of the wrath of God upon you, or the inhabitants of the land, which hath been done, behold
this is a choice land, & whatsoever nation shall possess it, shall be free from bondage,
ye & from captivity, & from all other nations under Heaven, if they will but serve the
God of the land, which is Jesus Christ, which hath been manifested by the things
which we have written, and now I speak with my records, for behold it came to pass
that the Lord did bring forward in his brethren, that great sea, which divideth
the lands, & as they came to the sea, they beheld their land, & they called the name of
the place, the land of promise, & they dwelt in the land, & they dwelt in tents upon the sea
shore, for the space of four years, and it came to pass at the end of the four years, that
the Lord came again unto the brethren of Jared, & stood in a cloud, & talked with him,
for the space of three hours, & the Lord talked with the brethren, & he had loved him because he ^{remembered}
remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord, & the brethren of Jared repented him of
the evil which he had done, & did call upon the name of the Lord, for his brethren which
were with him, & the Lord said unto him, I will forgive thee, & thy brethren of their
sins, but thou shalt not sin any more, & ye shall remember, that my spirit will
not always dwell with man, wherefore if ye will sin, until ye are fully ripe, ye shall
be cut off from the presence of the Lord, & I will ^{be} thoughts upon the land, which I shall
give you for your inheritance, for it shall be a land, & a choice above all other lands, & the Lord
said, He to work & build after the manner of houses which ye have hitherto built, &
it came to pass that the brethren of Jared did go to work, & also his brethren, & built
houses after the manner which they had built according to the instructions of the
Lord, & they were small, & they were light upon the water, even like unto the light-
ness of a fowl upon the water, & they were built in a manner that they were so
succeeding tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish, & the hollow ^{thereof}
themselves were tight like unto a dish, & the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish,
& the ends thereof were tight, & the top thereof was tight like unto a dish, & the length
thereof was six feet, & the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto
a door, & the brethren of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying,
O Lord, the work which thou hast commanded me, I have
made, & I have obeyed, & behold O Lord, in their presence
no light, neither shall we see, & also we shall perish, for in them we cannot

4th
 breath, as it is the air which is in them, therefore we shall perish, & the Lord said unto
 the brother of Jared, behold thou shalt make a hole in the top thereof, also in the bottom
 thereof, & when thou shalt suffer for air, thou shalt unstop the hole thereof, & receive
 air, & it so be that the water come in upon thee, behold ye shall stop the hole thereof, &
 ye may not perish in the floods. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did send-
 ing in the Lord had been commanded, he cried again unto the Lord, saying, O Lord, be-
 hold I have done even as thou hast commanded me, & I have prepared the vessels for
 my people, & behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer
 that we shall cross this great water in darkness? The Lord said unto the brother of
 Jared, What wilt ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? He
 said, ye cannot have wind, for they will be dashed in pieces, neither shall ye take
 fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire, for behold ye shall be as vessels
 in the midst of the sea, for the mountain waters shall dash upon you, & the billows shall
 dash upon you, & the rills of the sea, for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, & the
 rains & the floods have I sent forth, behold I prepare you against these things, for
 how be it ye cannot cross this great deep, save by the power of the Lord, & the winds
 which have gone forth, & the floods which shall come, therefore what wilt ye
 that I should prepare for you, that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the deep
 of the sea? And it came to pass that the brother of Jared (in the manner the vessels which had
 been prepared) was wondrously fine, & the iron which went into them, the manner
 which they called the mount of Sodom, because of its exceeding length, & did mention
 out of a rock into small stones, & they were white & clear, & as transparent glass, he
 did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, & cried again unto the Lord, saying,
 O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods, now behold, O Lord,
 & do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee, for we know that thou
 art Holy, & art perfect, in the heavens, & that we are unworthy before thee, because of the fall
 of our nature, & have become evil continually, nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a com-
 mandment, that we must call upon thee, that I am, that we may receive according to our
 desires, behold O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, & hast driven us
 forth, for this many years we have been in the wilderness, & thou hast been
 merciful unto us, O Lord, look upon me in pity, & turn away thine anger from this thy
 people, & suffer not that they shall go forth into the raging deep in darkness, but behold, O Lord,
 which I have mentioned out of the rock, & know O Lord, that thou hast all power, & can
 do whatsoever thou wilt, for the length of many thousand years, touch these stones, O Lord,
 with thy finger, to prepare them, that they may shine forth in darkness, & shine
 forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may, &
 we shall cross, & behold O Lord, thou canst do this, we know it,
 to whom both great power, which calls small unto the number
 & it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, he held

the Lord stretched forth his hand & touched the stones one by one, with his
 fingers the veil was taken from off the eyes of the ⁴³³brothers, & he
 saw the finger of the Lord, & it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh &
 blood, & the brethren of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was clothed with fear
 & the Lord saw that the brethren of Jared had fallen to the earth, & the Lord said unto
 him, ^{why} quies, ~~why~~ hast thou fallen? he saith unto the Lord, I saw the finger of the Lord
 & I feared lest he should smite me, & I knew not that the Lord had flesh &
 blood, & the Lord said unto him, Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall
 take upon me flesh & blood, & now has man come before me with such exceeding
 faith as thou hast, for were it so, I could not have seen my finger, & were it
 more than that, he answered, say, Lord, show thyself unto me, & the Lord said unto ^{him}
 Believest thou the words which I shall speak? he answered, Yea, Lord, I know
 that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, & canst not lie, & when
 he had said these words, he held the Lord & kissed him, & said
 because thou knowest these things, ye are ordained from the foundation of the world, for ye are
 brought back into my presence, when I shall show myself unto you, he held
 him, who ^{was} prepared from the foundation of the world, to redeem my people,
 he held I am Jesus Christ, I am the Father & the Son, in me shall all mankind
 end their life, & that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name, & they
 shall become my sons & my daughters, & never have I showed myself unto ^{man}
 whom I have created, for in my name have I created in me as thou hast, & I
 know that ye are created after mine own image, yea, even all men were cre-
 ated in the beginning after mine own image, behold, this body which ye now
 behold is the body of my Son, & I have created after the body of my Son
 in the flesh, & even as I appeared unto thee in the spirit, with a glorified body, & I
 in the flesh, & now, as thou hast said, I could not make a full account of these things
 which I saw, & I thought it sufficient me to say that Jesus should himself come
 to the man in the spirit, even after the manner, & in the likeness of the same body, even as
 he should himself come to the high priests, he ministered unto him, even as he ministered
 unto the high priests, all this, that that man knew that he was God, because of the many
 great works which the Lord had showed unto him, & because of the knowledge of the
 man, he could not be kept from beholding within the veil, & he saw the finger of the Lord
 which, when he saw, he fell with fear, for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord,
 & he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting, not before, having this per-
 fect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from beholding within the veil, for
 he saw him, he did minister unto him, and it came to pass that the Lord said unto
 him, Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen &
 heard, for I will send me unto the world until the time cometh that I shall glorify
 my name in the flesh, wherefore ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen
 & heard.

434
 I shew as to the things which I shall do when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them
 shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them for ye shall write them in a lan-
 guage that they cannot be read & behold these two stones will give unto thee
 ye shall seal them up with the things which ye shall write for behold the lan-
 guage which ye shall write I have enjoined wherefore I will cause in mine own due
 time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write
 & when the Lord had said these words ~~he~~ ^{he} showed unto the brother of Jared all
 the inhabitants of the earth which had been & also all that would be to the Lord with-
 held them not from his sight even unto the end of the earth for the Lord had said
 unto him in times before that if he would believe in him that he could shew unto
 him all things it should be shewn unto him therefore the Lord would not withhold any
 thing from him for he knew that the Lord could shew him all things & the Lord said
 unto him ^{these} things & seal them up I will shew them in mine own due time
 unto the children of men and it came to pass that the Lord commanded him ^{that} he should
 seal up the two stones which he had received & shew them not until the Lord should
 shew them unto the children of men & the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to
 go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord & write the things which he
 had seen & they were for hidden to come unto the children of men until after that, it
 should be lifted up upon the cross & for this cause did King Benjamin keep them that
 they should not come unto the world until after Christ should shew himself unto his
 people & after that Christ had shewed himself unto his people he com-
 manded that they should be made manifest & now after that they have all dwindled
 in unbelief & there ~~is~~ ^{is} no one save it be the Lamanites & they have rejected the Gospel of
 Christ therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth &
 shall I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw
 & these were many greater things made manifest than that which was made manifest
 unto the brother of Jared & this, but the Lord hath commanded me to write them & I have
^{written} ~~written~~ them & he commanded me that I should seal them up & he also hath com-
 manded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof which I have sealed up the
 interpretation according to the commandment of the Lord for the Lord said unto me that they
 shall not go forth into the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquities &
 become clean before the Lord & on that day that they shall receive faith in me and
 the Lord even as the brother of Jared did that they may become sanctified in me then
 will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw & shew unto them
 folding unto them all my revelations so to pass Christ the Son of God the Father of
 the Heavens & of the Earth & all things that are therein & that will contend ag-
 ainst the word of the Lord let him be accused & he that shall deny the things
 let him be accused for unto them will I shew no greater things & I shew them
 in secret for I am he which speaketh at my command the heavens are opened and

that, & at my word the earth shall shake at my command & the inhabitants
thereof shall pass away even so as by fire & he that believeth not my words believ-
eth not my disciples & if it is he that I do not speak judge ye for ye shall know that
it is I that speaketh at the last day but he that believeth these things which I have
spoken him will I visit with the manifestations of my spirit & he shall know & be as-
sured for because & my spirit he shall know that these things are true for it persuadeth
men to do good & whatsoever thing he persuadeth men to do good is of me for good cometh
of none save it be of me & I am the same that leadeth men to all good he that will not
believe my words will not believe me that I am & he that will not believe me will
not believe the Father which sent me for he hath said I am the Father & I am the light & the life
& the truth of the world come unto me O ye Gentiles & I will show unto you the greater
things the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief come unto me O ye house of
Israel & it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid
up for you from the foundation of the world & hath not come unto you because of
unbelief Behold when ye shall repent that evil of unbelief which hath caused you to re-
main in your awful state of wickedness & hardness of heart & blindness of mind
then shall the great & marvellous things which have been hid up from the foundation
of the world from you yet when ye shall call upon the Father in my name with a
broken heart & contrite spirit then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered
the covenant which he made unto your fathers O house of Israel & then shall my re-
velations which I have caused to be written by my servant John in an ^{old} book be
eyes of all the people Remember when ye see these things ye shall know that the time is at
hand that they shall be made manifest in every deed & in every thing which I shall reveal
unto you & ye shall know that the Father has commanded upon all the ^{land} of the
earth that ye shall be baptized in my name & he that believeth not shall be damned & signs shall follow them that believe in my name & blessed is he
that is found faithful unto my name at the last day for they shall be lifted up to enter
in the kingdom prepared for them from the foundation of the world & behold it is
I that have spoken these things Chapter 10 And now I, Moroni have written
the words which were commanded me according to my memory & I have told
you the things which I have sealed up therefore touch them not in order that ye may
translate for that thing is hidden from you except by & he it shall be wisdom in
God & behold ye may be persuaded that ye may show the plates unto those who
shall assist to bring forth this work & unto those shall they be shown by the power
of God wherefore they shall know & testify that these things are true & in the mouth
of three witnesses shall these things be established with the testimony of three & their seal
in which shall be shown forth the power of God & also his word which the Father
hath given the Son & the Holy Ghost beareth record & all this shall stand as a testimony

⁴³⁶ Against the world at the last day & it is so, he that they repent & come unto the Father in the name of Jesus Christ shall be received into the Kingdom of God & if I have no authority for these things I know ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me & we shall stand before God at the last day Amen. (Chapter III)

And now I should proceed to give the record of Jared & his brother —
— it came to pass that the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had caused upon the mantle for brother of Jared came down out of the mantle & he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared and in each end thereof to behold they did give light unto the vessels thereof & thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness to give light unto men women & children that they should not be in darkness & it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of things that things which they might submit upon the water & also food for their families & beasts & animals on land that they should carry with them And it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got a board of their vessels on board & set forth into the sea commanding themselves unto the Lord their God & it came to pass that the Lord caused that there should be a fair wind & blew upon the face of the water towards the promised land & that they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind & it came to pass that they were many times covered in the depths of the sea because of the mountain waves which broke upon them & were the great terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind & it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them this vessel to bring light like unto the light which they had taken with them when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord & he did bring them forth again upon the top of the water & it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land & thus they were driven forth before the wind & they did sing praises unto the Lord & the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord & he did thank & praise the Lord all the day long & when the night came they did not cease to praise the Lord & thus they were driven forth by the power of the sea & would break them with their whole that could man there & they did have light continually whether it was above the water or under the water & thus they were driven forth upon hundred & forty days upon the water & they did land upon the shore of the promised land & when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land & did humble themselves before the Lord & did thank him of say before the Lord because of the multitude of his tender mercies upon them & it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land & went to till the earth & Jared had seven sons & they were called Jared & Gilead & Mahab & Hiram & the brother of Jared also begot sons & daughters & the friends of Jared & his brother — were in number a hundred twenty & two souls & they also begot sons & daughters

48
 before they came to this promised land & therefore they began to be numerous
 & they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord & they were also taught from
 on high, and it came to pass that this began to spread upon the face of the land & to multi-
 ply to fill the earth & they did, many strong in the land & the brother of Jared began to be old
 & saw that he must soon go down to the grave wherefore he said unto himself will not
 gather together some people that will may number them that will may know & then
 what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves & accordingly the people were
 gathered together now the numbering of the lands the daughters of the brother of Jared ^{and}
 twenty & two souls & the numbering of the sons & daughters of Jared were twelve he having
 pious sons and it came to pass that they did number their people & after that they had
 numbered them they did desire of them the things which they would that they
 should do before they went down to their graves and it came to pass that the people desir-
 ed of him that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them & now
 behold this was grievous unto them but the brother of Jared said unto them Surely
 this thing leadeth into captivity but Jared said unto his brother ^{offspring} that
 they may have a king & Jared he said unto them & have ye out from among
 our sons a king whom ye will & it came to pass that they chose even the first born of
 the brother of Jared & his name was Pagag and it came to pass that he refused & would
 be their king & the people would that his father should constrain him but his father
 would not & he commanded them that they should not constrain no man to be their
 king and it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag & they would not and it
 came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared even all save it were one & Oriah
 he was anointed to be king over the people & he began to reign & the people began to
 prosper & they became exceedingly rich and it came to pass that Jared died & his brother also
 & it came to pass that Oriah did walk humbly before the Lord & did remember how great
 things the Lord had done for his father & also taught his people how great things the
 Lord had done for their fathers and it came to pass that Oriah did execute judgment
 upon the land in righteousness all his days whose days were exceeding many & he begat
 sons & daughters yea he begat thirty & one among whom were twenty & three sons & it
 came to pass that he also lived till in his old age & it came to pass that he reigned in
 his stead & he begat Corihon & when Corihon was thirty & two years old he rebel-
 led against his father & went over & dwelt in the land of Hahon & he begat sons & daugh-
 ters & they became exceedingly fair wherefore Corihon drew away many people after
 him & when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Alonon
 where the king dwelt & took him captive which brought to pass the saying of the
 brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity now the land of Alonon
 where the king dwelt was near the land which is called ^{Legislation by the high priests} it
 came to pass that he dwelt in captivity & his people under him ^{Corihon} his son until he
 came exceedingly old nevertheless he begat Shull in his old age while he was yet in

[illegible]

[illegible]

440
He gave power, & to multiply, & to slay, & to live in carnality all manner of wisdom
& whoredoms, & it was the daughter of David who put it into his heart to search up the
things of old, & David had it in the heart of which makes for. Which administers to it with
his kindred & friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing is de-
sired, & it came to pass that they formed a secret combination even as they of old, which
combination is a most abominable wickedness above all in the sight of God; & the Lord
most of all in secret combinations, & therefore he will that man should shed blood
but in all things with forbiddings from the beginning of man & now. Therefore do not
wonder the manner of their oaths & combinations, for it hath been made known unto me
that they are had among all people, & they are had among the Lamanites, & they have
caused the destruction of their people, & which are now speaking, & also the destruction
of the people of Joseph, & inasmuch as nations shall up hold secret combinations to
get power, & gain, until they shall stand over the nation, he hold, they shall be destroyed
for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them,
shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them, & yet he aveng-
eth them not, & that for his gentleness, it is wisdom in God that these things should be
shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins & suffer not that these cunning
and secret combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power, & gain, & the
wonderful & terrible work of destruction, & out of darkness ye are even the sword of the justice of
the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow & destruction, if ye shall suffer
these things to be, & therefore the Lord hath commanded you, whosoever shall do these things
come among you, that ye shall make to a remembrance of you, & a memorial, because of this
secret combination which shall be among you, & we be united, because of the blood
of them who have been slain for they cry from the dust, for vengeance upon
us, & upon those who build it up, for it cometh to pass that where buildeth it up, we be
able to overthrow the kingdom, & all lands, & nations, & countries, it cometh to pass the
destruction of all people, for it is build up by the devil, which is the father of all lies,
upon that same lie, which he guided you first, & which ye have now the same lie, which
hath caused men to commit murder, & in the beginning, which hath hardened the
heart of man, that they have murdered the prophets, & loved them, & cast them out from
the beginning, wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things, that evil
may be done, & yet that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the
hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually
that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness, & be saved. Chapter III
And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record, therefore behold it come, to pass that
because of the secret combinations of which his spirit he held they did overthrow
the kingdom of Christ, & inasmuch as the Lord was merciful unto him, & also to his
sons & to his daughters, & inasmuch as he did not in his destruction, & he
did not destroy them in a dream, that he should depart out of the land, & therefore I, Moroni

he hunted out of the land with his family, & traveled many days, & came out ^{by} ~~by~~ ^{by} the hill of Shinarump over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, & from
 thence eastward, & came to a place which was called "Abloom" by the sea shore, & there
 he pitched his tent, & also his sons & his daughter & all his household, & there were
 spared & his family, & it came to pass that Shish was anointed king over the people, by
 the hand of wickedness, he gave unto Shish his daughter to wife, & it came to pass that
 Shish sang the life of his father-in-law, & he applied unto those whom he had wronged
 by the name of the anoints, & they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon
 his throne, giving audience to his people. On a great had been the spreading of this mi-
 staken & ^{secret} ~~secret~~ society, that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people, therefore Shish
 was murdered upon his throne, & Shish reigned in his stead, & it came to pass that Sh-
 ish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, & kept him
 upon a little on no food, until he had suffered death, & now the brother of him that
 suffered death, (his name was Shish) ~~was~~ was angry with his father because of that
 which his father had done unto his brother, & it came to pass that Shish had gathered
 together a small number of men, & fled out of the land, & came over & dwell with Omeg
 it came to pass that Shish began to conspire, & they won the hearts of the people, without
 standing they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity, according to that which
 he desired, now the people of Shish were desirous for gain, even as Shish was desirous
 for power, & wherefore the sons of Shish did offer them money, by the which means
 they drew away the more part of the people, after things there began to be a war betwixt
 in the sons of Shish & Shish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruc-
 tion of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty, souls
 & they which fled with the house of Omeg, wherefore Omeg was restored again
 to the land of his inheritance, & it came to pass that Omeg began to be old, & even the
 less, in his old age he began to Enmeg, he anointed Omeg to be king to reign in his
 stead, & after that he had anointed Omeg to be king, he saw peace in the land
 for the space of his years, & he did, having) surrounding many days, which were full of
 sorrow, & it came to pass that Omeg did reign in his stead, & did fill the steps of his father, & the
 Lord began again to take the curse from the land, & the house of Omeg did prosper exceedingly
 under the reign of Omeg, in the space of only two years, they had become exceedingly strong,
 inasmuch that they became a nursing rich, having all manner of fruit, & of grain, & of silk,
 & of fine linen, & of gold, & of silver, & of precious things, & also all manner of cattle of land,
 cows, & of sheep, & of swine, & of goats, & also many other kind of animals, which were useful for
 the food of man, they also had, hawks, & owls, & many elephants, & lions, & camels,
 all of which were useful unto man, & more especially the elephants, & camels, & camels
 & thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all
 other lands, & he commanded that where should possess the land, should possess it
 unto the Lord, & they should be destroyed, when they were ripened in iniquity, for

upon such, with the Lord, I will pour out the fulness of my wrath, & Emen did execute
 judgment in righteousness all his days, & he begat many sons & daughters, & he begat
 Coriantumr, he anointed Coriantumr to reign in his stead, & it so that he had anointed Cori-
 antumr to reign in his ^{stead} the land from young & he saw peace in the land, & it came to pass that
 the Lord did prosper him, & he did prosper in his days, & he did in ^{the field} it came to pass that
 Coriantumr did walk in the steps of his father, & did build many mighty cities, & did
 administer - that which was good unto his people in all his days, & it came to pass that he
 had no child, & when he was exceedingly old, & it came to pass that his wife died, he
 being an hundred & two years old, & it came to pass that Coriantumr took to wife in his
 old age, a young maid, & begat sons & daughters, wherefore he lived until he was an
 hundred & forty & two years old, & it came to pass that he begat Com & Corin, & he reigned in his ste-
 ad, & he reigned forty & nine years, & he begat Heth, & he also begat other sons & daughters, &
 the people had prospered again, & in all the face of the land, & there began again to be an abun-
 dant of great wickedness upon the face of the land, & Heth began to be an abun-
 dant of great wickedness upon the face of the land, & it came to pass that he did de-
 stroy his father, & he did reign in his stead, & there came prophets
 in the land again, crying repentance unto them, that they must prepare the ways of the
 Lord, & that should come a famine in the land, & that there should be a great
 famine, in the which they should be destroyed, if they did not repent, but the people believed
 not the words of the prophets, but they cast them away, & some of them they cast into fire, &
 it came to pass that Heth did all these things, according to the command-
 ment of the Lord, & it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land,
 & the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly, but because of the dearth, there was
 no man upon the face of the earth, & there came forth the Lamanite servants also upon the face
 of the land, & did kill many people, & it came to pass that their flocks began to be
 killed, & the Lamanite servants, & towards the land southward, which was called by the
 prophets, Gona-hemba, & it came to pass that there were many of them, which did perish
 by the way, & none the less, there were some which fell into the land southward, & it
 came to pass that the Lord did cause the servants that they should pursue them no
 more, but that they should hedge up the way, that the people could not pass, that
 those should attempt to pass, might fall by the Lamanite servants, & it came to pass
 that the people did follow the counsel of the Lamanite servants, & did denounce the causes of them
 which fell by the way, until they had denounced them all, now, when the people saw
 that they must perish, they began to repent of their iniquities, & they made the Lord, & it came
 to pass that when they had repented themselves sufficiently, before the Lord, the Lord did
 send rain upon the face of the earth, & the people began to revive again, & there began to be
 fruit in the north countries, & in all the countries round about of the Lord, did show forth
 his power, & to many in passing, then, from famine, & it came to pass that they,
 which were a descendant of Heth, for Heth had perished by the famine, & all his

[illegible]

little destination & that the Lord God would send on being forth an other people to
possess the land by his power after the manner which he brought their fathers & they
did resist all the words of the prop. he to because of their ^{secret} wicked society & wicked a homo-
nations & it came to pass that Corianton begot Ether & he died having dwelt in captivity
all his days Chapter V & it came to pass that the days of Ether was in the days
of Corianton's children & Corianton was king over all the land & Ether was a prophet of the
Lord wherefore Ether came forth into the days of Corianton & began to prophesy unto the people
for he could not be restrained because of the spirit of the Lord which was in him for he did
begin from the morning & would be going during the day exhorting the people to believe in
God unto repentance but they would be destroyed saying unto him that by faith all these
things are fulfilled wherefore whose belief in God might be with surely hope for a better
world yet a more pleasant at the right hand of God which hope cometh of faith maketh un-
suborn to the world's men which would make them sure & steadfast always & a com-
ing in good words being led to glorify God & it came to pass that Ether did prophesy
great & marvellous things unto the people which they did not believe because they saw
them not & now it should be said some what concerning these things I should show
unto the world that faith is things which ^{one} he had for to not see wherefore he had
not because ye see not for ye receive no witness not until after the trial of your faith
for it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers after ^{which} he had ^{risen}
from the dead & he showed himself unto them ^{until} after they had faith in him
wherefore it must needs be that some had faith in him for he showed himself not
unto the world but because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world &
glorified the name of the Father & prepared the way ^{that} there by others might be partakers of
the heavenly gift that they might hope for those things which they have not seen
wherefore ye may also have hope & be partakers of the gift if ye will but ^{have} faith
Behold it came by faith that our fathers were called of the holy gods of God where-
fore by faith was the law given & it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled for if there be no
faith among the children of men God could do no miracle among them wherefore he showed
not himself until a time their faith Behold it was the faith of Alma & Amulek that ran-
sed the prison to liberty to the earth he held it was the faith of Lophi & Liche that won-
ghe the change upon the Lamanites that they were baptized with fire & with the Holy
Ghost Behold it was the faith of the women & their brethren which wrought so great a
miracle among the Lamanites ^{small they} ^{small they} which wrought miracles wrought them by
faith even those which were before Christ & also them which were after & it was by faith
that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death
& they obtained not the promise until after their faith & neither at any time hath
any wrought miracles until after their faith wherefore they first believed in the
Word of God & there were many whose faith was so exceeding strong even before ^{Christ}

came forth could not be kept from within the veil but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith & they were glad & beheld we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared for so great was his faith in God that when God saw his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared because of his word which he had spoken unto him when would he had obtained by faith & after ~~the~~ the brother of Jared had he held the fingers of the Lord because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith the Lord could not withhold any thing from his sight wherefore he shewed him all things for he would no longer be kept without seeing it & it is by faith that we fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto them & then through the Gentiles therefore the Lord hath commanded me ye even should have said unto him I said the Gentiles will mock at these things because of our weakness in writing for I said that we have made us mighty in word by faith but ~~that we~~ ^{but} that we have not made us mighty in writing for that we have made all this people that they could speak much because of the Holy Spirit which we have given them & that we have made us that we could write but little because of the weakness of our hands behold that we have not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared for that modest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as that art unto the overcoming of men to read them that we have made us weak in writing & that we cannot write them wherefore when we write we do hold our weakness & stumble because of the placing of our words & when the Gentiles shall mock at our words & when I said this the Lord spoke unto me saying that we shall be made weak but they shall receive & improve it sufficient for the work that they shall take no advantage of ^{you} weakness if we come unto me I will show unto them their weakness & I will show unto you weakness that they may be humble & improve it sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me for if they humble themselves before me & have faith in me then will I make weak things become strong unto them behold I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness & I will show unto them that faith hope & charity bringeth unto me the conquering of all righteousness & I have having heard these words was comforted & said O Lord thy righteousness will be done for I know that these worketh unto the children of men according to their faith for the brother of Jared said unto the man that I saw ^{Remove} ~~Remove~~ & it was removed & if he had not had faith it would not have moved wherefore there was first after that men have faith for thus did these manifest thyself unto thy disciples for after that they had faith & did speak in thy name that didst show thyself unto them in great power & I also remember that that we have said that that we have prepared a house for man ye have even among the mansions of the latter in the which man might have a more excellent hope wherefore man must be born because not receive an inheritance in the place which that we have prepared

4th
Again I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world more than the
laying down of thy life for the world that man might take it again to prepare a place for
the children of men & now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of
men is charity wherefore except man shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which
thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father wherefore I know by this thing which
thou hast said that if the Gentiles have not charity because of a wickedness that thou
wilt from them & take away their talent & even that which they have received &
give unto them who shall have more abundantly & it came to pass that I prayed unto
the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace that they might have charity & it
came to pass that the Lord said unto me if they have not charity it matters not
unto thee that thou hast been faithful wherefore thy garments shall be made clean &
wherefore thou shalt see the multitude that shall be made strong even unto the sitting
down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father & now
we bid farewell unto the Gentiles glad also unto our brethren whom I love until we
shall meet before the judgment seat of Christ where all men shall know that my
garments are not spotted with your blood & then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus
& that he hath talked with me face to face & that he hath made plain in mine ears
the things which I have written because of my weakness in writing & now I would commend you to
seek the faces of whom the prophets & apostles have written that the grace of God the
Father & also the Lord Jesus Christ & the Holy Ghost which beareth record of them may
be with you abide in you forever Amen Chapter VI And now I have finished
to finish my record concerning the restoration of the people of Israel & have been wait-
ing for behold thou hast read all the words of Ether & thou hast read them all
things from the beginning of man & knowest that after the waters had receded from
off the face of this land I became a choice land above all other lands a chosen land
of the Lord wherefore the Lord would have ^{that} men should come him which dis-
cuss upon the face thereof & that it was the place of the ^{new} Jerusalem which shall
come down out of Heaven & the Holy Tents of the Lord behold Ether saw the
days of Christ & he spake concerning his incarnation upon this land & he spake al-
so concerning the house of Israel & the Jerusalem from whence he should come after
that it should be destroyed it should be built again & Holy City unto the Lord
wherefore it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been a time of old but it
should be built again & become a Holy City & it should be built upon the ^{of the Lord} house
of Israel & that a new Jerusalem should be built upon this land unto the re-
mnant of the seed of Joseph for the which things there has been type for as Joseph
brought his father down into the land of Egypt even so he did these wherefore the
Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph one of the land of Jerusalem that he
might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not when he

was manifested unto the fathers of Joseph that he should finish not robes for the rem-
 nant of the house of Joseph that he built upon that land & it shall be a land of their in-
 heritance & they shall build upon Holy City unto the land like unto the generation of old & they
 shall no more be con- founded until the end come when the earth shall possessors that
 shall be a new heaven & a new earth & they shall be like unto the old & the old shall pass
 away & all things shall become new & then cometh the script. analem & blessed are they who
 shall dwell therein for it is they who have garments and white through the blood of the Lamb
 & they are the ~~remnant~~ which are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph which
 none of the house of Israel & then also cometh the generation of old & the inhabitants
 thereof blessed are they for it have been washed in the blood of the Lamb & they
 are they which were scattered & gathered in from the four quarters of the earth & from
 the north & south & east & west of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with
 their fathers of old & when these things come bringeth to pass the bright line which is
 between them which were first which shall be last & then are they which were last
 which shall be first for it was about to write more but I am forbidden but I will
 & many more things which are written in the book but I will not write more at
 least now & in the future in the country & each by day & by night is writing
 forth meaning the things which should come upon the people as he dwelt in the land
 of a night & made the remnant of the world meaning the descendants which come upon the
 people by night & it came to pass that in that same year which he was sent out from
 among the people there began to be a great war among the people for their nations
 which rose up & were men might & might & might to do have Coniantum & they were
 plans of wickedness of which hath been spoken & now Coniantum having stilled
 himself in all the arts of war & all the cunning of the world wherefore he gave
 battle unto them which sought to destroy him but he was not slain & he was
 some now daughters neither the fair sons & daughters of Coniantum the fair sons & daughters
 of Coniantum & in fact there was none of the fair sons & daughters upon the face of the
 whole earth which opened of their sins & he came to pass in the first year that
 Coniantum in the land of a night & there was war & might & might & might
 there were Coniantum fighting against Coniantum that they might obtain the king-
 dom & it came to pass that the sons of Coniantum fought much & were much & in
 the second year the war of the sons of Coniantum & he should go to the king & unto him
 & unto him that he would appoint him his house & all the house of his
 his kingdom & upon the people & then were they should be destroyed & all his house hold
 & he should be himself & he should be himself to himself & the people & the
 which had been taken concerning a nation people meaning the land for there in his time
 & Coniantum should receive a name by them & being said & he should be destroyed & he
 it was Coniantum & it came to pass that Coniantum repeated not neither his house
 said neither the people & the man & (Cress) not & they sought to kill Ethen but he

450
 did from his tent, & hid again in the cavity of the rock, & it came to pass that
 there was a great battle unto Coriantum, & he did beat him, & so much
 that in the third year he did bring him into captivity, & the sword of Coriantum in the fourth year
 did that I have said to obtain the kingdom again unto their father, now there began to be a
 man upon the face of the land, & many men with his hand fighting for that which he ^{thought}
 & there was ^{not} ~~nothing~~ in fine, all manner of wickedness upon the face of the land, & it came
 to pass that Coriantum was exceedingly angry with I have said, & he came against him with his
 armies to battle, & they did meet in great anger, & they did meet in the valley of Gilgal,
 & the battle became exceedingly sore, & it came to pass that I have said fought against him
 for the space of three days, & it came to pass that Coriantum saw him & pursued him until he
 came to the plains of Hishlon, & it came to pass that I have said gave him battle again upon
 the plains, & he held he did beat Coriantum, & drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal,
 & Coriantum gave I have said battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat I have
 said, & he wounded Coriantum in the thigh, & that he did not go to battle again
 in for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land
 were a shedding blood, & there was none to restrain them, & now there began to be a great
 curse upon the land, because of the iniquity of the people, & ^{which} if a man should say
 that an sword upon the shelf, upon the place which he would keep it to be held,
 upon the moment, it could not find it, & so great was the curse upon the land, when I have
 said, & it came to pass that I have said, with his hands, & would not be
 without would he find, & so great was the gift of his sword thereof in his right hand
 in the defense of his people, & his own life, & his sword & his sword was of the space
 of two years, & after the death of I have said, he held, there was the iniquity of I have said
 battle unto Coriantum, in which Coriantum did that I have said for him to
 the wilderness of Shish, & it came to pass that the battle, & did give battle unto
 him in the wilderness of Shish, & the battle became exceedingly sore, & many thousands fell
 by the sword, & it came to pass that Coriantum did lead his army to the wilderness, & the
 army of I have said, did march, & it came to pass that the wilderness by his army, & a part of the
 army of Coriantum, as they were drinking, he came forth to the land of Shon, & he
 himself upon the throne of Coriantum, & it came to pass that Coriantum smelt
 with his army in the wilderness, for in space of two years, in which he did receive
 great strength to his army, & now the brother of I have said, whose name was Geraad, & he
 received great strength to his army, & because of war, & combinations, & it came to pass
 that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne, & it came to pass that of the
 most combinations murdered him in secret, & so obtained unto himself the kingdom, & his
 name was Lib, Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among the people,
 & it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantum came upon the land of Shon,
 & gave battle unto Lib, & it came to pass that he fought with Lib in the which he did
 smelt upon his army that he was wounded, & now the less the army of Coriantum did

press forward upon Shib that he fled to the borders upon the sea shore, & it came to pass that
Coriantumner pursued him, & did go on battle unto him upon the sea shore, & it came to pass
that Shib did come to the army of Coriantumner, that they fled again to the wilderness of
which it came to pass that Shib did pursue him, until he came to the plains of Agash, & Cori-
antumner had taken all the people with him, as he fled before Shib, & that number of the
land, & he did smite upon him until he died, nevertheless the brother of Shib did come again
against Coriantumner in the stead thereof, & the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which
Coriantumner fled again before the army of the brother of Shib, now the name of the brother
of Shib was called Shiz, & it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumner, & he did over-
throw many cities, & he did slay both women & children, & he did burn the cities thereof, & there
went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land, & a cry went forth throughout the land, that
they would stand before the army of Shiz, he held it sweepeth the earth before him, & it came to
pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land, &
they were divided, & a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, & a part of them fled to the army
of Coriantumner, & so great & lasting had been the war, so long, had been the scene of blood-
shed & carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead, & so
swift & speedy was the way that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march
forth from the sheddings of blood, & the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men,
women & children, & threw upon the face of the land, & became a prey to the vultures of the
land, & the scene thereof came forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of
the land, & therefore the people became troubled by day & by night, because of the scene thereof,
nevertheless Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumner, for he had sworn to avenge himself upon
Coriantumner & the blood of his brother, which had been staining the mind of the Lord
wherefore he said that Coriantumner should not fall by his sword, thus we see that
the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, & their wickedness & abominations had
prepared a way for their everlasting destruction, & it came to pass that Shiz did pursue
Coriantumner eastward, unto the borders by the sea shore, & there he fought battle unto Shiz
for the space of three days, & so terrible was the destruction among the army of Shiz, that the
people began to be frightened, & began to flee before the army of Coriantumner, & they fled to
the land of Corihon, & a number of the inhabitants before them, all they that would not
fight, & they took their tents in the valley of Corihon, & Coriantumner pitched his
tents in the valley of Shiz, now the valley of Shiz was near the hill Corihon,
wherefore Coriantumner did gather his armies together upon the hill Corihon, & did sound a
trumpet unto the army of Shiz, to invite them forth to battle, & it came to pass that they
came forth, but were divided again, & they came the second time, they were divided again the
second time, & it came to pass that they came again the third time, & the battle became ex-
ceeding sore, & it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumner, that he gave him many
deep wounds, & Coriantumner having lost his blood, fainted, & was carried away as

though he were dead, men the loss of many women & children on both sides, and repent
 that they had not hearkened to his voice, that they should not persecute the disciples of Christ, and
 when he was returned to their camp, & he came to rest that night, Coriantumner had recovered
 his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him, he saw that
 there had been slain by the sword of many men, many thousands of his people, he began
 to weep in his heart, and then said unto himself, millions of my people, many of the men
^{women} & children, he began to weep of the evil which in his thought began to come
 upon the world, words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets & he said, that
 that they were fulfilled, that, long ago, when his soul remained, & refused to be comforted,
 it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare
 the people, & he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people, & it came
 to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle, he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumner,
 that if he would give himself up, that he might stay him with his own sword, that he
 would spare the lives of the people, & it came to pass that the people repented not of their
 iniquity, & the people of Coriantumner were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz,
 & the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumner, wherefore the
 people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumner, & when Coriantumner saw
 that he was about to fall, he fled again before the people of Shiz, & it came to pass that
 he came to the waters of Nephtalim, which by interpretation is large unto our seed,
 all, wherefore, when they came to these waters, they pitched their tents, & they also per-
 tooked their tents, near unto them, & therefore on the morrow they did come to battle, & it came
 to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle in the which Coriantumner was wounded again, & he was
 smitten with the loss of his sword, & it came to pass that the men of Coriantumner did pursue him from the
 waters of Nephtalim, that they beat them, but they caused them to flee before them, & they did flee
 eastward, & did pitch their tents in a place which was called Legath, & it came to pass that
 the army of Coriantumner did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah, & it was that same hill where
 my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred, & it came to pass
 that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, & they had not been slain,
 save it were Ether, & it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people, & he
 beheld that the people which were for Coriantumner, were gathered together to the army of Cor-
 antumner, & the people which were for Shiz, were gathered together to the army of Shiz, wherefore
 they were for the space of many days gathering together the people, that they might get all who
 were upon the face of the land, & that they might receive all the strength which it was impos-
 sible that they could receive, & it came to pass that they were all gathered together, many
 one to the army, which he would smite their wives & their children, both men, women
 & children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, & breast plates, & their
 plates, & being clothed after the manner of men, & they did march forth one against an-
 other to battle, & they fought all that day, & ^{long} ~~they~~ ^{did} not, & it came to pass that when
 it was night they were weary, & returned to their camps, & of them that they had

The Book of Moroni Chapter 8 & 9. Moroni after having made an end of abridging the account as he had offered, I had supposed to not have written more but I have not as yet finished to make not myself known to the Samaritans lest they should destroy me for he said their wars are exceeding cruel among themselves & because of their hatred they put to death every supplanter that will not deny the Christ. And Moroni will not deny the Christ wherefore I have written whether I can for the safety of mine own life wherefore I wrote a few more things concerning to that, which I had supposed for I had supposed not to have written any more but I wrote a few more things that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren the Samaritans in some future day according to the will of the Lord. Chapter 11 of the words of Christ which he spake unto his disciples, the Twelve whom he had chosen as he laid his hands upon them & he called them by name saying, Ye shall call on the Father in my name in mighty prayer & I say that ye have done this ye shall have power that on him whom ye shall lay your hands ye shall give the Holy Ghost & in my name shall ye give it for thus I will. Forasmuch now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing & the multitude heard it not but the disciples heard it & as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost. Chapter 11 in manner which it is written in which was called the elders of the Church & desired for their teachers & after they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ they laid their hands upon them & said, In the name of Jesus Christ we do now call thee to be a priest and he be a teacher according as it is written to purchase an hundred & seven times through Jesus Christ by the ordinance of faith in his name to the end of time & after this manner did they ordain priests & teachers according to the gifts & settings of God unto men & they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost which was in them Chapter 11 in manner of their elders & priests administering the Father's blood of Christ unto the Church & they administered it according to the plain commandments of Christ wherefore he knows that the manner to be done & the order of priest did minister & they did kneel down with the Church & pray to the Father in the name of Christ saying, O God the Eternal Father we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ to bless & sanctify this bread to the saving of all them who partake of it that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son & witness unto thee O God the Eternal Father that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son & always remember him & keep his commandments which he hath given them that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Chapter 12 The manner of administering the wine. He said they took the cup & said O God the Eternal Father we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ to bless & sanctify this wine to the saving of all them who drink of it that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son which was shed for them that they may witness unto thee O God the Eternal Father that they do always remember him that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Chapter 13

Chapter V. — And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold Eldas Bristle⁴⁵⁵ & his
 teachers were baptized & they were not baptized same they brought forth fruit meet that
 they were worthy of it neither did they receive any unto baptism same they came forth with
 a broken heart & a contrite spirit & welcomed unto the church that they highly repented
 of all their sins & none were receiving unto baptism same they took upon them the name of
 Christ having a determination to serve him unto the end & after that same had been receiving
 unto baptism & were wrought upon & changed by the power of the Holy Ghost they were
 numbered among the people of the Church of Christ & their names were taken that they
 might be remembered & named by the good word of God to keep them in the
 right way to keep themselves from all ungodliness & from every kind of vain
 thing. Christ who is our Father & our Redeemer & our King & our Lord & our God met toge-
 ther oft to pray & to speak one with another concerning the well-being of their souls &
 they did meet together oft to partake of bread & wine in remembrance of the Lord Jesus
 & they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity & none to sin & none were
 to commit iniquity & those who were of the church did continue in their holiness &
 they repented not & confessed not their names were blotted out & they were not re-
 membered among the people of Christ but as oft as they repented & forgave themselves with
 real intent they were forgiven & their sins were counted by the Church after the
 manner of the workings of the Spirit & by the power of the Holy Ghost for as the power of
 the Holy Ghost & God himself will to punish or to reward or to forgive or to
 to sing unto God was done. Chapter VI. — And now I speak unto a few
 of the words of my father. Moroni which is shall concerning baptism & baptism for
 often this manner did he speak unto the people as he taught them in the Synagogue whi-
 ch they had build for the place of worship. And now I Moroni speak unto you
 he loved brethren it is by the grace of God that I am now I ordain Christ in his hol-
 will because of the gift of his calling since I am permitted to speak unto
 you at this time where I would speak unto you that one of the children of God and
 the peaceable followers of Christ & that have obtained a sufficient hope by
 which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord from this time hence forth until ye
 shall rest with him in heaven & now my brethren I judge these things of you
 because of your peaceable walk with the children men for I remember the
 word of God which saith ^{by the} together ye shall know them for if their words be good then
 they are good also for he said God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is
 good for if he offereth a gift or prayeth unto God except he shall do it with real in-
 tent it profiteth him nothing for he said it is not counted unto him for righteousness
 for behold if a man being evil giveth a gift he doeth it grudgingly wherefore it
 is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift wherefore he is counted
 evil before God & likewise also is it counted evil unto a man if he shall give
 & not with real intent of heart & it profiteth him nothing for God receiveth

Those which are of the flesh cannot see & are which are good & true
 will be a good gift of the Father & the Son & the Holy Spirit & the
 good will neither can a good fountain bring forth better water when just a man be-
 long to the servant of the devil cannot follow Christ & if he follow Christ he cannot be a
 servant of the devil & therefore all things which are good come from God & that which is
 evil comes from the devil & the devil is in the world & he is continually against him
 continually to invite him to do evil & to do that which is evil continually but
 behold that which is of God invites him to do good continually wherefore
 every thing which invites him to do good & to love God & to love him is
 inspired of God wherefore let us hear my beloved brethren that we do not judge
 that which is evil to be of God or that which is good to be of the devil for let us
 see brethren it is given unto you to judge that we may know good from evil & the way
 to judge is as plain that ye may know with a perfect knowledge as the day light is
 from the dark night for he that the spirit of Christ is given to every man that they
 may know good from evil wherefore let us see the way to judge for every
 thing which invites him to do good & to persuade to believe in Christ is sent forth
 by the power of Christ wherefore we may know with a perfect knowledge it is of
 God but what some thing persuades him to do evil & believe not in Christ & deny him
 & deny not God then we may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil for
 in that manner doth the devil work for he persuades him to do evil & to deny God & deny
 the Father & the Son & the Holy Spirit which subject themselves unto him & now
 my brethren seeing that we know the light by which we may judge which light
 is the light of Christ see that ye do not judge wrongfully for with that same judge-
 ment which ye judge ye shall also be judged wherefore let us search of you brethren
 that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from
 evil & ye will say hold upon every good thing & condemn it not ye certainly will
 be a child of Christ & now my brethren how is it possible that ye can lay hold
 upon every good thing & now come to that point which I said I would speak & I
 will tell you the way where ye may lay hold on every good thing for he that
 knowing all things living from everlasting to everlasting behold he sent angels to
 minister unto the children of men to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ
 & in Christ there should come every good thing & God should lead us to prophets by his
 own mouth that Christ should come & he hath done many things that he did
 manifest things unto the children of men which were good & all things which are good
 come of Christ of his will men were fallen & were saved no good thing came unto
 them wherefore by the ministering of angels & by every word which proceeded
 forth out of the mouth of God men began to receive faith in Christ & thus
 by faith they did lay hold upon every good thing & thus it was until the
 coming of Christ & after that he came men also were saved by faith in his

name & by faith they become the Sons of God & as sured by as Christ liveth
 he spake these words unto our fathers saying Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the
 Father in my name which is good in faith believing that ye shall receive be-
 hold it shall be done unto you wherefore my beloved brethren hath miracles
 ceased because that Christ hath ascended into Heaven & hath set down on the right
 hand of God to claim of the Father his right of mine which he hath upon the
 children of men for he hath assumed the ends of the law & his claimeth all those that have
 faith in him & they that have faith in him will clean unto every good thing wherefore
 he advanced the cause of the child of men & he dwelleth eternally in the Heaven
 because that he hath done this my beloved brethren hath miracles ceased behold
 I say unto you nay minister ~~and~~ angels ceased to minister unto the children of men for
 behold they are subject unto him to minister according to the word of his command
 showing themselves unto them of strong faith & a firm mind in every form of Godliness
 & the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance & to fulfil & to do the work
 of the commandments of the Father which he hath made unto the children of men to keep
 and the way among the children of men by declaring the word of Christ ^{the Christ} unto ~~them~~
 words of the Lord that they may bear testimony of him & by so doing the Lord God pro-
 spereth the way that the residue ^{of men} may have faith in Christ that the Holy Ghost
 may have place in their hearts according to the power thereof & after that manner
 bringeth to pass the Father the covenants which he hath made unto the chil-
 dren of men & Christ hath said If ye will have faith in me ye shall have pow-
 er to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me & he hath said Defeat all ye ends
 of the earth & come unto me & be baptized in my name & have faith in me
 and ye may be saved & now my beloved brethren if I will be the case that these
 things are true which I have spoken unto you & God will show unto you with
 power & great glory at the last day that they are true & if they are true ~~wherefore~~ day of
 miracles ceased or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men or ~~that~~ he
 withheld the power of the Father from them or will be so long as time shall last or
 or the earth shall stand or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved
 he hath I say unto you nay for it is by faith that miracles are wrought & it is by faith
 that angels appear & minister unto men wherefore if these things have ceased need he
 unto the children of men for it is because of unbelief & all is vain for no man can be saved
 according to the word of Christ save they shall have faith in his name wherefore if these
 things have ceased then is faith ceased also & awful is the state of man for they are
 as though there had been no redemption made that behold my beloved brethren I judge
 better things of you for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your need
 now for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people
 of his Church & again my beloved brethren I would speak unto you concerning the
 thing is it that ye can obtain unto faith save ye shall have hope & what is it that ye
 shall hope for behold

I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ & the power
 of his resurrection to be raised ^{unto} life Eternal & this because of your faith in him
 according to the promise wherefore if a man have faith he must needs hope for without
 faith there cannot ^{be} any hope & again I say unto you that he cannot have faith
 & hope save he shall be meek & lowly of heart if so his faith & hope is vain for none is except-
 able before God save the meek & lowly of heart & if a man be meek & lowly in heart & con-
 fidingly the power of the Holy Ghost that dwelleth in him he must needs have charity for
 if he have not charity he is nothing wherefore he must needs have charity & charity suffic-
 eth long & is kind & smooth not swart not puffed up & seeketh not her own is not easily
 provoked thinketh no evil & rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth
 beareth all things believeth all things hopeth in all things endureth all things wherefore
 my beloved brethren if ye have not charity ye are nothing for charity never faileth & wh-
 ever love cleaveth unto charity which is the greatest of all for all things must fail but char-
 ity is the pure love of Christ & it endureth forever & whoso is found possessed of it
 at the last day it shall be well with him wherefore my beloved brethren pray unto
 the Father with all the energy of heart that ye may be filled with this love which
 he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son Jesus Christ that ye may
 become the Sons of God & that when he shall appear we shall be like him for he that
 shall see him as he is that we may have this hope that we may be purified
 even as he is pure & thus (Chapter VIII) In fulfillment of my father's commandment written to
 me & now it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry & on this wise did
 he write unto me saying my beloved son Moroni I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord & per-
 son Christ hath been mindful of you & hath called you to his ministry & to his holy wor-
 k & I am mindful of you always in my prayers continually praying unto God the Father
 in the name of his holy child Jesus that he through his infinite goodness & grace will keep
 you through the influence of faith on his name to the end & now my son I speak unto you
 concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly for it grieveth me that there should dis-
 putations arise among you for if ye have learned the truth there has been disputations
 among you concerning the baptizing of your little children & now my son I desire that
 ye should have ^{obediently} ~~obediently~~ that your own should be removed from among you
 for for this intent I have written this ^{chapter} ~~chapter~~ for immediately after I had learned these
 things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter & the word of the Lord came to me
 by the power of the Holy Ghost saying Listen to the words of Christ your Father & he saith
 unto you that I have come into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance
 the whole need no physician but they that are sick wherefore little children are whole
 for they are not capable of committing sin wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them
 in me that it hath no power over them & the law of circumcision is done away in me
 & after that manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the mind of God unto me when
 I saw my beloved son I know that it is solemn marking before God that ye should

baptize little children behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach repentance
 & baptism unto ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~holy~~ ^{holy} ~~ghost~~ ^{ghost} and accountable & capable of committing sin & that parents
 that they must repent & be baptized & humble themselves as these little children & they shall
 all be saved with these little children & these little children ^{need} no repentance neither baptism
 behold baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission
 of sins but little children are alive in Christ even from the foundation of the world
 if not so God is a partial God & also a changeable being a respecter to persons for how many
 little children have died without baptism wherefore if little children could not be
 saved without baptism there must have gone to an end less hell behold I say unto
 you that he that saith that little children need not baptism is in the gall of
 bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity for he hath no faith hope nor charity where
 fore should he be out of hell in the thought he must go down to hell for awful is
 the wickedness to suppose that God saith one child because of baptism & the other
 perish because he hath not baptism, verily I say unto him that shall persecute the meek & the lowly
 after this manner for they shall perish except they repent behold I speak with boldness hav-
 ing authority from God for I see not what man can do for perfect love casteth out all fear
 & I am filled with charity which is everlasting love wherefore all children are alike unto
 me wherefore I love little children with a perfect love & they are all alike & partakers of salva-
 tion for I know that God is not a partial God neither a changeable being but he is unchan-
 geable from all eternity to all eternity little children cannot repent wherefore it is
 awful wickedness to deny the free mercies of God unto them for they are all alive in
 him because of his mercy & he that saith that little children need not ^{baptism} ~~repentance~~ ^{denial} ~~the~~
 mercies of Christ & saith as a nag he the alone merit of him & the power of his redem-
 ption need unto such for they are in danger of death hell & an endless torment I speak
 it boldly God hath commanded me listen unto them & give heed on they stand
 against you at the judgement seat of Christ for behold that all little children are
 alive in Christ & also all they that are without the law for the power of redemption
 cometh on all they that have no law wherefore he that is not condemned on he that is
 under no condemnation cannot repent & unto such baptism availeth nothing that is man
 taking before God denying the mercies of Christ & the power of his Holy spirit & putting trust
 in dead works behold my son this thing ~~is~~ ^{is} ~~not~~ ^{not} ~~to~~ ^{to} be for repentance & unto them
 that are under condemnation & under the curse of a broken law & the just fruits of repentance
 is baptism & baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments & the fulfill-
 ing the commandments bringeth remission of sins & the remission of sins bringeth meek-
 ness & lowliness of heart & because of meekness & lowliness of heart cometh the minis-
 tration of the Holy Ghost which comforteth filleth with hope & perfect love which
 endureth by diligence unto prayer until the end shall come when all the saints shall
 dwell with God behold my son I will write unto you again if I go not out soon
 against the Samaritans behold the pride of this nation on the pride of the high priests
 people

[illegible]

again my son there are many widows & their daughters which remain in ⁴⁶¹Shenagah &
that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away behold the army
of Joseph has carried away & left them to wander whithersoever they can for fear
many of the women do ^{will} by the way & die & the army which is with me is weak & the
armies of the Lamanites are bettered at Shenagah & me & as many as have fled to the army of
the new name have been victims to their insatiable insatiable of the ⁴⁶²tearfulness of my people they
are without mercy & without mercy behold I am here a man & I have lost the strength of a
man & cannot any longer give my commands & they have become strong in their pangs
and they are still insatiable & none neither old nor young & they delight in seeing the
ingratitude which is paid to the things of men women & children upon all the face of
the land that which they old tongue can not tell neither know it is written & now my
son I will no longer upon this horrible scene behold their kindest the wickedness of the
people that I name that they are without principle & past feeling & their wickedness
doth exceed that of the Lamanites which I hold my son I cannot recommend them unto God lest
he should smite me but I hold my son I recommend still unto God & I trust in Christ
that there will be saved & I have no belief that he would spare the life of witness
the return of his people unto him on their utter destruction for I know that they
must perish except they repent & return unto him & if they perish it will be like
unto the Jews because of the wickedness of their hearts seeking for blood & re-
venge & it so be that they perish well I know that many of our brethren have deserted
even unto the Lamanites & many more will also desert even unto them, wherefore I write
some what a few things that there are spared but should perish & not all shall but I
trust that I may see that soon for I have received records that I mean to deliver
up unto the ⁴⁶³wise & faithful in Christ & may not the things which I have written
come to pass ^{might} that I mean to deliver that I mean to deliver that I mean to deliver that I mean to deliver
to death & the showing his body unto our fathers & his mercy & long suffering & the happy
long day of Christ & I will in your mind for ever & may the grace of God be with you who
are chosen high in the heavens & our Father Jesus Christ who sitteth on the right hand
of his power until all things shall become subject unto him he will deliver you from
all enemies. — Chapter X — I desire that you write some to that as soon as you
read & write unto our brethren the Lamanites & I would that they should know
that more than ⁴⁶⁴seven hundred & twenty ^{years} have passed away since the sign was given of the coming
of Christ & I seal up these records after that I have spoken these words by way of exhorta-
tion ^{unto you} & I would that you should read these things if it be wisdom in God
that ye should read them that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been
unto the children of men from the creation of Adam even down until the time that I ye
shall receive these things & ponder it in your hearts & when ye shall receive these things
I would that ye should ask God the Eternal Father in the name of Christ
if these things are ^{not} true & if ye shall ask with a sincere heart with real intent having

⁴⁶²
 Faith in Christ & he will manifest the truth of it unto you by the power of the
 Holy Ghost & by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things
 & whatsoever thing is good is faith & true wherefore nothing that is good denieth a
 the Christ but acknowledgeth that he is & ye may know that he is by the power of the Holy
 Ghost wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God for he worketh
 by power according to the faith of his children of men the same today & tomorrow & forever
 again & I have your my brethren that ye deny not the power of God for they are many & they
 come from the same God & there are different ways that these gifts are given & this is true but
 it is the same God who giveth all in all & they are given by the manifestations of
 the spirit of God unto men to profit them for he becometh to one is given by the spirit
 of God that he may teach the word of wisdom & to another that he may teach the word
 of knowledge by the same spirit & to another exceeding great faith & to another the
 gifts of healing by the same spirit & again to another that he may work mighty
 miracles & again to another that he may prophesy concerning all things & again to an-
 other the boldness of angels & ministering spirits & again to another all kinds of tongues
 & again to another the interpretation of languages & of divers kinds of tongues & all these gifts
 come by the spirit of Christ & they come unto every man severally according as he
 will & I would exhort you my beloved brethren that ye remember that every good
 gift cometh of Christ & I would exhort you my beloved brethren that ye remember
 him that he is the same yesterday today & forever & that all these gifts of which I
 have spoken which are spiritual & never will be done away even as long as the ^{world} ~~men~~
 shall stand only according to the unbelief of the children of men wherefore there must
 be faith & if there must be faith there must also be hope & if there must be
 hope there must also be charity & except ye have charity ye cannot be blessed
 in the Kingdom of God neither can ye be saved in the Kingdom of God if ye have
 not faith neither can ye if ye have no hope & if ye have no hope ye must needs
 be in despair & despair cometh because of unbelief & Christ I have said unto your
 fathers I will have faith ye can do all things which is expedient unto me & now
 I speak unto all the ends of the earth that if the day cometh that the power & gifts
 of God shall be done away among you it shall be because of unbelief & I will be
 unto the children of men if this be the case for there shall be none that doeth good
 among you no not one for if there be one among you that doeth good he shall
 work by the power & gifts of God & as unto them which shall do these things away
 & die for they die in their sins & they cannot be saved in the Kingdom of God
 & I speak it according to the words of Christ & I will not & I exhort you to re-
 member these things for the time is quickly cometh that ye shall know that I lie
 not for ye shall see me at the last & the Lord God will say unto you
 Did I not declare my words unto you which were written by this man
 & as one rising from the dead & I am even as one speaking out of the dust

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies & behold ye shall
 proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God & his word shall be forth
 from generation to generation & God shall show unto you that that which I have
 written is ^{true} & again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ &
 lay hold upon every good gift & touch not the evil gift nor the unclean thing &
 awake to arise from the dust O ~~daughters of Zion~~ ^{daughters of Zion} fear not on thy beautiful
 garments & daughter of Zion strengthen thy stakes & enlarge thy borders for now
 mayest thou more be confounded that the covenant of the Eternal God ^{which he}
 hath made unto thee O daughter of Zion ^{may he fulfill it} ye come unto Christ & be perfected in
 him & being sanctified all ungodliness of ye shall deny yourselves of all un-
 godliness & love God with all your might & mind & strength & then & his grace suffi-
 cient for you that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ O ye by the grace of
 God ye are perfect in Christ ye can in no wise deny the power of God & again if ye
 by the grace of God are perfect in Christ & deny not his power then are ye sanctified
 in Christ by the grace of God through the shedding of the blood of Christ which is in
 the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins that ye become holy
 without spot & now I bid you to all farewell I shall go to rest in the Paradise
 of God until my spirit's body shall again ^{reunite} & I am brought forth trium-
 phant through the air to meet you before the blessing hour of the great assem-
 bly the Eternal Judge of both quick & dead Amen. *Wm. W. Phelps*

The Testimony of Three witnesses

Be it known unto ^{all} nations kindreds tongues & people unto whom this word
 shall come that we through the grace of God the Father & our Lord Jesus Christ have seen
 the plates which contain this record which is a record of the people of Joseph & his
 brethren his brethren & also of the people of Israel which came from the tower of Babel
 hath been spoken & we also know that they have been translated by the gift & power of God
 for his voice hath declared it unto us wherefore we know of a surety that the record is
 true & we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates & they
 have been shown unto us by the power of God & not of man & we declare with words
 of soberness that an angel of God came down from Heaven & he brought & laid before
 our eyes that we be held to see the plates & the engravings thereon & we know that it is by
 the grace of God the Father & our Lord Jesus Christ that we be held to hear record of
 these things and that it is manifest in our eyes & in our hearts the voice of the Lord com-
 manded us that we should hear record of it & therefore to be obedient unto the com-
 mandments of God we bear testimony of these things & we know that if we are fa-
 ithful in Christ we shall not our garments of the blood of all men & be found
 without blame before the judgment seat of Christ & shall dwell with him eternally
 in the Father & the Son & the Holy Ghost

564

which is our God. Amen.

Oliver Cowdery
 David Whitmer
 J. Martin Harris

And also the testimony of eight witnesses

Be it known unto all kindreds tongues & people unto whom this work shall come
 that Joseph Smith, Jr. the author & proprietor of this work, has shown unto us the plates
 of which hath been spoken which have the appearance of gold & as many of the ^{leaves} ~~pages~~
 as the said Smith has translated ^{not} ~~and~~ did handle with our hands & we also saw
 the engravings thereof all of which has the appearance of ancient work & of curious
 workmanship & this ^{not} ~~we~~ have been accord with records of so many that the said Smith has
 shown unto us for we have seen & hefted & know of a surety that the said Smith has
 got the plates of which we have spoken & we give our names unto the world to wit-
 ness unto the world that which we have seen & we do not feel bearing witness of it

Christian Whitmer

Jacob Whitmer

Peter Whitmer

John Whitmer

Hiram Page

Joseph Smith sen.

Hyrum Smith

Samuel H. Smith